NEW ELEMENTARY LATIN

ULLMAN AND HENRY

To Marilyn

Cousin Ted.

Aug. 24, '55.

NEW ELEMENTARY LATIN

Macmillan Classical Series

Edited by B. L. Ullman

Elementary Latin
By B. L. Ullman and Norman E. Henry

New Elementary Latin
By B. L. Ullman and Norman E. Henry

Second Latin Book, Revised Edition
By B. L. Ullman and Norman E. Henry

Third Latin Book
By B. L. Ullman, Norman E. Henry, and Dorrance S. White
In preparation

Progress Tests in Latin
By B. L. Ullman and A. W. Smalley

Easy Latin Plays
By Lillian B. Lawler

FIG. 1. THE HOME OF THE VESTAL VIRGINS IN THE FORUM

NEW ELEMENTARY LATIN

WITH CORRELATED STUDIES IN ENGLISH
FOR JUNIOR AND SENIOR HIGH SCHOOLS

BY

B. L. ULLMAN, PH.D.
PROFESSOR OF LATIN
UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

AND

NORMAN E. HENRY, M.A.
PEABODY HIGH SCHOOL, PITTSBURGH

New York
THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
1930

COPYRIGHT, 1923, 1925, 1929,
BY THE MACMILLAN COMPANY.

All rights reserved, including
the right of reproduction
in whole or in
part in any
form.

Set up and electrotyped. Published February, 1929. Reprinted July, 1929; March, May, 1930; June, 1930.

• PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA •

TO THE TEACHER

In essential principles *New Elementary Latin* is very similar to the authors' *Elementary Latin*, first published in 1923. The chief changes are the omission of the subjunctive; the addition of a series of sections in English on various phases of Roman life, of vocabulary reviews, of a large number of new illustrations; and the transfer of the connected Latin passages from the end of the book to their proper places after the various lessons. Thus this book meets the recommendations of the *Report of the Classical Investigation* even more faithfully than the other.[1] It is not intended, however, to supplant the other book. Schools which desire to introduce the subjunctive, at least in part, in the first year, or which prefer to use the same book for three semesters, will continue to use *Elementary Latin* with the same success and satisfaction as heretofore.

The many features of *Elementary Latin* which have been received with approval and which are retained in this book are:

1. Latin for English. — The correlation of Latin and English forms an important part of every lesson, for it is generally admitted that the chief value of first year Latin for most pupils is in the increased knowledge of

[1] Consideration was also given to the *Tentative Syllabus in Ancient Languages* (1928 Revision) of the University of the State of New York, and to other recent state and city syllabi.

English which it affords. Latin and English are correlated throughout as follows:

(*a*) *Vocabulary.* — The vocabulary of the lessons was taken chiefly from an unpublished list of those Latin words which have the largest number of English derivatives in ordinary prose. This list is the result of exhaustive research. The total vocabulary consists of only five hundred fourteen words, including those in special paradigms. Three hundred seventy-three of these words are primitives and one hundred forty-one are derivatives. The authors have made it a practice not to introduce Latin derivatives until after the primitive has been encountered, so that the task of mastering the lesson vocabularies may be simplified and the pupil taught to associate words according to their root meaning.

All words required by the College Board to be memorized during the first and second years are presented for intensive study in the lesson vocabularies of the *New Elementary Latin* and the vocabulary drills of the authors' *Second Latin Book* (revised). Since the Latin Word List issued by the College Entrance Examination Board supersedes all other lists as a standard, this strict conformity will be welcomed by all teachers. Most of the words required by the New York Syllabus (1928 revision) for the first and the second half-years have been used in the lessons; the complete list is included in the Appendix for review and intensive drill.

(*b*) *Word Study.* — Every lesson contains Latin and English Word Studies covering such topics as prefixes, suffixes, loan words, phonetic changes, spelling, interesting words, abbreviations, phrases and quotations, etc.

Topics are introduced in the order of their importance and *grow out of the material presented in the lessons;* they are not relegated to the Appendix.

(*c*) *Laboratory Method.* — The arrangement of a notebook giving English derivatives is explained and its use urged. Encouragement in its use is furnished by giving after each word in the lesson vocabularies one English derivative or related Latin word previously studied.

(*d*) *Correlation of Latin and English Grammar.* — A section of the Appendix is devoted to the elementary principles of grammar usually studied before the seventh grade. These are illustrated by English and Latin examples. The material is based upon that in use in the elementary schools. In the lessons themselves the topics treated in Elementary Grammar are assigned for review at the appropriate points. Some teachers may prefer to review this material at the outset.

In discussing matters of form and syntax, constant reference is made to English usage, and many difficult points in English grammar are elucidated (*e.g.* the relative and interrogative pronouns, sections **306–307, 320**). Difficult matters are developed slowly and with constant reference to English (cf. the infinitive, including indirect statement, **136, 262, 465,** and the participle, **344, 365, 449–451.**

2. Simplification. — (*a*) *Forms.* — In accordance with certain special investigations as to relative frequency, many unimportant forms commonly found in beginners' books have been omitted.

(*b*) *Syntax.* — The *Report of the Classical Investiga-*

tion, Byrne's *Syntax of High School Latin*, and the latest state syllabi have been consulted in an attempt to introduce the minimum of syntax consistent with sound teaching. *The Report of the N. E. A. Committee on Uniform Grammatical Nomenclature* has been followed with few exceptions.

3. Lessons. — (*a*) Two methods of approach are made possible by the introduction of connected passages in every lesson. Teachers may follow the usual practice of taking up first the new form or syntax material, together with the exercises based on it. In that case the connected passages may be used after the lesson for sight reading or for assignment. On the other hand, teachers may begin with the connected passage and may develop the new grammatical material from it, after which the vocabulary, grammar, and exercises may be assigned.

(*b*) All words are repeated at frequent intervals in the exercises.

(*c*) Words are introduced in the vocabularies to a large extent in the order of their importance for English word derivation. Primitives are regularly introduced before derivatives.

(*d*) Constructions are introduced as far as possible in the order of their importance, and only one new construction, as a rule, is developed in a lesson.

(*e*) The translation of English into Latin is subordinated to the translation of Latin into English.

4. Reviews. — Systematic reviews recur at intervals of eight or ten lessons throughout the book and are intended not only to furnish drill material for oral work but also to serve as the basis for written tests. It is

expected, of course, that the teacher will conduct additional reviews, for which the material in the review lessons will prove suggestive.

5. Roman Civilization. — A comprehensive view of Roman civilization is provided in four ways: (*a*) by the large amount of graded connected reading in Latin, especially "Lucius," the continued story of a Roman boy; (*b*) by the newly added "Glimpses of Roman Life," a series of topics in English dealing with Roman customs; (*c*) by the references to carefully selected books accessible in most school and public libraries; (*d*) by the numerous illustrations with their legends.

6. The Superior Pupil. — One of the most hopeful signs in the educational field to-day is the attention which is being given to superior pupils. The large number of connected Latin passages in this book and the many references to outside reading in connection with them and with the "Glimpses of Roman Life" furnish ideal material for use with such pupils, whether they are handled as individual cases or are placed in special classes.

7. Oral Work, Plays, etc. — In the earlier part of the book conversational material is introduced as a sample of what may be done by the teacher. The pictures also may be made the basis for conversation. In the Appendix a list of classroom phrases is given. A special feature is the inclusion of two Latin plays for reading or presentation. These plays were written expressly for this book and therefore afford an excellent review of forms and vocabulary.

8. French and Spanish. — A supplement is devoted to correlating French and Spanish with Latin; it

CONTENTS

LESSON		PAGE
	LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS	xxi
	VOCABULARY NOTEBOOK	xxvi
I.	TO THE PUPIL	1
	GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE: CHILDREN'S GAMES	3
II.	THE ALPHABET. PRONUNCIATION: EXERCISES	5
III.	FIRST DECLENSION: NOMINATIVE. *Latin Nouns in English*	10
IV.	USE OF THE NOMINATIVE. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES. *Derivatives.* Reading: **Sicilia**	13
V.	FIRST CONJUGATION: PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE. *Latin Nouns in English.* Reading: **Rosae**	16
VI.	FIRST DECLENSION: ACCUSATIVE. *Latin Phrases in English.* Reading: **Viae Bonae**	20
	GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE: ROMAN ROADS AND TRAVEL	24
VII.	FIRST CONJUGATION: IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE. *Latin Nouns in English.* Reading: **Puellae Rōmānae**	27
VIII.	FIRST DECLENSION: GENITIVE. *Latin Nouns in English.* Reading: **Rōma**	30
IX.	FIRST CONJUGATION: FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE. *Latin Nouns in English.* Reading: **Eurōpa**	33
X.	FIRST DECLENSION: DATIVE. INDIRECT OBJECT. *Latin Roots and English Derivatives.* Reading: **Columbus**	36
XI.	FIRST DECLENSION: ABLATIVE. ABLATIVE OF MEANS. *Latin Phrases in English.* Reading: **Gallia**	40
XII.	FIRST DECLENSION SUMMARIZED. PRESENT IMPERATIVE. *Latin Words in French, Spanish, and Italian.* Reading: **Puellae et Māter**	43
	FIRST REVIEW (Lessons IV–XII)	47
XIII.	SECOND CONJUGATION: PRESENT SYSTEM ACTIVE. *Latin Verb and Noun Forms in English.* Reading: **Lingua Latīna**	51

LESSON		PAGE
XIV.	Prepositions of Place: **In.** *Latin Forms of English Names.* Reading: **Britannia**	54
XV.	Second Declension: Nouns and Adjectives in **-us.** *Their Use in English.* Reading: **Socius**	58
XVI.	Vocative Case. Prepositions of Place: **Ab, Dē, Ex.** *Prefixes* ***ab-, dē-, ex-*** *in English.* Reading: **Servī**	62
	Glimpses of Roman Life: Slaves	66
XVII.	Second Declension: Nouns and Adjectives in **-er** and **-r.** *Prefix* ***ad-*** *in English. Assimilation.* Reading: **Magister**	68
XVIII.	Present Indicative of **Sum.** Prepositions of Place: **Ad, In.** *Prefix* ***in-*** *in English.* Reading: **Clāra**	71
XIX.	Second Declension: Nouns and Adjectives in **-um.** *Their Use in English.* Reading: **Trōia**	75
XX.	Imperfect and Future Indicative of **Sum.** Infinitive as Subject and Object. *Latin in English: Case Forms; Phrases.* Reading: **Spartacus**	79
	Second Review (Lessons XIII–XX)	83
XXI.	Questions. Conversation. Reading: **Bellum et Victōria**	89
XXII.	Third Conjugation: Present and Imperfect Indicative Active. Plural Imperative in **-ite.** *Latin Noun Base in English.* Reading: **Virginia et Vēra**	91
XXIII.	Apposition. *Latin Verb Base in English.* Reading: **Vir Quī Patriam Regit**	94
XXIV.	Third Conjugation **-iō** Verbs, Fourth Conjugation: Present and Imperfect Indicative Active. *Latin and English Vowel Changes.* Reading: **Rōmānī**	97
XXV.	Word Order. *Latin Phrases in English.* Reading: **Castra Rōmāna**	101
XXVI.	Third Conjugation: Future Indicative Active. *Latin Phrases in English.* Reading: **Cerēs et Prōserpina**	104
XXVII.	Formation of Adverbs. Accompaniment. *Prefix* ***con-*** *in English.* Reading: **Lūcius et Mārcus**	108

LESSON		PAGE
XXVIII.	Fourth Conjugation, Third Conjugation **-iō** Verbs: Future Indicative Active. *Prefix* ***re-*** *in English.* Reading: **Vīta Antīqua**	112
XXIX.	Idioms. *Latin Words and English Derivatives.* Reading: **Aenēās**	115
	Third Review (Lessons XXI–XXIX)	121
XXX.	Substantives. The Story of Lucius: **Forum Rōmānum.** Conversation	125
	glimpses of roman life: the city of rome	127
XXXI.	Present System Passive of the Four Conjugations. *Word Families.* Reading: **Ad Italiam**	131
XXXII.	Ablative of Agent. *Latin Phrases in English.* Reading: **Aenēās in Āfricā Est**	137
XXXIII.	Perfect Stem. Perfect Active Indicative of the Four Conjugations. *Latin in English: Prefix* ***prō-****. Latin Phrases.* Reading: **Aenēās et Dīdō**	141
XXXIV.	Perfect Indicative of **Sum.** Use of Imperfect and Perfect. *Prefixes* ***in-*** *and* ***dis-*** *in English.* Reading: **Grātia**	146
XXXV.	Past Perfect and Future Perfect Indicative Active of the Four Conjugations. *Latin Suffixes in English:* ***-ia.*** Reading: **Aenēās et Latīnus**	149
XXXVI.	Personal Pronouns. Possessive Adjectives. *Latin Phrases in English.* Reading: **Lūcius Pilam Āmittit**	153
XXXVII.	Past Perfect and Future Perfect Indicative of **Sum.** Infinitive with Subject Accusative. *Suffix* ***-tia*** *in English.* Reading: **Fabius et Līvius**	157
XXXVIII.	Perfect Participle. Perfect and Past Perfect Passive of the Four Conjugations. *Prefixes* ***sub-*** *and* ***per-*** *in English.* Reading: **Aenēās et Turnus**	160
XXXIX.	Future Perfect Passive and Present Infinitive Passive of the Four Conjugations. *Latin Phrases in English.* Reading: **Niobē**	165
	Fourth Review (Lessons XXXI–XXXIX)	169

LESSON		PAGE
XL.	Word Sense. The Story of Lucius: **Lūdus.** Conversation	173
	Glimpses of Roman Life: Roman Schools	177
XLI.	First Conjugation: Review of Principal Parts. *Prefixes* ***inter-*** *and* ***ob-*** *in English.* Reading: **Lūdī Rōmānī et Americānī**	180
XLII.	Relative **Quī.** Agreement of the Relative. *Intensive Prefixes.* Reading: **Templa Deōrum**	185
XLIII.	Second Conjugation: Review of Principal Parts. Manner. *Interesting English Words.* Reading: **Colossēum**	191
XLIV.	Interrogative **Quis.** *Latin Phrases in English.* Reading: **Vērus Rōmānus**	195
XLV.	Third Conjugation: Review of Principal Parts. *Prefixes* ***ante-*** *and* ***trāns-.*** *Importance of the Verb.* Reading: **Pūblius Mārcō Sal.**	199
XLVI.	Perfect Participles Used as Adjectives and Nouns. **Possum.** *Latin Words and Phrases in English.* Reading: **Plīnius et Puer**	203
XLVII.	Fourth Conjugation. Review of Principal Parts. Numerals. *Latin Influence upon English.* Reading: **Colōnī**	206
XLVIII.	Participles Used as Clauses. *Latin Influence upon English* (cont.). Reading: **Mārcus Pūbliō Sal.**	210
	Fifth Review (Lessons XLI–XLVIII)	213
XLIX.	The Story of Lucius: **Circus**	217
	Glimpses of Roman Life: Amusements	220
L.	Third Declension: Masculine and Feminine Nouns. *Latin Phrases in English.* Reading: **Ulixēs**	223
LI.	Ablative Absolute. *Word Families in Latin and English.* Reading: **Circē**	227
LII.	Third Declension: Neuter Nouns. *Latin Nouns in English.* Reading: **Sīrēnēs et Calypsō**	232
LIII.	Summary of Ablative Uses. *Latin Phrases in English.* Reading: **Phaeācia**	235
LIV.	Third Declension: I-Stem Nouns. *Latin* ***I-Stem*** *Nouns in English.* Reading: **Rōmulus et Remus**	239

LESSON		PAGE
LV.	Choice of Words. *Suffix* ***-tās*** *in English. Latin Phrases.* Reading: **Pēnelopē**	243
LVI.	Third Declension: Adjectives. *Their Use in English.* Reading: **Fīnis Labōrum**	247
LVII.	Ablative of Respect. *Latin Phrases in English.* Reading: **Cīneās et Pyrrhus**	251
	Sixth Review (Lessons L–LVII)	255
LVIII.	The Story of Lucius: **Deī**	259
	glimpses of roman life: roman religion	260
LIX.	**Hic** and **Ille.** *The Third Declension as an English Word Source.* Reading: **Sāturnus et Iuppiter**	263
	A Latin Play: **Victōria Mātris**	267
LX.	Ablative of Time When. *Latin Phrases in English.* Reading: **Caedicius Fortis**	269
LXI.	**Is.** *How Our Months Were Named.* Reading: **Cīvitās Rōmāna**	272
LXII.	**Īdem.** *Latin Phrases in English.* Reading: **Midās**	276
LXIII.	**Ipse.** *Norman-French Influence upon English.* Reading: **Horātius**	279
LXIV.	Declension of **Ūnus.** Words Often Confused. *Latin as a Help in Spelling.* Reading: **Cicerō et Tīrō**	282
LXV.	Present and Future Active Participles. *Latin Phrases in English.* Reading: **Quīntus Cicerō et Pompōnia**	286
LXVI.	Perfect Active Infinitive. *Suffix* ***-or*** *in English.* Reading: **Cincinnātus**	291
LXVII.	Perfect Passive and Future Active Infinitive. Indirect Statement. *Suffixes* ***-ant*** *and* ***-ent*** *Distinguished.* Reading: **Bellā**	295
LXVIII.	Indirect Statement. (*Cont.*) Tenses of the Infinitive. *Suffixes* ***-antia, -entia*** *in English.* Reading: **Scīpiō Āfricānus.**	300
	Seventh Review (Lessons LIX–LXVIII)	303
LXIX.	The Story of Lucius: **Virginēs Vestālēs**	307
	glimpses of roman life: the house and its furniture	310

LESSON PAGE

LXX. Comparison of Adjectives. Declension of the Comparative. *Different Words from the Same Latin Stem Distinguished.* Reading: **Quattuor Aetātēs** 314

LXXI. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs. *Suffix* ***-io*** *in English.* Reading: **Baucis et Philēmōn** . 320

LXXII. Comparison of **-er** and **-lis** Adjectives. Dative with Adjectives. *Legal Phrases in English.* Reading: **Daedalus et Īcarus** 324

LXXIII. Comparison of Irregular Adjectives and Adverbs. *Their Use in English.* Reading: **Pyrrhus et Eius Victōria** 329

LXXIV. Reflexive Pronouns. *Effect of the Renaissance: "Doublets."* Reading: **Pyrrhus et Fabricius** . 333

LXXV. Ordinal Numerals. Declension of **Duo, Trēs,** and **Mīlle.** *How Latin Helps in English Spelling.* Reading: **Rēgulus** 338

Eighth Review (Lessons LXX–LXXV) . . 343

LXXVI. The Story of Lucius: **Caesaris Triumphus** . . 348

LXXVII. Accusative of Extent. Words Often Confused. *State Names from Latin.* Reading: **Marius** 352

LXXVIII. **Post, Posteā** and **Postquam** Distinguished. *Prefixes* ***ne-, circum-, contrā-, prae-,*** *and* ***super-*** *in English.* Reading: **Marius et Sulla** . . 356

LXXIX. Fourth Declension. *Latin Word Base in English.* Reading: **Gracchī** 359

LXXX. Idioms. The Dative and Accusative with *To* Reviewed. *Latin and English Vowel Changes.* Reading: **Scīpiō**. 364

LXXXI. Fifth Declension. *Latin Noun and Verb Forms in English.* Reading: **Clārum Factum Scīpiōnis** 368

LXXXII. Genitive and Ablative of Description. *The suffixes* ***-ilis, -bilis, -āris, -ārius, -ānus, -icus*** *and* ***-tūdō*** *in Latin and English.* Reading: **Scīpiō et Catō** . 372

Ninth Review (Lessons LXXVII–LXXXII) . 375

LESSON PAGE

LXXXIII. Synonyms. The Story of Lucius: Civis Novus Iter Facit 379

GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE: (*a*) DRESS, (*b*) FOOD AND MEALS 384

A Latin Play: Sāturnālia 388

Syntax Outlines for Final Review 393

Books for Collateral Reading or Reference . . . 396

Appendix

Pronunciation 399

Elementary Grammar 403

Summary of Inflections 411

French and Spanish Through Latin 428

Helps for Classroom Conversation 435

Latin Songs 436

Word Lists (College Board and New York Syllabus) for Vocabulary Drill 440

Latin-English Vocabulary 1

English-Latin Vocabulary 24

Index 35

ILLUSTRATIONS

PAGE

THE HOME OF THE VESTAL VIRGINS IN THE FORUM (in color) *Frontispiece*

THE HEART OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE 2

CUPIDS PLAYING LEAPFROG 4

AN ETRUSCAN ALPHABET OF 700 B.C. 5

AN IMPERIAL INSCRIPTION 6

INSCRIPTION ON A TOMB 7

A PARK IN ROME. 8

A ROMAN GAME 9

ROME IN ANCIENT TIMES 12

MARBLES AND HANDBALL 14

AETNA 15

PLAYING JACKS WITH KNUCKLEBONES 17

PUELLA ROSĀS PORTAT 19

CUPIDS PLAYING HIDE AND SEEK 20

A ROMAN KEY OF BRONZE 21

ROMAN FISHHOOKS 22

VIA APPIA 23

VIA LATĪNA 24

A ROMAN SHIP 26

SCENE IN AN INN 27

PŪPAE 29

CŌPIA AQUAE BONAE 31

RUĪNAE RŌMĀNAE 32

PECŪNIA 33

NAUTAE NĀVEM PARANT 35

OSTIA FROM AN AIRPLANE 39

VICTŌRIA 42

PUELLA RŌMĀNA 45

CLĀRA ANNAE DŌNA MŌNSTRAT 46

A ROMAN ARCH IN REIMS, FRANCE 50

A ROMAN LAMP 51

ROMAN BATHS IN NÎMES, FRANCE 54

PAGE

Caesar ad Britanniam Nāvigat 57
Roman Knives and Scissors 58
Equī. 61
On the Nile River 62
Poena Servōrum Malōrum Magna Erat 65
In a Pompeian Garden 67
Magister Puerōs Docet 70
In Aquam. In Aquā 72
Clāra Rōmam Vidēbit 74
Castra Rōmāna in Germāniā 77
Equus Trōiānus 78
Roman Gong. 80
Spartacus, Captīvus Rōmānōrum 82
The Amphitheater at Pompeii 87
Modern Rome from an Airplane. 88
Map of Imperium Romanum (in color) . . . *between* 90 and 91
Puella Rōmāna 93
Domus Rōmāna 96
Italia Pulchra 100
A Roman Vase from London 103
Plūtō et Prōserpina 107
Hadrian's Villa Near Tivoli 108
Nautae Terram Firmam Vidēre Incipiēbant 110
Vir Rōmānus 113
Templum Rōmānum 114
A Cockfight 115
Cast of a Dog at Pompeii 116
Aenēās Patrem Portat et Fīlium Dūcit 118
A Coin of Caesar 119
The Colosseum at Rome 120
A Roman Butcher Shop 124
Forum Rōmānum (To-day) 126
Forum Rōmānum (During the Roman Empire) 128
The Interior Wall of an Ancient House at Pompeii (in color)
facing 130
Roman Ruins in Palmyra, Syria 134
Sicilia 135
Neptūnus 136

PAGE

VENUS 139
AMOR RĒGĪNAM AFFICIT ET DĪDŌ AENĒAM AMĀRE INCIPIT . 140
SATYRS AS ROPEWALKERS 141
A PORTABLE HOT-WATER HEATER 143
MERCURIUS 144
A ROMAN WEDDING 145
PUER RŌMĀNUS 148
CUPIDS FISHING 152
A SLEEPY CHILD 153
"INVĒNĪ PILAM TUAM, LŪCĪ!" 156
WATCHING THE BULLETIN BOARD 159
JULIA 163
THE FORGE OF VULCAN 164
VIA RŌMĀNA IN ĀFRICĀ 165
NIOBĒ 168
IN A ROMAN BAKERY 172
PUER RŌMĀNUS 174
SLEEPYHEAD 175
LŪCIUS IN LŪDŌ POENĀ AFFICITUR 176
WAX TABLET AND PAPYRUS ROLLS 178
MAGISTER ET PUERĪ 179
THE FORUM OF POMPEII 180
A STREET CORNER IN POMPEII 183
PUER RŌMĀNUS AD LŪDUM Ā SERVŌ DŪCĒBĀTUR . . . 184
A BAKERY IN POMPEII 185
TEMPLUM RŌMĀNUM 188
"TEMPLA SAEPE IN ALTĪS LOCĪS POSITA SUNT" 190
THE INTERIOR OF THE COLOSSEUM AFTER A SNOWFALL . . 194
THE ANCIENT TIBER AT ROME 196
THE MODERN TIBER AT ROME 197
DENTĀTUS RESPONDIT: "AURUM MĒ NŌN TEMPTAT". . . . 198
A SHOP IN POMPEII AS IT USED TO BE (in color) . *facing* 199
PORTA NIGRA IN TRIER, GERMANY 200
A STREET IN POMPEII 205
THE ROMAN WALL AT CHESTER, ENGLAND 209
MAGNUM ERAT PERĪCULUM AURĪGĀRUM AD MĒTĀS . . . 219
PŪBLIUS ET PARĀTUS 220
MASKS 222

PAGE

Gladiators in the Arena 223
Circē Hominēs in Animālia Vertit 231
Ulixēs et Sīrēnēs (in color) . . . . . *facing* 234
Roman Amphitheater at Nîmes, France 236
The Ship of the Phaeacians 238
Theater of Pompey, Rome 239
Rōmulus et Remus 242
Pēnelopē 245
Ulixēs in Procōs Arcum Tendit 250
Pyrrhus 253
Magnā Celeritāte Iter Facit 254
Iuppiter 259
Iūnō 260
Shrine 261
Animals for Sacrifice 262
"Gigantēs cum Deīs Bellum Gessērunt" 266
Caedicius Dīxit: "Haec Est Sōla Via Salūtis" 271
The Small Theater at Pompeii as It Is 274
The Small Theater at Pompeii as It Was 275
Handle of a Roman Pocketknife 276
Pompeii, A.D. 79 (in color) . . . . . *facing* 279
Roman Theater in Timgad, Algeria 286
Cēna 290
The Circus Race 292
The Fountain Near the Colosseum as It Was 294
Roman Acrobats 297
Inscription at Arlington Cemetery 299
The Theater of Marcellus 306
The Chief Vestal Passes 307
Vestālis 308
Vestālis Somnō Oppressa Est 309
Interior of a House in Pompeii 310
A Kitchen in Pompeii 312
Model of a Pompeian House in the Metropolitan Museum, New York 313
Roman Tools 314
A Roman Wedding 316
Labor Omnia Vincit 318

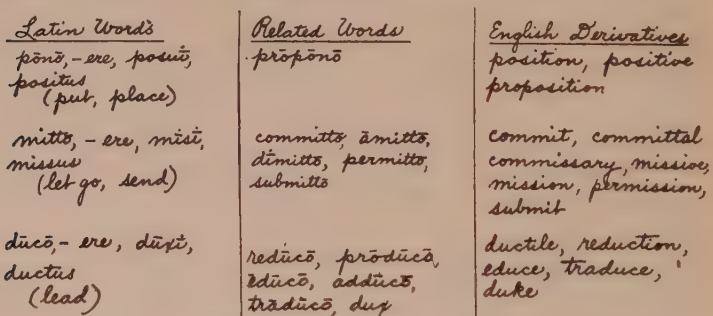
PAGE

MERCURIUS 322
A ROMAN AND HIS WIFE 323
POMPEII FROM AN AIRPLANE 324
AN OFFICER 326
DAEDALUS ET ĪCARUS 328
PUER RŌMĀNUS 331
A HOUSE IN POMPEII 332
A FOOD SHOP IN POMPEII AS IT WAS 334
THE PERISTYLE OF A ROMAN HOUSE 337
REGULUS LEAVES ROME TO RETURN TO CARTHAGE . . . 342
BATHS OF CARACALLA, ROME 347
C. IŪLIUS CAESAR 348
TRIUMPHAL PROCESSION, ARCH OF TITUS, ROME 350
TRIUMPHAL CHARIOT 351
THE ALBAN LAKE NEAR ROME 352
MARIUS 355
SULLA 358
"HAEC SUNT MEA ŌRNĀMENTA" 363
CAESAR AND THE SOOTHSAYER 371
POSING FOR THEIR PICTURE 374
LATIN INSCRIPTION ON LONGFELLOW'S GRAVE 378
WEARERS OF THE TOGA 380
M. TULLIUS CICERŌ 382
AQUAEDUCTUS 383
ROMAN SANDAL 387
ANCIENT FOODS FOUND IN POMPEII 391
"ET TŪ, BRŪTE" 392
INTERIOR OF A HOUSE IN POMPEII, RESTORED (in color). *facing* 398
ROMAN TOILET ARTICLES 402

VOCABULARY NOTEBOOK

Many teachers have found vocabulary and derivative notebooks helpful. A large notebook of the loose-leaf variety is preferable, with page ruled in three columns for (1) Latin Words, (2) Related Words, (3) English Derivatives (see illustration). The words of the advance vocabulary should be distributed by the pupil according to the part of speech, a page being reserved for each of the five declensions of nouns, one for each of the four conjugations, etc. In the second and third columns respectively he should record as many related Latin words and English derivatives as are readily suggested. Others should be added from time to time as encountered.

It will be found helpful to have the pupil compile a separate list of the prefixes and suffixes given in this book, together with numerous examples of their use in English words.



Other Types of Notebooks

Type 1 (with definitions)

vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus, *call*

vocation — a *calling*, occupation
convoke — *call* together
invocation — a *calling* upon, a prayer, etc.

Type 2 (with examples of use in English)

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, *send*

mission — He was sent on a *mission* to Europe
missive — The letter was a formidable *missive*

NEW ELEMENTARY LATIN

If elegancy still proceedeth, and English pens maintain that stream [of new words] we have of late observed to flow from many, we shall within few years be fain to learn Latin to understand English.

— Sir Thomas Browne, 1646.

NEW ELEMENTARY LATIN

LESSON I

1. You are about to begin the study of a new language. Perhaps you are a little curious and eager about it because it is something new, different from anything you have studied; or perhaps you are a little afraid of it because you think of it as something strange and difficult. Let us see what we know about it already.

Twenty-five hundred years ago Rome was one of many small towns in Italy. Its language, Latin, got its name from the district of Latium in which the town was situated. As the power of Rome spread, first over Italy and then over most of the civilized world of that day, its language came to be used everywhere. On the map opposite page 90 you can trace the growth of the great Roman Empire. You will note how it became a sort of United States of the Mediterranean World.

The modern civilization of Europe and America is largely the outgrowth of the Roman. American boys and girls play many games that Roman children played; American students read literature that was greatly influenced by the Roman; American citizens deal with political and legal ideas that are largely a Roman inheritance. To get acquainted with this Roman civilization is an important reason for studying Latin.

The Romans, however, have handed down not only their ideas but also their language. The Romance languages are the various forms which the Roman (Latin) language has taken in the course of centuries in the various parts of the Roman Empire. They are

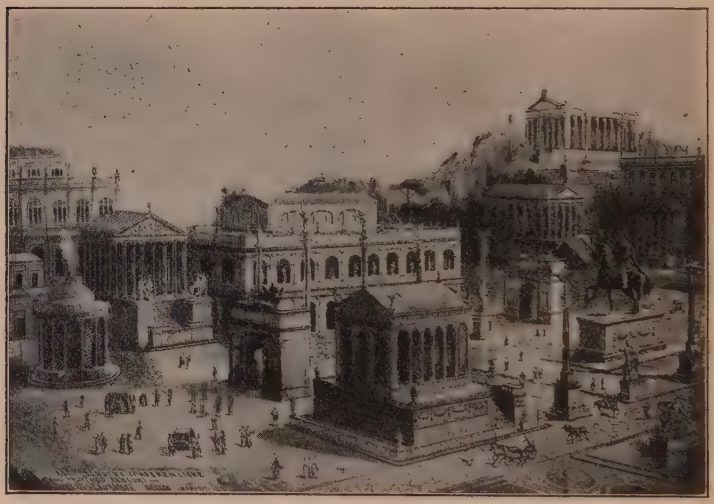


FIG. 2. THE HEART OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE

In the Roman Forum and on the nearby hills was centered the administration of the Roman Empire. At the left, the round temple of Vesta, then the temple of Castor and Pollux, the Basilica Julia (a courthouse); on top of the hill at the right, the temple of Jupiter; in the center foreground, the temple of Julius Caesar.

Italian, French, Spanish, Portuguese, Rumanian, and even, to a large extent, English, since about sixty per cent of our English words are derived from Latin. French, Spanish, and Italian become very easy after a study of Latin. But the chief reason why you are going to study Latin is to get a better knowledge of English. The study of Latin will make English gram-

mar much easier to understand. Then again, there are Latin words, phrases, and mottoes used in English, such as *radius, per annum,* and *e pluribus unum.* Many Latin phrases are used in law, such as *habeas corpus;* therefore lawyers must know Latin. Many abbreviations used in English are Latin, such as *i.e.* for *id est.*

You see then that this Latin of the Romans is not so remote a thing after all and that a knowledge of it will be very useful to you.

2. Exercise

1. *How many events of Roman history can you think of?*
2. *What famous Romans do you remember?*
3. *What Roman gods can you recall?*
4. *What do you know about Rome as it is to-day?*
5. *How many Latin words, phrases, legal terms, scientific terms, mottoes, proverbs, and abbreviations can you give?*

3. GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE

Children's Games

Roman children had as good times as our children have in playing games. Even the babies had their rattles. Girls had their dolls (Fig. 21); boys played various kinds of marble games with nuts (Fig. 10). The phrase **relinquere nucēs** (*to give up nuts*) meant to grow up, but "grown-ups," even the Emperor Augustus, sometimes played such games. Vacation was the time for marble games. The poet Martial says: "Sadly the boy leaves his marbles and is called back to school by the teacher — the Saturnalia [Christmas] vacation is all over."

Other amusements were spinning tops, walking on stilts, flying kites, rolling hoops, playing with toy wagons, toy soldiers, etc. Among their games were blind man's buff, hide and seek (Fig. 14), leapfrog (Fig. 3), jacks (Fig. 12). Ball games, some like our tennis and handball (Fig. 10), were favorites, especially for men.

For indoor amusement the Romans had a board game which was something like chess or checkers, and another like the many games we have in which as many moves are made on a board as are shown by the throwing of dice (Fig. 20).

Roman boys and men had their sports — not only swimming, fishing (Figs. 16, 76), hunting, etc., but also athletic contests: running, jumping, throwing the discus, boxing, wrestling, fencing.

Fig. 3. Cupids Playing Leapfrog

From a Pompeian wall painting.

LESSON II

ALPHABET AND PRONUNCIATION

4. The Alphabet

The alphabet used in English and in most European languages is one of the many things which we have borrowed from the Romans. The Romans in turn got it from the Etruscans, their neighbors to the north. The Etruscans received it from the Greeks, who

FIG. 4. AN ETRUSCAN ALPHABET OF 700 B.C.

Scratched on the edge of a wax tablet found, together with a doll, in a grave. The letters run from right to left.

adopted it from the Phoenicians. Naturally it has undergone considerable change in the course of all these borrowings. In Figure 4 you see the *abc*'s in their oldest Etruscan form, scratched on the ivory edge of a wax tablet for the guidance of a schoolboy. Since Roman days the alphabet has changed little. The Romans used *i* for vowel and consonant. In the seventeenth century it became the custom in English

to use a long form of *i* for the consonant, and thus our *j* was formed. Similarly the Romans used only one character for *u* and *v*, but we have introduced the useful distinction between them, even in Latin. The original identity of the two is shown by another modern

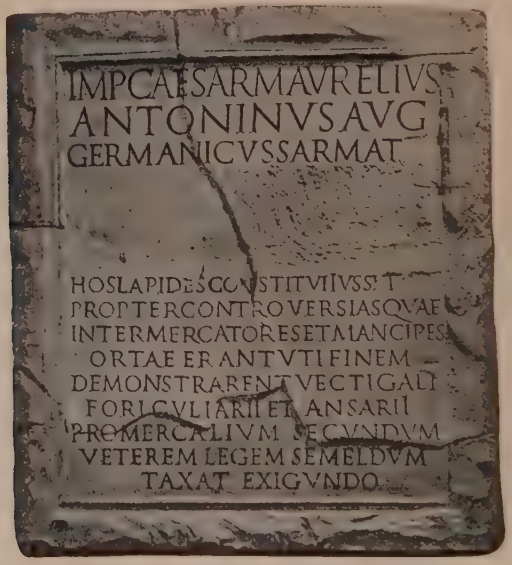


Fig. 5. An Imperial Inscription

This inscription on stone was set up in the time of the emperor Marcus Aurelius (161–180 A.D.), whose name and titles fill the first three lines. Note the modern character of the letters.

letter, *w*, which is a double *u* in name and a double *v* in form. The letters *j* and *w* are, therefore, not found in Latin words in this book.

The Romans made no distinction between capitals and small letters. Our small letters gradually developed out of capitals in late antiquity and the Middle Ages.

5. Pronunciation

The pronunciation of Latin is quite different from that of English, especially in the vowels, and resembles that of Italian, French, German, and other foreign languages. It is relatively very easy because it conforms to a few simple rules. There are no silent letters in Latin. For tables of sounds see **600–607.**

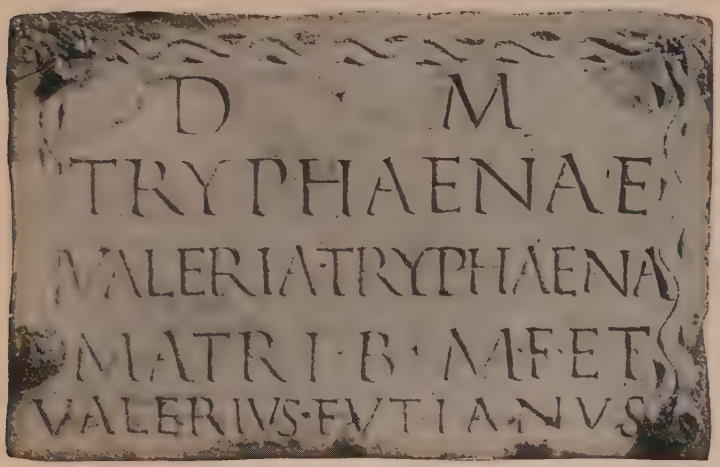


FIG. 6. INSCRIPTION ON A TOMB

The tomb was erected in honor of Tryphaena by her daughter. The letters in the first line stand for **dīs mānibus,** *to the shades* of the departed one.

6. Exercises in Pronunciation

I

Pronounce nā′vēs, Rū′fus, Marī′a, nau′tae, īn′sula, eō′rum, exer′citus, appellā′tur, vīdis′set, cognō′vit, Mīran′da, tenē′bant, proe′liō, Colum′bus, Clā′ra, Iū′lius, Augus′tus.

II

Micā, micā, parva stella!
Mīror quaenam sīs, tam bella!
Splendēns ēminus in illō,
Alba velut gemma, caelō.

Fig. 7. A Park in Rome

The little temple, though modern, is an excellent example of the ancient style.

III

Read the following translation of a part of Lincoln's Gettysburg Address (by James A. Kleist):

Octā′vus iam et octōgē′simus an′nus est hic, cum maiō′rēs nos′trī no′vam in hāc ter′rae par′te rem pū′blicam peperē′runt, quam lībertā′tis in condiciō′ne concep′tam in il′lam cōnsecrā′runt senten′tiam: ae′quō nās′cī iū′re ho′minēs ūniver′sōs. Nunc vē′rō, ingen′tī

bel'lō cīvī'lī in'itō, nōs experī'mur, haec'ne rēs pū'blica vel a'lia, sīc nā'ta, sīc cōnsecrā'ta, per lon'gum tem'poris spa'tium pos'sit stā're.

IV

The following are ancient Latin quotations, some of which you probably have seen:

1. **Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī,** *I came, I saw, I conquered* (Caesar's famous dispatch to the senate after a victory).

2. **ē plūribus ūnum,** *one from many* (found on U. S. coins).

3. **In hōc signō vincēs,** *In this sign you will conquer* (motto of Constantine, the first Christian emperor).

4. **Nōn nōvit virtūs calamitātī cēdere,** *Courage knows not how to yield to disaster.*

5. **Iniūriārum remedium est oblīviō,** *Forgetfulness is the cure for injuries.*

6. **Possunt quia posse videntur,** *They can because they think they can.*

FIG. 8. A ROMAN GAME

The boy in the center apparently is trying to tag one of those who strike at him, but he may not let go the rope, which is fastened to a stake.

V

The two verses which follow were used by Roman children in some of their games:

1. **Habeat scabiem quisquis ad mē vēnerit novissimus,** *May he have the itch who comes to me last.*

2. **Rēx erit quī rēctē faciet; quī nōn faciet nōn erit,** *He will be king who does right; he who does not will not be king.*

LESSON III

FIRST DECLENSION: THE NOMINATIVE CASE

Inflection or Declension of Nouns

7. Number. — (*Study* ***Elementary Grammar*** *at end of this book, sections* **610, 618, 619.**) In English, nearly all nouns undergo change to indicate plural number. Most nouns add **–s** or **–es**: way, way**s**; bush, bush**es**. A few form their plurals irregularly: pony, pon**ies**; knife, kni**ves**; ox, ox**en**; m**a**n, m**e**n.

In Latin, most nouns undergo change of ending to indicate number.

8. Gender. — (*Study* **620.**) In both English and Latin, masculine or feminine gender is assigned to nouns according to sex. This use is known as **natural gender.**

In English, nouns denoting sexless objects are classified as neuter.

In Latin, however, many nouns are regarded as masculine or feminine which are neuter in English: **via** (f.), *way;* **numerus** (m.), *number*. This use is known as **grammatical gender.** It is determined, not by the meaning of the word, but largely by its ending.

9. Case. — (*Study* **621.**) In English, with the exception of the genitive (or possessive) case, change of case does not involve change of ending: nominative (denoting the subject), "The *man* sees"; accusative (denoting the object), "I see the *man*"; but genitive (denoting possession), "the *man's* hat."

In Latin, however, change of case regularly requires change of ending. The hundreds of nouns in the Latin language are divided by **case endings** into five classes called **declensions.**

10. First Declension: Nominative Case Endings

The case endings for the **nominative,** singular and plural, of the **first declension** are as follows:

	Singular	Plural
	-a	**-ae**
Examples:	**via**	**viae**

These endings are preserved in many English words, as, singular, **alumna,** plural, **alumnae.** Other examples will be given later.

11. Rule. — *Nouns of the first declension are feminine (except a few which refer to males).*

12. English Word Studies

The following are English words, borrowed from the Latin first declension, which have never lost their Latin nominative endings. Consult the dictionary for the English pronunciation and meaning of these **loan words.** (Observe that in English **-ae** is usually pronounced *ē*, as in *me.*)

alumna, alumnae; antenna, antennae; larva, larvae; minutiae (singular rare).

Fig. 9. Rome in Ancient Times

LESSON IV

USE OF THE NOMINATIVE. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

13. English Derivatives

An English word formed from a Latin word is called a **derivative.** In this book derivatives are given in parentheses after the words in vocabularies; for their meanings see the dictionary whenever necessary. Write additional derivatives in your notebook.

14. Vocabulary

Nouns		Adjectives	
fā′ma, *report, fame*	(famous)	**bo′na,** *good*	(bonus)
fortū′na, *fortune*	(fortunate)	**lon′ga,** *long*	(longitude)
īn′sula, *island*	(insulate)	**mag′na,** *large, great*	(magnify)
vi′a, *way, road, street*	(viaduct)	**no′va,** *new, strange*	(novice)
est, *is*		**sunt,** *are*	

15. Nominative as Subject and Predicate (*Study* 608.)

The nominative case in Latin has the same uses as in English:

(*a*) The subject of a verb is in the nominative case. This is called **subject nominative.**

(*b*) A noun or adjective used in the predicate after a linking verb (*is, are, seem,* etc.) to complete its meaning is in the nominative case. This is called **predicate nominative.**

(*a*) (*b*) (*a*) (*b*)

1. **Īnsula est magna,** *The island is large.*
2. **Sicilia est īnsula,** *Sicily is an island.*

(*a*) (*b*) (*a*) (*b*)

16. Adjectives (*Study* 612.)

In English, an adjective does not undergo change to indicate number, gender, and case. *This* and *that*, however, change in the plural to *these* and *those*.

In Latin, an adjective indicates by its ending the number, gender, and case of the noun which it modifies. Compare the adjectives in the following Latin and English sentences:

1. **Via longa est bona,** *A long street is good.*
2. **Viae longae sunt bonae,** *The long streets are good.*

17. Rule. — *An adjective agrees in number, gender, and case with the noun which it modifies.*

18. Observe in the above sentences:

(*a*) There is no word in Latin for *a*, *an*, or *the*.
(*b*) The Latin adjective regularly follows its noun.
(*c*) The adjective may modify its noun directly or in the predicate.

19. Exercises

Oral. (*Read in Latin and translate into English.*)

1. Īnsula est magna. 2. Via est nova. 3. Viae sunt longae. 4. Viae longae sunt bonae. 5. Fortūna est bona. 6. Via bona est longa. 7. Fāma est bona. 8. Īnsulae novae sunt magnae. 9. Īnsula nova est longa.

FIG. 10. MARBLES AND HANDBALL

At the left, boys are playing "marbles" with apples or balls.

Completion. (*Copy these sentences and add the correct endings.*) 1. Īnsula nov__ est magn__. 2. Viae bon__ sunt nov__. 3. Magn__ est fām__. 4. Viae nov__ sunt bon__. 5. Fortūn__ est nov__.

Written. 1. Long Island is large. 2. Great fortune is good. 3. The islands are long. 4. A new road is good.

FIG. 11. AETNA

20. Sicilia[1]

Sicilia est īnsula magna in Eurōpā. Magna est fāma Siciliae.[2] In Siciliā est Mōns[3] Aetna. Aetna est magna. Viae in Siciliā nōn[4] bonae sunt.

---

[1] The meaning of proper nouns and adjectives is usually so clear that they are not listed in the lesson vocabularies; if necessary, they may be looked up in the Latin-English Vocabulary at the end of the book. [2] *of Sicily.* [3] *Mt.* [4] *not.*

LESSON V

FIRST CONJUGATION: PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

21. Vocabulary

Nouns		Verbs	
cau'sa, *cause, reason*	(causal)	**accū'sō,** *blame, accuse*	(accusation)
puel'la, *girl*		**pa'rō,** *get, get ready, prepare*	(prepare)
sil'va, *forest, woods*	(Pennsylvania)	**por'tō,** *carry*	(porter)

Adjectives		Adverb	
par'va, *small*		**u'bi,** *where*	
vē'ra, *true*	(verify)		

Note. — Enter the above words in your notebook and find additional derivatives.

22. English Word Studies

The following are additional **loan words,** borrowed from the Latin first declension, often found in high school textbooks of science:

nebula, nebulae; papilla, papillae; vertebra, vertebrae

Can you find others?

23. Formation of the Present Indicative Active (*Study* **613, 627.**)

In English, verbs sometimes change to indicate person: *I have, he has;* sometimes also to indicate number: *I am, we are;* but usually the distinction of person and number is made only by use of the personal pronouns (*I, you, he, we, they*).

In Latin, the personal pronoun subjects are usually omitted, and sets of endings called **personal endings** serve to indicate the person and number of all verbs. The following are used in forming five of the six tenses of the **indicative active** of a l verbs:

	Singular	Plural
1*st person*	**–ō** (or **–m**) = *I*	**–mus** = *we*
2*nd* "	**–s** = *you*	**–tis** = *you*
3*rd* "	**–t** = *he, she, it*	**–nt** = *they*

Present Stem. — The **present infinitive active** of all regular verbs ends in **–re: accūsā*re*, parā*re*.**

Fig. 12. Playing Jacks with Knucklebones
Clay figurines in the British Museum.

The present tense of any verb is formed by adding the personal endings directly to the **present stem,** obtained from the infinitive by dropping the ending **–re.** The hundreds of regular verbs in Latin are divided, according to the present stem, into four classes called **conjugations.** The present stem of verbs of the **first conjugation** ends in **–ā.** Thus **parō, parāre** (present stem **parā–**) is conjugated in the present indicative active as follows:

Singular	Plural
pa′**rō,** *I prepare, am preparing, do prepare*	parā′**mus,** *we prepare, are preparing, do prepare*
pa′**rās,** *you prepare, are preparing, do prepare*	parā′**tis,** *you prepare, are preparing, do prepare*
pa′**rat,** *he, she, it prepares, is preparing, does prepare*	pa′**rant,** *they prepare, are preparing, do prepare*

a. **Remember** that all vowels are shortened before **–nt** and final **–m** or **–t,** and that **–ā–** disappears entirely before final **ō** in the first singular.

b. **Observe** the three ways to translate each Latin verb form — **common, progressive,** and **emphatic.** In English, when *am* and *do* are used as auxiliary verbs, they have no Latin equivalent.

24. Drill. — Give the present indicative active of **accūsō** and **portō,** translating each form in three ways

25. Exercises

Oral. 1. Accūsō; parās; portat. 2. Portāmus; accūsātis; parant. 3. Ubi est Longa Īnsula? 4. Causae sunt vērae. 5. Īnsula nova est parva. 6. Ubi est silva magna? 7. Ubi sunt puellae bonae?

Completion. 1. Via bon__ est nov__. 2. Caus__ sunt bon__. 3. Ubi est puell__ parv__? 4. Portā__ (*we*); para__ (*they*); accūsā__ (*you, plur.*); porta__ (*she*).

Written. 1. The reason is true. 2. The new islands are small. 3. Where are large forests? 4. He does accuse; they prepare; he is carrying.

FIG. 13. PUELLA ROSĀS PORTAT

26. Rosae

Puella parva corbulam[1] novam portat. In corbulā sunt rosae.[2] Ubi rosās puella parat? Puella eās[3] in silvā magnā parat. Ubi silva est? In īnsulā longā silva est.

[1] *basket.* [2] *roses.* [3] *them.*

LESSON VI

FIRST DECLENSION: THE ACCUSATIVE CASE

27. Vocabulary

Nouns		Verb	
a′qua, *water*	(aqueous)	**pro′bō, probā′re,** *test, prove, approve*	(probation)
māte′ria, *matter, timber*	(material)		
nau′ta, m., *sailor*	(nautical)		
Conjunction		**Adjective**	
et, *and*		**mul′ta,** *much;* plur., *many*	(multitude)

Dictionary Drill. Consult a large dictionary to see how many interesting facts you can discover about the derivatives of words in this vocabulary. How does a *nautical* mile differ from an ordinary mile?

28. Latin Phrases in English

Magna Charta, the *Great Paper*, or document, which is the corner stone of English liberty.

māteria medica, *material*, such as herbs, used in making *medicines*.

Fortūna caeca est, *Fortune is blind.*

Fig. 14. Cupids Playing Hide and Seek

From an ancient wall painting.

29. Accusative: Direct Object (*Study* 622, *b*; 623, *b*.)

The endings of the **accusative** in the **first declension** are:

	Singular	Plural
	-am	**-ās**
Examples:	**viam**	**viās**

1. **Anna nautam accūsat,** *Anna blames the sailor.*
2. **Nauta Annam accūsat,** *The sailor blames Anna.*
3. (*a*) ***I** saw **him.*** (*b*) ***He** saw **me.***

Observe in the preceding sentences:

(*a*) In 1 and 2 a noun in English does not undergo change to indicate the direct object in the accusative (objective) case, but difference in case depends solely upon word order and sense.

(*b*) In 3 (*a*) and (*b*) personal pronouns, on the other hand, have different forms for the accusative.

(*c*) In Latin the accusative of a noun is distinguished from the nominative by its ending.

30. Rule. — *The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative* (**613,** *a*).

Caution. — A noun is not necessarily in the accusative because it is used with or after a verb. **Est** and **sunt** serve as an equation sign (=) and take the same case after them as before them:

Italy is a country, **Italia est terra.**

Query. — Why is it incorrect to say in English, *It is **him**?*

Fig. 15. A Roman Key of Bronze

31. Drill. — Give the Latin nominative and accusative, singular and plural, of *island, fortune, matter, water.*

32. Agreement

1. **Nauta aquam portat,** *The sailor carries water.*
2. **Viam parāmus,** *We are preparing a way.*
3. **Anna et nauta causās probant,** *Anna and the sailor approve the reasons.*

Observe the following points:

(*a*) The verb in each sentence shows the person and number of its subject by means of personal endings.

(*b*) The personal endings are not translated by pronoun subjects when a noun subject occurs.

(*c*) The verb stands last.

(*d*) Two singular subjects connected by **et** require a plural verb.

33. Rule. — *A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.*

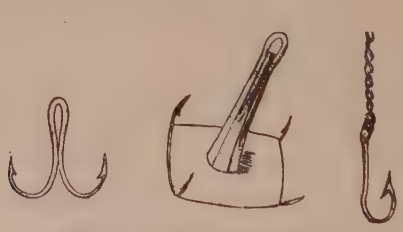


Fig. 16. Roman Fishhooks

34. Exercises

Oral. 1. Nautās accūsō. 2. Causās bonās probātis. 3. Multam māteriam parāmus. 4. Fāmam et fortūnam probās. 5. Nautae multās causās probant. 6. Puella et nauta multam aquam portant. 7. Causae sunt multae et vērae. 8. Nautae māteriam portant.

Completion. 1. Naut__ (*plur.*) accūsāmus. 2. Aqu__ porta__ (*he*). 3. Ubi sunt silv__? 4. Naut__ (*sing.*) accūsā__ (*you, plur.*). 5. Causam bon__ probā__ (*we*).

Written. 1. You (*sing.*) approve; you (*plur.*) are carrying; we do prepare. 2. We are carrying water. 3. The girl approves many reasons. 4. Where are the small islands?

Fig. 17. Via Appia

35. Viae Bonae

Viae Rōmānae erant[1] bonae. Viae Rōmānae magnam fāmam habēbant.[2] Ubi sunt malae[3] viae? Multae viae Americānae sunt malae, sed[4] America multās bonās viās parat. Novās viās probāmus. Ubi sunt bonae viae?

[1] *were.* [2] *had.* [3] *bad.* [4] *but.*

36. GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE

Roman Roads and Travel

While the Romans had no railroads, automobiles, steamships, or airplanes, they had better facilities for getting about than the modern world had until the introduction of steamships and steam railroads a hundred years ago. This was due to their wonderful system of roads. Only in the last few years, as a result of automobile travel, have our roads begun to compare with the Roman roads. The secret of these roads was that they were built like walls (cf. **viam mūnīre, 201,** 7).

FIG. 18. VIA LATĪNA

The **Via Latīna** ran from Rome to the southeast.

The Romans were such excellent road builders because they saw the need of having good highways in order to maintain communication with the various parts of their extensive empire. Even in the early days when Rome was conquering Italy, it started its policy of road construction. The most important road in Italy, the Appian Way (cf. Fig. 17), was built by Appius Claudius in 312 B.C. It led to Capua, the most important city in southern Italy. Later it was extended across Italy to Brundisium, the seaport from which travelers sailed to Greece and the Orient. Parts of the Appian Way and of other Roman roads are in use to-day.

Horses, mules, carriages or omnibuses, and litters were used by travelers who did not wish to go on foot. Along all the roads there were milestones to indicate distances. Often there were benches on which the weary traveler might rest. Watering troughs for horses and fountains for men were provided. Of course travel was slow. Fifty to sixty miles a day was fast time for people in a great hurry. Ordinarily, twenty-five to thirty-five miles was a fair daily average. A trip that we now make comfortably in a night while asleep in a Pullman car took ten or twelve days.

If the roads were better than ours, the hotel accommodations were much worse. In fact, there were only small inns, which were usually dirty and uncomfortable. The wealthier classes stayed overnight at country villas belonging to themselves or their friends, or in the town houses of people they knew. It was not uncommon for rich Romans to have half a dozen or more villas scattered throughout Italy.

Travel by water was avoided as much as possible. Roman ships were small sailing vessels which were also equipped with oars (Figs. 19, 25). Sailing was dangerous, and the boats stayed near the shore as much as possible.

Read Davis, pp. 454–456; McDaniel, pp. 168–178; Johnston, pp. 282–287; Preston and Dodge, pp. 135–149.[1]

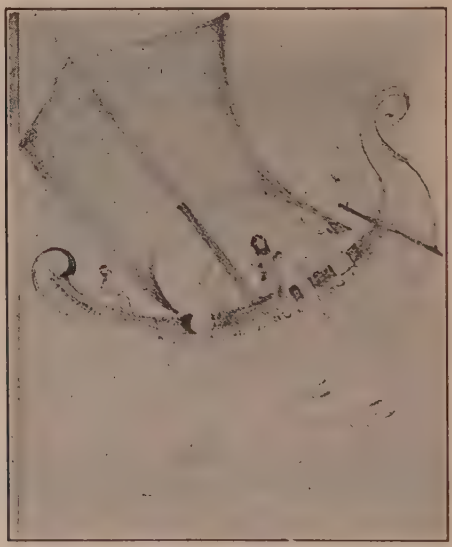


FIG. 19. A ROMAN SHIP

From a wall painting found at Pompeii. The unsteadiness of the boat is vividly portrayed.

[1] For full titles of these books see **599**.

LESSON VII

FIRST CONJUGATION: IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

37. Vocabulary

Nouns		Verbs	
agri'cola, m., *farmer*		**a'mō, amā're,** *love*	(amiable)
fī'lia, *daughter*	(filial)	**vās'tō, vāstā're,** *lay waste*	
ter'ra, *land, earth*	(territory)		(devastate)

Adjectives		Linking Verb	
lā'ta, *wide*	(latitude)	**e'rat,** *he, she, it was*	
plā'na, *level*	(plane)	**e'rant,** *they were*	

38. English Word Studies

The following, now regarded as English words, have been adopted from the Latin without change in the nominative singular. Their plurals sometimes end in **–ae,** but usually in **–s,** like most English nouns:

amoeba, arena, aurora, camera, copula, formula

Fig. 20. Scene in an Inn

This ancient picture shows, on the left, two men quarreling over a game; on the right, the innkeeper telling them to do their quarreling outdoors.

39. Imperfect Indicative Active (*Study* 627, *a.*)

A regular verb forms its imperfect tense by adding the tense sign **–bā–** to the present stem and then attaching the personal endings:[1]

Singular	Plural
parā′**bam,** *I was preparing, did prepare, prepared*	parābā′**mus,** *we were preparing,* etc.
parā′**bās,** *you were preparing,* etc.	parābā′**tis,** *you were preparing,* etc.
parā′**bat,** *he, she, it was preparing,* etc.	parā′**bant,** *they were preparing,* etc.

Note that the personal ending for the first person singular is **–m** (not –ō as in the present tense). Observe that the Latin imperfect, like the English progressive past, denotes *continuous, habitual,* or *repeated* action (or being) in past time.

40. Drill. — Give the imperfect indicative active of **amō, accūsō, vāstō,** with meanings.

41. Exercises

Oral. 1. Ubi erat Anna**?** 2. Nauta**m** accūsābāmus. 3. Causā**s** bonā**s** probātis. 4. Ubi est terra nova**?** 5. Viae erant lātae et plānae. 6. Nauta fīliam amābat et fīlia nautam amābat. 7. Terrā**s** multā**s** vāstābātis. 8. Agricolae aquam et māteriam portābant.

Completion. 1. Terr__ amābat. 2. Terr__ erat lāt__ et plān__. 3. Terr__ (*sing.*) vāstā__ (*we were*). 4. Nautae aqu__ ama__ (*pres.*). 5. Anna et Clāra puell__ bon__ era__.

[1] A similar formation is seen in the English solemn style: **accūsā-bā-s,** (thou) *accuse-d-st.*

Written. 1. He accused; we were preparing; they did love. 2. We love; you (*sing.*) carried; they are getting. 3. They laid waste the land. 4. The little street was new and wide. 5. Where are the good streets?

FIG. 21. PŪPAE

At the left, two jointed dolls of clay; at the right, a rag doll. They are now in the British Museum.

42. Puellae Rōmānae

Puellae Rōmānae Rōmam et Italiam amābant. Puellae Americānae Americam amant. Puellae Rōmānae erant magnae et parvae, bonae et malae.[1] Puellae Americānae sunt magnae et parvae, bonae et malae. Parvae puellae Rōmānae pūpās[2] amābant et portābant. Parvae puellae Americānae pūpās amant et portant.

Read Davis, pp. 190–191; Johnston, §102.

[1] *bad.* [2] *dolls.*

LESSON VIII

FIRST DECLENSION: GENITIVE CASE

43. Vocabulary

Nouns		Verb	
cō'pia, *supply, abundance;* plur., *forces, troops*	(copious)	**spec'tō, spectā're,** *look at, face*	(spectacle)
cū'ra, *care, concern*	(curator)	Adjective	
fōr'ma, *shape*	(form)	**clā'ra,** *clear, famous*	(clarify)

Conjunction

sed, *but*

44. English Word Studies

The following words have been borrowed without change from the Latin. Each has an English plural in **–s** (wherever used):

inertia, insomnia, militia, nausea, saliva

45. Genitive (*Study* **623,** *d.*)

In English, possession is indicated by the genitive (possessive) case ending in *–'s*, or by the accusative (objective) with *of: the boy's father* or *the father of the boy.*

In Latin, we have already seen that a noun undergoes change in case ending to show a change in case relation. Possession is expressed by the **genitive** case. The genitive endings of the first declension are:

	Singular	Plural
	–ae	**–ārum**
Examples:	**viae**	**viārum**

1. **īnsulae viae,** *the roads of the island.*
2. **īnsulārum viae,** *the roads of the islands.*

46. Drill. — Write the Latin nominative, genitive, and accusative, singular and plural, of *water*, *supply*, *sailor*, *land*.

47. Exercises

Oral. 1. Agricolās amāmus. 2. Fīlia agricolae est parva. 3. Puella magnam cōpiam aquae portat. 4. Magnās cōpiās īnsulae clārae spectābāmus. 5. Est[1] cōpia aquae. 6. Cūrae Annae erant multae sed parvae. 7. Nautae cōpiam aquae clārae portābant. 8. Fōrma īnsulae erat nova.

Fig. 22. Cōpia Aquae Bonae
This aqueduct near Rome was built by the emperor Claudius (41–54 A.D.).

Completion. 1. Ann__ (*Anna's*) cūrae erant mult__. 2. Magn__ erat cūra naut__ (*of the sailors*). 3. Silvās īnsul__ clār__ spectā__ (*they looked at*). 4. Cōpiam aqu__ bon__ portā__ (*I was carrying*). 5. Viae lāt__ sunt bon__.

[1] Supply *there*, which is omitted in Latin when it does not refer to place.

Written. 1. The sailors accused Anna. 2. Anna looked-at[1] the sailors. 3. Where did they get the water supply[2]? 4. The sailor's reasons were true. 5. We are carrying an abundance of good water.

FIG. 23. RUĪNAE RŌMĀNAE

An unusual picture of the Arch of Constantine and part of the Colosseum, taken on one of the rare occasions when snow is seen in Rome.

48. Rōma

Rōma prīmō[3] parva erat. Posteā[4] magna et clāra rēgīna[5] terrārum erat. Viae Rōmae erant longae sed nōn[6] lātae. Cōpia aquae bonae erat magna. Nunc[7] fāma Rōmae magna est. Rōmam amāmus et ruīnās Rōmae saepe[8] spectāmus. Ubi est Rōma?

---

[1] Words connected by hyphens are to be expressed by one word in Latin.
[2] Cf. Oral 3. [3] *at first.* [4] *afterwards.* [5] *queen.* [6] *not.*
[7] *now.* [8] *often.*

LESSON IX

FIRST CONJUGATION: FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

49. Vocabulary

NOUNS

fami'lia, fami'liae, f.,[1] *household, family* (familiar)

pecū'nia, pecū'niae, f., *money* (pecuniary)

prae'da, prae'dae, f., *booty, prey* (predatory)

un'da, un'dae, f., *wave* (undulate)

VERB

nā'vigō, nāvigā're, *sail* (navigation)

PREPOSITION

ad, with acc., *to, toward* (with verbs of motion); *near* (with verbs of rest)

What other derivatives are suggested by these words?

FIG. 24. PECŪNIA

In early times the Romans did their trading with sheep and oxen (**pecus**). Then bars of bronze bearing the figure of an ox, as above, were used for money. Each piece weighed five pounds and was worth sixteen cents. But the cost of living was very low then.

50. English Word Studies

The following are additional loan words of the first declension with an English plural in **-s**:

area, corolla, dementia, toga, villa

---

[1] Memorize the nominative, genitive, and gender, in addition to the meaning, of each noun as printed in all vocabularies.

51. Future Indicative Active (*Study* 626, *c.*)

The **future active** is formed by adding the tense sign **–bi–** (corresponding to *shall* and *will* in English) to the present stem before attaching the personal endings:

Singular	Plural
parā'**bō**, *I shall prepare*	parā'**bimus**, *we shall prepare*
parā'**bis**, *you will prepare*	parā'**bitis**, *you will prepare*
parā'**bit**, *he, she, it will prepare*	parā'**bunt**, *they will prepare*

Note that the future sign **–bi–** loses **i** before **–ō** in the 1st sing. and changes to **–bu–** before **–nt** in the 3rd plur.

52. Drill. — Give the future indicative active, with meanings, of **spectō, probō, nāvigō.**

53. Exercises

Oral. 1. Ubi magnam cōpiam pecūniae parābis? 2. Ad terram novam nāvigābimus. 3. Pecūnia est vēra causa cūrārum. 4. Magnae undae sunt ad īnsulam. 5. Nautae ad īnsulam nāvigābunt. 6. Nautae erant ad terram. 7. Praedam ad silvam portābunt. 8. Anna cōpiam aquae ad familiam portābit.

Completion. 1. Ubi sunt silv__ īnsul__ (*of the island*)? 2. Est cōpia māteri__ bon __. 3. Cōpiam pecūni__ et praed__ parā__ (*we shall get*). 4. Familia naut__ (*sailor's*) ad īnsul__ lāt__ nāvigā__ (*will sail*).

Written. 1. We shall sail to the new land. 2. They will look-at the large waves. 3. I shall carry the money to the farmer's family. 4. Many are the cares of the sailors. 5. The roads of the large island were level and wide.

FIG. 25. NAUTAE NĀVEM PARANT

The ship is obviously a freighter in the process of loading. The skipper (**magister**) is at the left. From an ancient wall painting found at Ostia, the seaport of Rome, at the mouth of the Tiber.

54. Eurōpa

Ad Eurōpam nāvigābimus. Magnam pecūniam ad Eurōpam portābimus. Undās magnās spectābimus. Ad īnsulās clārās, Britanniam, Hiberniam,[1] Siciliam, nāvigābimus. Galliam,[2] Italiam, Germāniam, Hispāniam[3] spectābimus. Nautae nāvem[4] parant.

---

[1] *Ireland.* [2] *Gaul* (*France*). [3] *Spain.* [4] Accusative singular of **nāvis** (*ship*).

LESSON X

FIRST DECLENSION: DATIVE CASE. INDIRECT OBJECT

55. Vocabulary

NOUNS

lit'tera, lit'terae, f., *letter* (of the alphabet); plur., *letter, epistle* (literary)

poe'na, poe'nae, f., *penalty, punishment* (penal)

victō'ria, victō'riae, f., *victory* (victorious)

VERBS

dō'nō, dōnā're, *give, present* (donation)

man'dō, mandā're, *intrust* (mandate)

mōns'trō, mōnstrā're, *point out, show* (demonstration)

nūn'tiō, nūntiā're, *report, announce* (denunciation)

ADJECTIVE

grā'ta, *pleasing, grateful* (gratify)

56. English Word Studies

Always try to see the relation between the meaning of the English derivative and the Latin word from which it comes, and then use the derivative in a sentence.

(*a*) A thing is "familiar" when it is well known, like something belonging to the *family*.

(*b*) An author is a man of "letters," or a "literary" man; a "literal" translation is one that is almost *letter for letter*.

(*c*) An "undulating" motion is like that of the *waves*.

(*d*) A "mandate" is something *intrusted* to a person or a group, as the government of a weak nation.

(*e*) A "navigable" river is one on which *sailing* is possible.

(*f*) A "novelty" is something *new*.

(*g*) A person who is on "probation" is being *tested*.

57. Dative: Indirect Object (*Study* 623, *c.*)

The endings of the **dative** case in the **first declension** are:

	Singular	Plural
	-ae	**-īs**
Examples:	**viae**	**viīs**

Nautae pecūniam dōnō, *I give money to the sailor,* or *I give the sailor money.*

Observe the following points:

(1) In addition to the direct object (**pecūniam,** *money*) in the accusative, an indirect object (**nautae,** *sailor*) may be used to indicate the receiver.

(2) In Latin the indirect object is expressed by the dative, but in English it may be expressed either by the dative, as in the second translation, or by the accusative with *to* (or *for*).

(3) In English there is no separate form for the dative, as there is in Latin.

(4) In Latin and English the dative is placed before the accusative.

(5) The genitive and dative singular have the same ending.

58. Rule. — *The indirect object of a verb is in the dative.* It is used with verbs of *giving, reporting, telling, showing,* etc.

Caution. — After verbs of motion like "come" and "go," *to* is expressed in Latin, as in English, by a preposition (**ad** with the acc.).

1. He reported the accident *to the officer* (dative of indirect object).
2. He went *to the city* (accusative with **ad**).

59. Drill. — Give the Latin nominative, genitive, dative, and accusative, singular and plural, of *family, money, care, reason, farmer.*

60. Exercises

Oral. 1. Nautīs poenam nūntiābimus. 2. Familiae pecūniam dōnābit. 3. Fortūnam bonam et fāmam magnam amāmus. 4. Puellae litterās mandābimus. 5. Agricolīs victōriam grātam nūntiābō. 6. Aquam clāram et bonam ad īnsulam parvam portābant. 7. Annae viās silvae mōnstrābō. 8. Anna Clārae magnam pecūniam dōnābit.

Completion. 1. Pecūniam naut__ (*plur.*) dōnābimus. 2. Nautae _____ (*to the islands*) nāvigābunt. 3. Litterās naut__ (*sing.*) mandābō. 4. Litterās _____ (*to Anna*) portā__ (*she will carry*). 5. _____ (*to Clara*) pecūniam dōnā__ (*she gave*).

Written. 1. We shall intrust the money to Anna. 2. He is giving money to many families. 3. He will report the punishment to Anna. 4. I shall intrust the letter to the sailor. 5. They point-out the wide road to the sailors.

61. Columbus

Columbus nauta ad Hispāniam nāvigat. Isabellae, rēgīnae[1] Hispāniae, nūntiat: "Terra nōn[2] plāna est; probābō!" Isabella nautae pecūniam dōnat. Columbus nauta nāvigat et probat; terram novam Americam mōnstrat. Nunc[3] fāma nautae magna est.

---

[1] *queen.* [2] *not.* [3] *now.*

© *International*

FIG. 26. OSTIA FROM AN AIRPLANE

LESSON XI

FIRST DECLENSION: ABLATIVE CASE. MEANS

62. Vocabulary

Nouns	Verbs
iniū′ria, iniū′riae, f., *wrong, injustice* (injurious)	**in′citō, incitā′re,** *urge on, arouse* (excitement)
memo′ria, memo′riae, f., *memory* (memorial)	**oc′cupō, occupā′re,** *seize* (occupation)
pug′na, pug′nae, f., *battle* (pugnacious)	**pug′nō, pugnā′re,** *fight* (pugnacity)
vī′ta, vī′tae, f., *life* (vital)	**ser′vō, servā′re,** *save, guard* (conservation)

63. Latin Phrases in English

Nova Scōtia, *New Scotland,* a province in Canada.
aqua vītae, *water of life,* formerly applied to alcohol.
ad nauseam, *to* (the point of) *seasickness* or *disgust.*

64. Ablative

In English, the object of any preposition is in the accusative (objective).

In Latin, the object of some prepositions is in the accusative; of others, in a special case called the **ablative,** the endings of which are:

	Singular	Plural
	–ā	**–īs**
Examples:	**viā**	**viīs**

65. Ablative of Means

Many ideas expressed by prepositional phrases in English are expressed in Latin by the ablative alone without a preposition, as the following common type:

Litterīs victōriam nūntiant, *They report the victory by-means-of a letter.*

Observe that **litterīs** (abl.) shows *by-what-means* they report, and that no preposition is used.

66. Rule. — *Means or instrument is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

67. Sentence Analysis. — Before writing the translation of an English sentence into Latin, make it your practice to place above every noun the case and number required in the Latin sentence, as follows:

NOM. S. ACC. S. DAT. S.
1. The *man* gave a *book* to the *boy*.

GEN. S. NOM. S. ACC. S. ABL. S.
2. My *friend's son* saved his *life* by *flight*.

68. Exercises

Oral. 1. Pugnīs īnsulam vāstābātis. 2. Aquā vītam Annae servābō. 3. Pugnābimus et terram novam occupābimus. 4. Litterīs familiae magnam victōriam nūntiābit. 5. Viae silvārum grātae sunt. 6 Memoria iniūriae nautās incitābit. 7. Victōriīs vītam et terram et pecūniam servābant. 8. Magnā pecūniā multās familiās servābitis. 9. Columbus nautīs īnsulam parvam mōnstrābat.

Completion. 1. Victōri__ (*by victory*) terram servā__ (*we saved*). 2. Aqu__ (*with water*) silvam serva__ (*they save*). 3. Pecūni__ nautās incitā__ (*I shall urge on*). 4. Cōpi__ (*with troops*) īnsulam occupā__ (*they will seize*). 5. Pecūniam agricol__ (*to the farmer*) dōnā__ (*I shall give*).

Written. 1. By-the-victory we shall save the island. 2. We urged on the sailors with-money. 3. The memory of (their) wrongs will arouse the sailors. 4. I shall announce the victory to the family. 5. The farmers saved the timber of the forest with-water.

69. Gallia

Cōpiae Rōmānae Galliam occupant et Gallī[1] fortūnās et familiās silvīs mandant. Sed memoria iniūriārum Galliam ad pugnam incitat. Gallī[1] Rōmānīs[2] nūntiant:

"Terram nostram[3] occupātis et pugnīs vāstātis. Praedam magnam ad Italiam portātis. Sed pugnābimus et victōriīs vītam et pecūniam nostram[3] servābimus. Victōriās grātās Rōmae nōn nūntiābitis."

Gallī pugnant, sed multae et clārae sunt victōriae Rōmānae. Ubi est Gallia?

[1] *the Gauls.* [2] *to the Romans.* [3] *our.*

FIG. 27. VICTŌRIA

A bronze stand showing a winged victory.

LESSON XII

FIRST DECLENSION SUMMARIZED. IMPERATIVE

70. Vocabulary

NOUNS

hō'ra, hō'rae, f., *hour*

prōvin'cia, prōvin'ciae, f., *province* (provincial)

ADJECTIVES

quīn'ta, *fifth* (quintet)

tu'a, *your* (referring to one person)

VERBS

lau'dō, laudā're, *praise* (laudation)

lī'berō, līberā're, *free, set free* (liberator)

ADVERB

nunc, *now*

71. First Declension: A Summary

	ENDINGS		ENGLISH FORCE	**via longa,** *a long way*	
	SING.	PLUR.		SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	**–a**	**–ae**	Subject	**vi'a lon'ga**	**vi'ae lon'gae**
Gen.	**–ae**	**–ārum**	Possessive (*of*)	**vi'ae lon'gae**	**viā'rum lon'gā'rum**
Dat.	**–ae**	**–īs**	Indir. obj. (*to* or *for*)	**vi'ae lon'gae**	**vi'īs lon'gīs**
Acc.	**–am**	**–ās**	Direct obj.	**vi'am lon'gam**	**vi'ās lon'gās**
Abl.	**–ā**	**–īs**	*from, by, with, in*	**vi'ā lon'gā**	**vi'īs lon'gīs**

Observe the following points:

(1) The nominative and ablative singular both end in **–a,** but the **–a** is long in the ablative.

(2) The genitive and dative singular and the nominative plural have the same ending (**–ae**).

(3) The dative and ablative plural have the same ending (**–īs**).

(4) Most of the endings contain **–a,** for this is the **A-Declension.**

72. Base. — That part of a word to which endings are attached is called the **base**. The base of a noun or adjective is obtained by dropping the genitive singular ending: gen. sing., **viae,** base, **vi–.**

73. Drill. — Decline together in all cases, singular and plural (like **via longa**), **cōpia magna, silva grāta,** and **victōria parva.**

74. Present Imperative Active

Commands are expressed in Latin and English by the **imperative mood.**

The present active imperative singular of all conjugations is the *present stem* of the verb (**23**): **vocā,** *call!* In all conjugations except the third, the plural is formed by adding **–te** to the singular: **vocāte,** *call!*

75. Drill. — Form the singular imperative of *fight, praise, carry, report;* the plural imperative of *give, accuse, save, set free.*

76. Exercises

Oral. 1. Servā pecūniam tuam et pecūnia tua tē (*you*) servābit. 2. Amā fīliam tuam et fīlia tua tē amābit. 3. Nunc quīnta hōra est; nāvigābimus. Mōnstrāte viam! 4. Nautae vītam agricolārum laudant et agricolae vītam nautārum laudant. 5. Nunc est hōra! Pugnāte et līberāte prōvinciam!

Completion. 1. Incitā__ (*imper. plur.*) naut__ (*plur.*). 2. Vāstā__ (*imper. plur.*) prōvinci__ (*sing.*). 3. Laudā__(*plur.*) puellās. 4. Dōnā pecūniam tuam agricol__ (*sing.*). 5. Agricolae, laudā__ fīliās bon__.

Written. 1. Girls, look-at the large waves. 2. Accuse the farmer and he will fight. 3. Intrust your fame to fortune. 4. Sailors, now sail to the province and announce the victory.

FIG. 28. PUELLA RŌMĀNA
A marble bust in a museum in Rome.

77. Latin Words in French, Spanish, and Italian

The Romance languages, which are derived from Latin, have borrowed words from it with little or no change. This may be seen at a glance from the following list of nine words selected from the vocabularies of previous lessons.

FRENCH	SPANISH	ITALIAN
accuser	acusar	accusare
porter	portar	portare
matériel	materia	materia
terre	tierra	terra
forme	forma	forma
famille	familia	famiglia
lettre	letra	lettera

Judging from the Latin, what does each of these French, Spanish, and Italian words mean?

(For the relation of Latin to the Romance languages, see Appendix, **French and Spanish through Latin, 662–679.**)

FIG. 29. CLĀRA ANNAE DŌNA MŌNSTRAT

78. Puellae et Māter

Anna. Ubi est Cornēlia?

Clāra. Ad īnsulam longam nāvigat.

Anna. Puellae, spectāte undās magnās. Fortūna Cornēliae nōn[1] bona est.

Claudia. Clāra, mōnstrā Annae dōna[2] tua nova.

Clāra. Spectā, Anna. Dōna amō.

Māter.[3] Fīliae, portāte aquam ad casam[4] et cēnam[5] parāte. Quīnta hōra est.

Clāra. Aquam portāmus, māter. Valē,[6] Anna.

---

[1] *not.* [2] *gifts.* [3] *mother.* [4] *house.* [5] *dinner.* [6] Imperative: *good-by.*

FIRST REVIEW (LESSONS IV–XII)

79. Vocabulary Review

The English meanings of these Latin words will be found with corresponding numbers on the following page. After learning the entire list both ways, ask some one to test you by reading the words in the Latin list. As each word is read, give the English meaning.

Nouns

1. **agricola**
2. **aqua**
3. **causa**
4. **cōpia**
5. **cūra**
6. **fāma**
7. **familia**
8. **fīlia**
9. **fōrma**
10. **fortūna**
11. **hōra**
12. **iniūria**
13. **īnsula**
14. **littera**
15. **māteria**
16. **memoria**
17. **nauta**
18. **pecūnia**
19. **poena**
20. **praeda**
21. **prōvincia**
22. **puella**
23. **pugna**
24. **silva**
25. **terra**
26. **unda**
27. **victōria**
28. **via**
29. **vīta**

Adjectives

30. **bona**
31. **clāra**
32. **grāta**
33. **lāta**
34. **longa**
35. **magna**
36. **multa**
37. **nova**
38. **parva**
39. **plāna**
40. **quīnta**
41. **tua**
42. **vēra**

Verbs

43. **accūsō**
44. **amō**
45. **dōnō**
46. **erat**
47. **erant**
48. **est**
49. **incitō**
50. **laudō**
51. **līberō**
52. **mandō**
53. **mōnstrō**
54. **nāvigō**
55. **nūntiō**
56. **occupō**
57. **parō**
58. **portō**
59. **pugnō**
60. **servō**
61. **spectō**
62. **sunt**
63. **vāstō**

Adverbs

64. **nunc**
65. **ubi**

Preposition

66. **ad**

Conjunctions

67. **et**
68. **sed**

80. Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. *farmer*
2. *water*
3. *cause*
4. *supply*
5. *care*
6. *report*
7. *family*
8. *daughter*
9. *shape*
10. *fortune*
11. *hour*
12. *wrong*
13. *island*
14. *letter*
15. *matter, timber*
16. *memory*
17. *sailor*
18. *money*
19. *punishment*
20. *booty*
21. *province*
22. *girl*
23. *battle*
24. *forest*
25. *land*
26. *wave*
27. *victory*
28. *way*
29. *life*

Adjectives

30. *good*
31. *clear*
32. *pleasing*
33. *wide*
34. *long*
35. *large*
36. *much*
37. *new*
38. *little*
39. *level*
40. *fifth*
41. *your*
42. *true*

Verbs

43. *accuse*
44. *love*
45. *give*
46. *was*
47. *were*
48. *is*
49. *urge on*
50. *praise*
51. *set free*
52. *intrust*
53. *point out*
54. *sail*
55. *report*
56. *seize*
57. *get*
58. *carry*
59. *fight*
60. *save, keep*
61. *look at*
62. *are*
63. *lay waste*

Adverbs

64. *now*
65. *where*

Preposition

66. *to*

Conjunctions

67. *and*
68. *but*

81. Multiple-Choice Vocabulary Test

(*To the Teacher.*) Make up a test of ten words, giving five meanings for each Latin word. Place a mimeographed copy in the hands of each pupil and have him

underscore the correct meaning.[1] Such a test should be limited to two minutes. *Sample:*

1. **portō . . .** get sail carry seize report

82. Perception Cards for Word Reviews. — An excellent way to review vocabularies is by the use of "flash" cards. The Latin word should be printed on one side and the English meaning on the other. The lettering should be large enough to be seen clearly when held before the class.

83. English Word Studies

Give the nominative, genitive, gender, and meaning of the Latin noun suggested by each of the following English derivatives:

aqueduct, causal, copious, curate, fortunate, injure, insulation, literature, memorable, nautical, pecuniary, penalize, pugnacity, viaduct

84. Form Review

Drill. — (*a*) Give the singular and plural of the following nouns in the cases required:

(1) **victōria** in the dative; (2) **poena** in the genitive; (3) **unda** in the ablative; (4) **īnsula** in the accusative; (5) **littera** in the nominative.

(*b*) Translate into Latin:

(1) *a large island* in the nom., sing. and plur.
(2) *the true reason* in the gen., sing. and plur.
(3) *a new letter* in the dat., sing. and plur.
(4) *a long battle* in the acc., sing. and plur.
(5) *great wrong* in the abl., sing. and plur.

[1] For these and other tests it will be found much more convenient to use the *Progress Tests in Latin*, by B. L. Ullman and A. W. Smalley, published by The Macmillan Company.

85. Blackboard Exercise (*To the Teacher*). — Write a number of miscellaneous forms in columns and ask for the possibilities of each with regard to case and number.

86. Form Tests

(*To the Teacher.*) Time-limited tests of the following type will be found helpful for both nouns and verbs, and will require little time to administer if mimeographed copies are prepared.

Sample: Place a check mark in the proper square to show the case and number of the Latin word.

	Singular					Plural				
	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
1. causās									✓	
2. cūrārum							✓			

Fig. 30. A Roman Arch in Reims, France

LESSON XIII

SECOND CONJUGATION: PRESENT SYSTEM ACTIVE

87. Vocabulary

NOUNS

disciplī'na, –ae,[1] f., *training, learning* (disciplinary)
lin'gua, –ae, f., *tongue, language* (linguistic)
pa'tria, –ae, f., *fatherland, country*

VERBS

au'geō, augē're, *increase* (augment)
do'ceō, docē're, *teach* (docile)
ha'beō, habē're, *have, hold* (habit)
ter'reō, terrē're, *terrify* (terrific)

ADVERB

nōn, *not* (nonconductor)

88. Second Conjugation: Present System Active

The verbs that have occurred in previous lessons contain the stem vowel –ā– and belong to the **first conjugation.** All verbs which show the stem vowel –ē– in the **present system** (present, imperfect, and future tenses) belong to the **second conjugation.**

FIG. 31. A ROMAN LAMP
Lamp and stand are of bronze. At the end of the handle is a mask.

[1] From now on only the genitive ending will be given instead of the full form. See **72.**

Present	
ha′beō, *I have, am having, do have*	habē′**mus,** *we have, are having, do have*
ha′bēs, *you have,* etc.	habē′**tis,** *you have,* etc.
ha′bet, *he, she, it has,* etc.	ha′**bent,** *they have,* etc.

Imperfect	
habē′**bam,** *I was having, did have, had*	habēbā′**mus,** *we were having, did have, had*
habē′**bās,** *you were having,* etc.	habēbā′**tis,** *you were having,* etc.
habē′**bat,** *he, she, it was having,* etc.	habē′**bant,** *they were having,* etc.

Future	
habē′**bō,** *I shall have*	habē′**bimus,** *we shall have*
habē′**bis,** *you will have*	habē′**bitis,** *you will have*
habē′**bit,** *he, she, it will have*	habē′**bunt,** *they will have*

89. Drill. — (*a*) Conjugate **doceō** in the present tense, **terreō** in the imperfect tense, and **augeō** in the future tense.

(*b*) Write the singular imperative of *fight, increase, teach;* write the plural imperative of *set free, have, terrify.*

90. Exercises

Oral. 1. Magnae undae Annam terrēbant. 2. Linguam patriae amāmus. 3. Multās linguās nōn docēbō. 4. Magnam victōriam patriae prōvinciīs nūntiābimus. 5. Magnae undae cūrās nautārum augent. 6. Anna linguās docet sed multam disciplīnam nōn habet. 7. Victōria cōpiārum cōpiam pecūniae nōn augēbit. 8. Magnam pecūniam et parvam disciplīnam habēbat.

Written. 1. He will teach; they increased; you (*sing.*) terrified; we have. 2. The sailors were frightening Anna. 3. Give your money to your country. 4. He is teaching languages. 5. Report the victory by letter.

91. English Word Studies

A number of Latin verb forms are preserved as English words. First conjugation: **veto, habitat, ignoramus, mandamus.** Second conjugation: **tenet.** For their meaning, see the dictionary.

The Latin ablative of the first declension is preserved in English in the word **via**: "I am going to New York *via* (by way of) Pittsburgh." The ablative plural is found in **gratis**: "He is giving this *gratis*" (out of favor, *i.e.* for nothing). *Gratis* is a contracted form of **grātiīs.**

92. Lingua Latīna

Patriam amāmus et amābimus. Disciplīnā fāmam patriae augēbimus. Lingua patriae nostrae nōn Latīna est. Sed linguā Latīnā scientiam nostrae linguae augēmus. Litterās Latīnās scrībēmus[1] et nāvī[2] mandābimus. Nāvis litterās nostrās ad puerōs[3] quī[4] in Eurōpā habitant portābit. In Britanniā, in Galliā, in Germāniā, in multīs terrīs magistrī[5] linguam Latīnam docent.

[1] *we shall write.* [2] *to a ship.* [3] *to the boys.* [4] *who.* [5] *teachers.*

LESSON XIV

PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE

93. Vocabulary

NOUNS

amīci′tia, -ae, f., *friendship* [*amō*][1]

glō′ria, -ae, f., *glory* (glorious)

grā′tia, -ae, f., *gratitude, favor, influence* [*grāta*]

vigi′lia, -ae, f., *watchfulness, guard* (vigilant)

VERBS

ma′neō, manē′re, *remain* (manse)

vi′deō, vidē′re, *see* (provide)

PREPOSITION

in, with abl., *in* or *on*

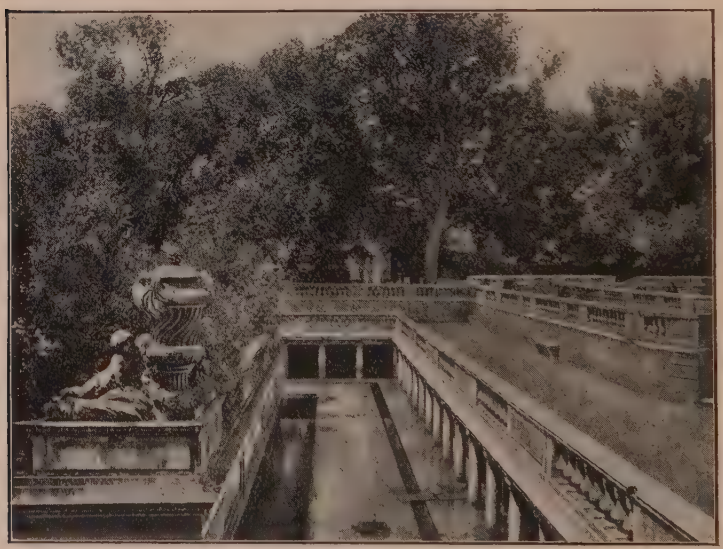


FIG. 32. ROMAN BATHS IN NÎMES, FRANCE

[1] When a new word in the vocabulary is related to a word previously studied, the latter is given in brackets instead of an English derivative.

94. Drill. — (*a*) Decline **magna grātia, vīta longa,** and **lingua nova.**

(*b*) Give in Latin:

(1)	*true friendship*	in the accusative, singular and plural.
(2)	*good memory*	in the genitive, singular and plural.
(3)	*a great country*	in the ablative, singular and plural.
(4)	*a famous language*	in the dative, singular and plural.

95. Prepositions of Place: *In*

In the preceding lessons the various relations of the English accusative with *of*, *to*, *for*, *by*, and *with* have been expressed in Latin by means of case endings without the use of prepositions. But certain constructions of the English accusative with prepositions require corresponding prepositions in Latin. Chief among these constructions in Latin are the three constructions of place — answering the questions (*a*) *Where?* (*b*) *Where from?* (*c*) *Where to?* — which will be discussed in this and the following lessons.

a. **Place Where. In** with the ablative = *in* or *on*.

Examples: **in silvā,** *in a forest.*
in viīs, *on the streets.*

96. Drill. — Write the Latin for the words in italics: 1. *Remain* and *see* the show. 2. They saw me *on the island.* 3. He hunted *in the provinces.* 4. *Show* me your new watch.

97. Exercises

Oral. 1. Magnam pecūniam in patriā nunc habēmus. 2. Magna erat grātia puellārum. 3. Nautae in terrā nōn manēbunt. 4. Laudāte vēram amīcitiam. 5. Cōpiae fāmam et glōriam patriae augēbunt. 6. Multās vigiliās in viīs videō. 7. Multam māteriam in silvīs vidēbitis.

Written. 1. We saw guards on the streets. 2. (There) is much timber in the forest. 3. The troops did not remain on the island. 4. We shall see many forests in the provinces. 5. Great is the glory of true friendship.

98. Latin Forms of English Names

Many English names of boys and girls are derived from Latin words (*a*) without, or (*b*) with change:

(*a*) Alma, *fostering;* Clara, *clear, bright;* Leo, *lion;* Stella, *star;* Sylvester, *pertaining to the woods.*

(*b*) Mabel, from **amābilis,** *lovable;* Belle, from **bella,** *beautiful;* Florence, from **flōrentia,** *flourishing;* Grace, from **grātia,** *grace, favor;* Margaret, from **margarīta,** *pearl.*

The following names were in common use among the Romans:

August, Augustus, *venerable;* Rufus, *red-haired;* Victor, *conqueror;* Vincent (**vincēns**), *conquering.*

Other Roman names still used in English are:

Emil and Emily (**Aemilius, Aemilia**); Cecilia (**Caecilia**); Claudia; Cornelius, Cornelia; Horace (**Horātius**); Julius, Julia; Mark (**Mārcus**); Paul (**Paulus**).

Exercise. — See whether any members of your class have names derived from Latin which are not included here.

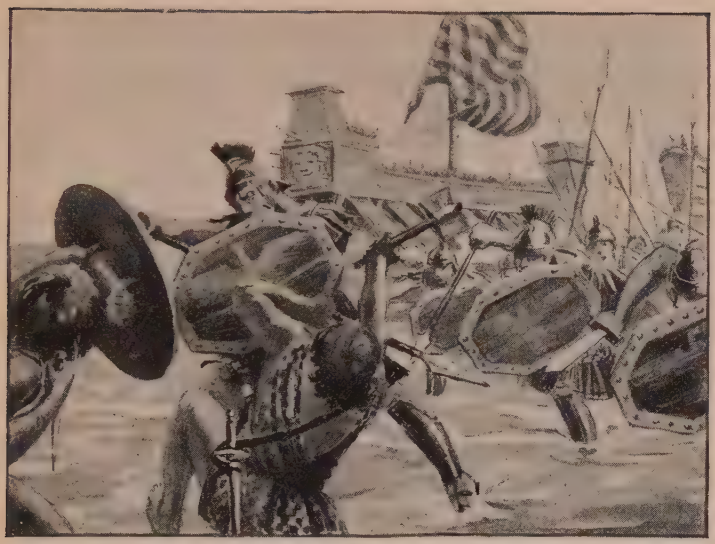


FIG. 33. CAESAR AD BRITANNIAM NĀVIGAT

99. Britannia

Caesar ad magnam īnsulam Britanniam nāvigat et Britannōs[1] pugnīs terret. Victōriās litterīs Rōmae nūntiat. Sed in Britanniā nōn manet. Īnsulam videt, nōn occupat. Undae magnae cūrās Caesaris[2] augent. Ubi est Britannia?

---

[1] *the Britons.* [2] *of Caesar.*

LESSON XV

SECOND DECLENSION: NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES IN *-US*

100. Vocabulary

NOUNS

car′rus, –ī, m., *cart, wagon* (car)
nu′merus, –ī, m., *number* (numerical)
ser′vus, –ī, m., *slave* (servile)
so′cius, so′cī, m., *comrade, ally* (associate)

ADJECTIVES

al′tus, –a, *high, deep* (altitude)
me′us, –a, *my, mine*
pū′blicus, –a, *public* (publish)

VERBS

me′reō, merē′re, *deserve, earn* (merit)
te′neō, tenē′re, *hold, keep* (retention)

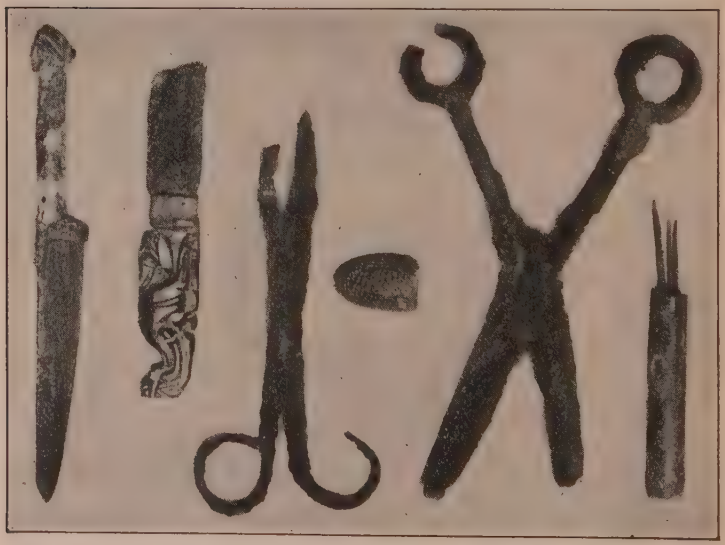


FIG. 34. ROMAN KNIVES AND SCISSORS
In the center, a thimble; at the right, a case of needles.

101. Second Declension: Nouns and Adjectives in *-us*

All nouns studied thus far have the genitive singular ending **-ae** and belong to the **first declension.** Nouns of the **second declension** have the genitive singular ending **-ī**; the endings of the other cases also are different. Nouns ending in **-us** in the nominative are masculine.

Adjectives of the first and second declensions are declined in the feminine like nouns of the first declension and in the masculine like those of the second declension.

Endings			English Force	**ser'vus bo'nus,** *a good slave* (base, **serv- bon-**)	
	Sing.	Plur.		Singular	Plural
Nom.	**-us (ius)**	**-ī**	Subject	ser'vus bo'nus	ser'vī bo'nī
Gen.	**-ī**	**-ōrum**	Possessive	ser'vī bo'nī	servō'rum bonō'rum
Dat.	**-ō**	**-īs**	Indir. obj.	ser'vō bo'nō	ser'vīs bo'nīs
Acc.	**-um**	**-ōs**	Direct obj.	ser'vum bo'num	ser'vōs bo'nōs
Abl.	**-ō**	**-īs**	With prepositions	ser'vō bo'nō	ser'vīs bo'nīs

Observe that:

(*a*) The genitive singular and the nominative plural have the same ending (**-ī**), just as these cases have the same ending (**-ae**) in the first declension.

(*b*) The dative and ablative singular have the same ending (**-ō**), likewise the dative and ablative plural (**-īs**); the latter is the same as in the first declension.

(*c*) Several of the endings include an **-o,** for this is the **O-Declension.**

(*d*) Nouns (not adjectives) ending in **-ius** usually contract **-iī** to

-ī in the genitive singular: **so'cii** becomes **so'cī.** The accent is not changed. The **-i-**, being a part of the base, appears in every form: dat. **so'ciō,** etc.

Caution. — The nominative plural does not contract.

(*e*) The nominative singular and plural are preserved in many English words: **alumnus, alumni.** Other examples are given in **104.**

102. Drill. — (*a*) Decline **carrus parvus, socius meus.**

(*b*) Give in Latin:

(1) *a good cart* in the nominative, singular and plural.
(2) *a new comrade* in the genitive, singular and plural.
(3) *a small number* in the dative, singular and plural.
(4) *a large forest* in the accusative, singular and plural.
(5) *a public slave* in the ablative, singular and plural.

103. Exercises

Oral. 1. Amīcitiam sociōrum merēmus. 2. Magnus numerus servōrum est in viā lātā. 3. Sociīs meīs et tuīs carrum novum mōnstrābō. 4. Vidēte magnum numerum carrōrum altōrum in viā pūblicā. 5. Fīlia mea servōs tuōs laudat. 6. Agricolae, līberāte servōs et merēte grātiam patriae. 7. Parvam cōpiam aquae bonae in īnsulā tenēbāmus.

Written. 1. Where did you see the allies' carts? 2. The slaves did not remain on the streets. 3. The strange language terrified the slaves. 4. We shall keep a large number of good wagons.

104. English Word Studies

The following are some words of the **–us** type preserved in English in their original form. Note that in English **–ī** is pronounced like *–i* in mile:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
alumnus	**alumni**
bacillus	**bacilli**
genius	**genii** (or **geniuses**, with different meaning)
radius	**radii** (or **radiuses**)
	literati (singular rare)

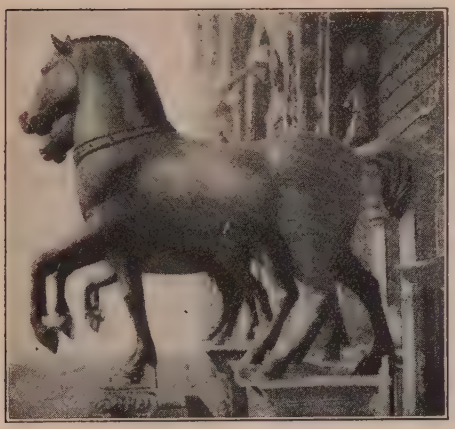


FIG. 35. EQUĪ

These magnificent bronze horses, made in Roman times, now stand over the entrance to the church of St. Mark's, Venice.

Other **–us** nouns without plurals or with plurals in **–es**: **campus, circus, discus.** Adjectives: **bonus, quietus** (both nouns in English).

105. Socius

Socius meus Mārcus in Altā Viā habitat. Carrum parvum et equum parvum habet. Equum incitat, et equus nōs[1] ad silvam portat. Via plāna et lāta est. In viā Mārcus equum mihi[2] mandat. In silvā manēbimus. Silva nōs nōn terret; silvam amāmus.

[1] *us.* [2] *to me.*

LESSON XVI

THE VOCATIVE CASE

106. Vocabulary

Noun	Verbs
captī′vus, –ī, m., *prisoner* (captivate)	**mo′veō, movē′re,** *move* (movement)
	vo′cō, vocā′re, *call, summon* (vocation)

Adjectives	Prepositions
amī′cus, –a, *friendly;* as a noun, *friend* [*amō*]	**ā, ab,**[1] with abl., *from, by*
ma′lus, –a, *bad* (malice)	**dē,** with abl., *down from, from, concerning*
sin′gulī, –ae, plur., *one at a time* (singular)	**ē, ex,**[1] with abl., *out of, from*

Fig. 36. On the Nile River

From a mosaic floor found at Pompeii.

107. The Vocative Case

In English, the *person spoken to* is said to be the "nominative of address."

[1] The shorter forms **ā** and **ē** are used only before words beginning with a consonant (except *h*).

In Latin, there is no difference in form between the subject nominative and the nominative of address, except that **–us** and **–ius** nouns and adjectives of the second declension have a special case of address in the singular known as the **vocative** (from **vocō,** *call*). That of the **–us** nouns ends in **–ĕ,** of the **–ius** nouns in **–ī:**

Ubi estis, Mārce et Lūcī? *Where are you, Marcus and Lucius?*

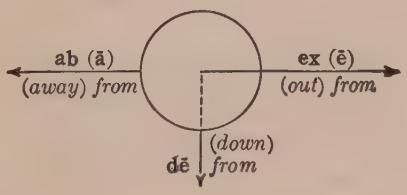
108. Drill. — Give the Latin nominative or the vocative (whichever is required to show address) of the following: *prisoner, comrade, sailor, slave, farmer, daughter, friend.*

109. Prepositions of Place: *Ab, Dē, Ex*

ā, ab
dē
ē, ex
} used with the ablative = *from.*

Examples: ā viā, (*away*) *from the road.*
dē silvā, (*down*) *from the forest.*
ex aquā, (*out*) *from the water.*

While all three prepositions convey the general idea of separation (*from*), **ab** means *away from the outside;* **ex,** *out from the inside;* **dē,** merely *from* when it is not important to distinguish between *away from* and *out from.* Sometimes **dē** means *down from.* See diagram:



110. Exercises

Oral. 1. Servī malī magnam pecūniam et praedam ab īnsulīs portābant. 2. Cornēlī, movē carrōs singulōs dē silvā altā. 3. Mārce, vocā servōs ē silvā; ab īnsulā nāvigābimus. 4. Sociī captīvōs ē viā pūblicā movēbunt. 5. In malā fortūnā vērōs amīcōs habēbāmus. 6. Captīvī, portāte māteriam dē silvīs ad aquam. 7. Magnus numerus carrōrum erat in viīs plānīs.

Written. 1. My daughter had a large number of true friends. 2. Brutus, move the prisoners from the island. 3. My friends carried the timber out-of the woods. 4. The allies are now summoning forces from many provinces. 5. One-at-a-time they sailed from the island to the new land.

111. Latin and English Word Formation

A great many Latin words are formed by joining prefixes (**prae** = *in front;* **fīxus** = *attached*) to *root* words. These same prefixes, most of which are prepositions, are those chiefly used in English, and by their use many new words are continually being formed. Thus through them English *lives* and grows — without them it would be *dead.*

Examples of the prefixes **ab–, dē–,** and **ex–** are:

(*a*) **ab–** (**abs–, ā–**): *a-vocation, ab-undance, abs-tain.*
(*b*) **dē–**: *de-fame, de-form, de-ter, de-viate.*
(*c*) **ex–** (**ē–, ef–**): *ex-alt, ex-port, ex-pect* (from **spectō**), *e-voke.*

Define the above words according to prefix and root. For root words, see previous vocabularies.

The following are other examples of the prefix **ex–** in English: *ex-cuse, e-dict, ex-empt, ef-fect, e-gress, ex-it.*

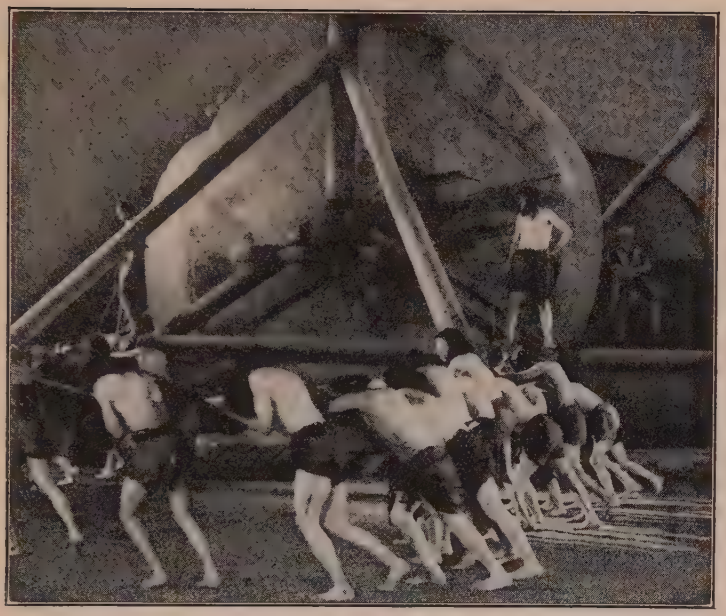


FIG. 37. POENA SERVŌRUM MALŌRUM MAGNA ERAT
(From "Ben Hur.")

112. Servī

Servī Rōmānī erant captīvī. Rōmānī pugnīs multās terrās vāstābant, et magnus erat numerus captīvōrum. Servōs ē Graeciā, ē Galliā, ex Asiā, ex Āfricā parābant. In familiā Rōmānā erant multī servī. Aquam portābant, litterās Graecās docēbant, vigiliae erant, medicī [1] erant. Multī clārī Graecī erant servī Rōmānōrum. Amīcitiam et grātiam Rōmānōrum merēbant. Litterae [2] Rōmānōrum memoriam servōrum servant. Poena servī malī magna erat. Servōs bonōs Rōmānī līberābant.

[1] *doctors.* [2] *literature.*

113. GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE

Slaves

In the earliest days the Romans had few slaves, but as they prospered they came to depend more and more on slaves to do their work. Many slaves were obtained by the conquest of foreign nations. A large number came from the Orient and spoke Greek. Many of these became teachers, doctors, musicians, actors, bookkeepers, etc.

The lot of the slave was not as hard as we might imagine, though he was often enough mistreated by a cruel master. Slaves were given an allowance, and the thrifty slave could hope to save enough in the course of years to buy his freedom. Masters often granted freedom out of gratitude for services rendered. Many of these freedmen became very rich and influential. A fine example of the intimate relation of master and slave is that of Cicero and his secretary Tiro, a brilliant man who invented a system of shorthand. Some of Cicero's letters show the greatest affection for Tiro.

The wealthy classes kept large numbers of slaves, all of whom had their special tasks. One might be in charge of polishing the silver, another of writing letters, another of announcing the guests or the hour of the day, etc.

Disobedient slaves were punished in various ways. The master had the right to kill a slave, but naturally he was not often inclined to do so, as he would be destroying his own property by doing this. Flogging was a common punishment. Another was to send a city slave to the farm, where the work was harder.

Runaway slaves when caught were branded on the forehead with the letter **F**, which stands for **fugitīvus.** You can guess the meaning of the word from the English derivative.

Read Davis, pp. 124–138; McDaniel, pp. 26–40; Johnston, pp. 87–110; Preston and Dodge, pp. 66–72.

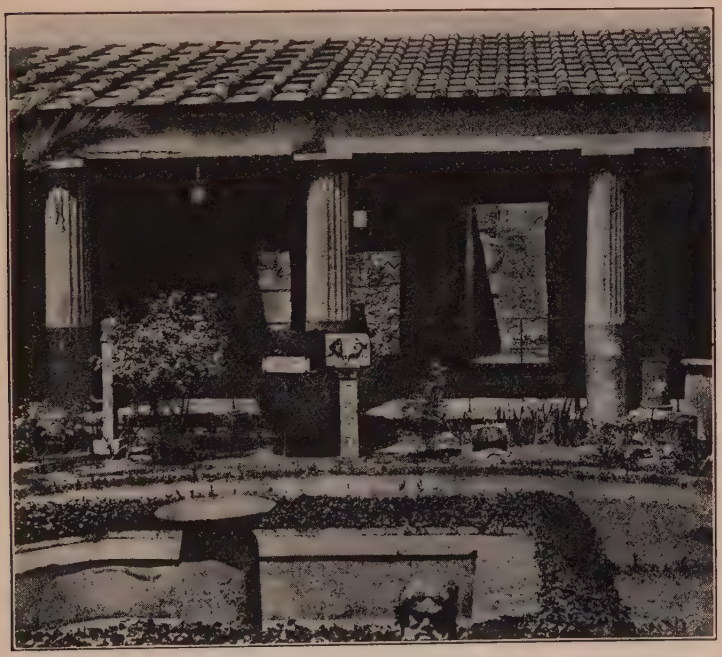


FIG. 38. IN A POMPEIAN GARDEN

Most houses had little gardens surrounded by rooms.

LESSON XVII

SECOND DECLENSION: NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES IN *-ER* AND *-R*

114. Vocabulary

Nouns	Adjectives
a′ger, a′grī, m., *field* (agrarian)	**lī′ber, lī′bera,** *free* [*līberō*]
e′quus, -ī, m., *horse* (equine)	**nos′ter, nos′tra,** *our* (nostrum)
magis′ter, magis′trī, m., *teacher* (Mr.)	**sa′cer, sa′cra,** *sacred* (desecrate)
pu′er, pu′erī, m., *boy* (puerile)	
vir, vi′rī, m., *man, hero* (virile)	

115. Second Declension: Nouns and Adjectives in *-r*

Masculine nouns and adjectives whose base ends in **-r** omit the ending in **-us** in the nominative singular. Such words accordingly end in **-er** or **-r** in the nominative. The genitive singular shows whether **-e-** is retained before **-r** in the other forms. In memorizing vocabularies, always note carefully (*a*) the *nominative*, (*b*) the *genitive*, (*c*) the *gender* of every noun.

	a′ger nos′ter, *our field* (base, **agr-** **nostr-**)		**pu′er lī′ber,** *a free boy* (base, **puer-** **līber-**)	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	a′ger nos′ter	a′grī nos′trī	pu′er lī′ber	pu′erī lī′berī
Gen.	a′grī nos′trī	agrō′**rum** nostrō′**rum**	pu′erī lī′berī	puerō′**rum** līberō′**rum**
Dat.	a′grō nos′trō	a′grīs nos′trīs	pu′erō lī′berō	pu′erīs lī′berīs
Acc.	a′**grum** nos′trum	a′grōs nos′trōs	pu′**erum** lī′berum	pu′erōs lī′berōs
Abl.	a′grō nos′trō	a′grīs nos′trīs	pu′erō lī′berō	pu′erīs lī′berīs

Note. — (1) Nouns and adjectives like **puer** and **līber** have the **-e-** throughout; those like **ager** and **noster** have it only in the nominative singular, while **vir** has no **-e-** at all. Most **-er** words are like **ager**; no others are like **vir.**

(2) The English derivative will usually help determine whether the **-e-** is retained or not; *e.g. puerile, liberal, miserable; agriculture, sacred, magistrate.*

116. Drill. — Decline **magister amīcus, ager malus, vir līber.**

117. Exercises

Oral. 1. Incitā, Mārce, equum ad aquam. 2. Magister noster linguam clāram docet. 3. Magister tuus puerō malō pecūniam nōn dōnābit. 4. Magnōs agrōs et viās lātās et virōs līberōs in Americā vidēbitis. 5. Memoria clārōrum nostrōrum virōrum sacra est. 6. Virī nostrī agrōs sociōrum amīcōrum nōn vāstābant. 7. Equōs nostrōs magistrō et puerīs mōnstrābimus.

Written. 1. Give Anna the boy's money. 2. Our country is free and sacred. 3. The farmers were moving the timber out-of the forest to the water with horses. 4. I see many horses in our friends' fields. 5. The teacher is showing the shapes of the letters to the boys and girls.

118. English Word Studies

Several Latin words of the **-er** type are in common use in English:

Nouns: **arbiter, cancer, minister, vesper.**

Adjectives: **integer, miser, neuter, sinister** (the first two are used as nouns in English).

Assimilation. — Some prefixes change their final consonants to make them like the initial consonants of the words to which they are attached. This is called **assimilation** (**ad** = *to;* **similis** = *like*).

The prefix **ad**– is generally assimilated. Define the following — all formed from words in the previous vocabularies: *ac-curate, al-literation, an-nounce, apparatus, a-spect, as-sociate, ad-vocate.*

Additional examples of assimilation of **ad**– are: *abbreviate, af-fect, ag-gressive, ac-quire, ar-rogant, at-tend.*

FIG. 39. MAGISTER PUERŌS DOCET
A school scene from a stone relief found in Trier, Germany.

119. Magister

Magister noster bonus est. Puerīs bonīs pecūniam dōnat. Puer bonus sum. Magister puerōs dē agrīs et silvīs, dē glōriā et fāmā patriae nostrae docet.

Carrum parvum, sed nōn equum magister habet. In carrō ad lūdum[1] venit.[2] Sine[3] equō? Sine equō. Magister carrum nōn movet; carrus sē[4] movet.

Amīcus meus Paulus magistrum nōn amat; magister Paulō pecūniam nōn dōnat. Sed Paulus pecūniam nōn meret. Malus est in lūdō; puellās terret.

[1] *school.* [2] *he comes.* [3] *without.* [4] *itself.*

LESSON XVIII

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF *SUM*

120. Vocabulary

Nouns	Verbs
a′nimus, -ī, m., *mind, courage* (animated)	**ha′bitō, habitā′re,** *live* (habitation)
colō′nus, -ī, m., *settler* (colonize)	**labō′rō, labōrā′re,** *labor, suffer* (laborious)
nūn′tius, nūn′tī, m., *messenger* [*nūntiō*]	**mi′grō, migrā′re,** *depart* (migratory)

Preposition

in, with acc., *into;* with abl., *in, on*

121. Present Indicative of *Sum*

The verb *to be* is irregular in English and Latin, as well as in other languages.

sum, *I am*	**su′mus,** *we are*
es, *you are*	**es′tis,** *you are*
est, *he; she, it is*	**sunt,** *they are*

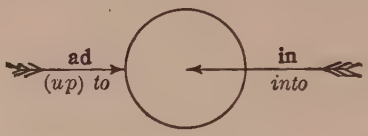
122. What Case?

Review **30, Caution.** Give the Latin in the proper case for the underscored words:

1. They are sailors.
2. We are settlers.
3. They move the prisoners.
4. He is a slave.
5. I teach my friend.
6. You are boys.

123. Prepositions of Place: *Ad, In*

ad with acc. = (*up*) *to* **in** with acc. = *into*



Carrōs {**ad** / **in**} **aquam movent,** *They move the carts* {*to* / *into*} *the water.*

Compare a like difference between **ab** and **ex** (**109**).

124. Two Uses of *In* Distinguished

(1) **in** with acc. = *into* (2) **in** with abl. = *in* or *on*

Fig. 40. In Aquam In Aquā

125. Exercises

Oral. 1. Servī estis et in agrīs labōrātis. 2. Bonus servus labōrat iniūriā[1] malī servī. 3. Animus magnus virōrum nautās terrēbat. 4. Māteriam equīs et carrīs dē silvīs ad aquam portābitis. 5. Multī līberī virī in īnsulā magnā habitant. 6. Sociī nostrī numerum magnum captīvōrum in īnsulam movēbant. 7. Colōnī ex Eurōpā migrant et ad līberam Americam nāvigant. 8. Servī equōs nūntī in silvās incitābant.

Written. 1. We are messengers of a great victory. 2. The messenger's horse is in our field. 3. The prisoners will carry the timber from the woods into the fields with horses. 4. Give the booty to the friendly settlers of the island. 5. The boys are in the woods.

126. English Word Formation

The prefix **in–** is often assimilated. Define the following, formed from words found in recent vocabularies: *in-gratiate, in-habit, im-migrant, im-port, in-spect, in-undate.* Additional examples of assimilation of **in–** are: *im-bibe, il-lusion.* Words that have come in through the French often have **en–** or **em–** for **in–** or **im–**: *enchant, inquire* or *enquire.*

127. Clāra

Puella Clāra in magnā īnsulā habitat. Īnsula, patria Clārae, Britannia est. Pater Clārae magnum numerum servōrum habet. Agricola est et multōs agrōs et equōs

[1] The **ablative of cause** is used chiefly with verbs and adjectives expressing feeling: **Labōrāre iniūriā,** *To suffer because of the wrong.*

et carrōs habet. Clārae equum parvum dōnat. Clāra servīs pecūniam dōnat et grātiam servōrum meret.

Ā Britanniā Clāra ad Eurōpam nāvigābit. Spatium est parvum, sed Clāra magnās undās ad nauseam[1] spectābit. Rōmam vidēbit. Magister Clāram dē Eurōpā et Rōmā docet.

FIG. 41. "CLĀRA RŌMAM VIDĒBIT"

The Colosseum at Rome as it was in the eighteenth century, when a much greater portion was still standing. From a painting by Guardi.

[1] *to* (the point of) *disgust.*

LESSON XIX

SECOND DECLENSION: NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES IN *-UM*

128. Vocabulary

NOUNS

cas'tra, -ō'rum, n., plur., *camp* (Lancaster)

cōnsi'lium, cōnsi'lī, n., *plan, prudence, advice* (counsel)

sig'num, -ī, n., *sign, standard, signal* (sign)

frūmen'tum, -ī, n., *grain* (fruition)

prae'mium, prae'mī, n., *reward* (premium)

ADJECTIVE

bar'barus, -a, -um, *foreign* (barbarian)

VERB

ē'vocō, ēvocā're, *call out, summon* [*vocō*]

Watch for other English derivatives in your daily reading.

129. Second Declension: Neuter Nouns and Adjectives in *-um*

The second declension contains, in addition to the masculine nouns ending in **-us, -er,** and **-r,** a large group of neuter nouns ending in **-um.** The only difference between them and the **-us** nouns is in the nominative and accusative, singular and plural.

CASE ENDINGS			**sig'num par'vum,** *a small sign* (base, **sign-** **parv-**)			
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Nom.	**-um**	**-a**	**sig'num**	**par'vum**	**sig'na**	**par'va**
Gen.	**-ī**	**-ōrum**	sig'nī	par'vī	**signō'rum**	**parvō'rum**
Dat.	**-ō**	**-īs**	sig'nō	par'vō	sig'nīs	par'vīs
Acc.	**-um**	**-a**	**sig'num**	**par'vum**	**sig'na**	**par'va**
Abl.	**-ō**	**-īs**	sig'nō	par'vō	sig'nīs	par'vīs

Note. — (*a*) Neuter nouns and adjectives of all declensions have the same form in the accusative singular as in the nominative.

(*b*) Neuter nouns and adjectives of all declensions end in **-ă** in the nominative and accusative plural.

(*c*) Neuter nouns (not adjectives) of the second declension ending in **–ium** contract **–iī** to **–ī** in the genitive singular: **cōnsi'liī** becomes **cōnsi'lī**. The accent is not changed. The **–i–**, being a part of the base, appears in every form: (dat.) **cōnsiliō**, etc.

130. Drill. — (*a*) Decline **frūmentum bonum** and **praemium grātum.**

(*b*) Give in Latin:

(1) *a new standard* in the accusative, singular and plural.

(2) *a famous reward* in the ablative, singular and plural.

(3) *a great plan* in the genitive, singular and plural.

(4) *a small camp* in the dative.

131. Exercises

Oral. 1. Amīcus meus multa praemia merēbit. 2. Cōnsiliō bonō vītam amīcī nostrī servābō. 3. Litterīs virōs barbarōs ad castra ēvocābat. 4. Agricolae frūmentum ex agrīs in castra portābant. 5. Captīvī singulī nostrīs virīs cōnsilium nūntiābant. 6. Castra sociōrum nostrōrum nunc sunt in magnā īnsulā. 7. Fabī, nūntiā signō victōriam amīcīs tuīs.

Written. 1. We shall give our friends great rewards. 2. The men were moving the grain from the camp with horse and wagon. 3. We saw much grain (*plur.*) in our friends' fields. 4. The colonists will sail from Europe to America and live in a free land.

132. English Word Studies

(*a*) The following are Latin words of the **–um** and **–ium** type preserved in their original form in English:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
bacterium	**bacteria**	**curriculum**	**curricula** (or **–ums**)
candelabrum	**candelabra** (or **–ums**)	**spectrum**	**spectra**

(*b*) Latin adjectives and participles used as nouns in English:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
addendum	**addenda**	**memorandum**	**memoranda** (or **–ums**)
datum	**data** (remember to say ***these*** **data**)	**minimum**	**minima**
dictum	**dicta** (or **–ums**)	**stratum**	**strata** (or **–ums**)
maximum	**maxima** (or **–ums**)		

Fig. 42. Castra Rōmāna in Germāniā

The entrance gate of a permanent camp at Saalburg, Germany, erected by the Romans.

133. Trōia

Graecī et Trōiānī[1] ad Trōiam[2] pugnābant. Ubi est Trōia? Trōia in Asiā est. Annōs x pugnant. Magnus est numerus virōrum et sociōrum et servōrum. Tum Ulixēs,[3] clārus Graecus, cōnsilium novum docet. Graecī multam māteriam ex silvā ad castra portant. Ex māteriā equum magnum et altum parant. In equum virī ascendunt.[4] In equō litterās scrībunt:[5] "Graecī cēdentēs[6] Minervae equum dōnant." Tum equum ad Trōiam movent. Ad īnsulam parvam nāvigant. Trōiānī equum et castra dēserta[7] Graecōrum vident. Equum vocant sacrum et equum in oppidum movent. Nocte[8] Graecī ab īnsulā revertunt[9] et ūnus ex Graecīs[10] virōs signō ex equō ēvocat. Sociōs in oppidum vocant. Trōiam occupant et vāstant.

Fig. 43. Equus Trōiānus

Read Sabin, pp. 277–292; Harding (*Greek Gods*), pp. 117–118; Colum, pp. 118–121.

---

[1] *the Trojans.* [2] *Troy.* [3] *Ulysses.* [4] *climb.* [5] *write.* [6] *departing.* [7] *deserted.* [8] *at night.* [9] *return.* [10] *one of the Greeks.*

LESSON XX

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF *SUM*. INFINITIVE USED AS SUBJECT AND OBJECT

134. Vocabulary

Nouns	Verbs
ar′ma, -ō′rum, n., plur., *arms, weapons* (armor)	**dē′beō, dēbē′re,** *owe, ought, be obliged to* (debt)
auxi′lium, auxi′lī, n., *help, aid;* plur., *reinforcements* (auxiliary)	**mātū′rō, mātūrā′re,** *hasten* (maturity)
bel′lum, -ī, n., *war* (belligerent)	
concor′dia, -ae, f., *harmony* (concord)	

135. Imperfect and Future Indicative of *Sum*

Review the present tense of the verb **sum** (121). The imperfect and future tenses of **sum** are likewise irregularly formed:

Imperfect	
e′ram, *I was*	**erā′mus,** *we were*
e′rās, *you were*	**erā′tis,** *you were*
e′rat, *he, she, it was*	**e′rant,** *they were*
Future	
e′rō, *I shall be*	**e′rimus,** *we shall be*
e′ris, *you will be*	**e′ritis,** *you will be*
e′rit, *he, she, it will be*	**e′runt,** *they will be*

Caution. — Do not say *You* ***was.***

136. Infinitive Used as Subject

Fig. 44. Roman Gong

In English, a verb preceded by *to* (as *to see, to hear*, etc.) is called an *infinitive*. The English infinitive sign, therefore, is *to*.[1] The corresponding sign of the present active infinitive in Latin is **–re,** which is added directly to the present stem; as **portā–re,** *to carry;* **vidē–re,** *to see*.

(*a*) The infinitive is a verbal noun, and as such it may be used as the subject of a verb; as,

Habēre amīcōs est grātum, *To have friends is pleasing.*
(Cf. **Errāre hūmānum est,** *To err is human.*)

Note. — While Latin nouns are declined and represent different genders, the infinitive when used as subject is indeclinable and is always *neuter* (see **grātum** in the example above).

(*b*) An infinitive may be used as a predicate nominative; as, **Vidēre est crēdere,** *To see is to believe*.

137. Infinitive Used as Object

With many verbs the infinitive may be used as direct object, like other nouns; as,

[1] The preposition *to* introducing the infinitive is omitted, however, after the verbs *bid, dare, feel, hear, let, make, need, see*, and the auxiliary verbs *can, may, must, shall*, and *will*.

Parat cōpiās movēre, *He prepares to move the troops.*

Note. — This is sometimes called the **complementary infinitive,** because it *completes* the meaning of the main verb.

138. Exercises

Oral. 1. Grātum erat vidēre magnum numerum equōrum in agrīs. 2. Magnum est vītam amīcī servāre. 3. Puerō praemium nostrum mōnstrāre mātūrāmus. 4. Nūntiī pecūniā et praemiīs animōs nautārum incitāre parābant. 5. Cōpiae signa et arma ad terram novam portāre mātūrant. 6. Sociī nostrī arma et frūmentum habēre dēbent. 7. Bonum erit habēre concordiam et auxilium in bellō.

Written. 1. It was pleasing to see the courage and harmony of the troops. 2. The free men are preparing to fight with new weapons in foreign lands. 3. Slaves, hasten to increase the supply of grain. 4. The messenger ought to report the plan of war to the men. 5. It will be pleasing to see tall grain (*plur.*) in the fields.

139. English Word Studies

English words borrowed from the Latin which have preserved the original case forms of the second declension are:

Gen. *agri*-culture, *horti*-culture
Abl. *quarto, limbo, No.* (= *Numero*)

Latin Phrases in English

multum in parvō, *much in little.*
dē novō, *anew,* literally, *from a new* (*start*).
in memoriam, *to the memory* (*of*) — the title of a poem by Tennyson.

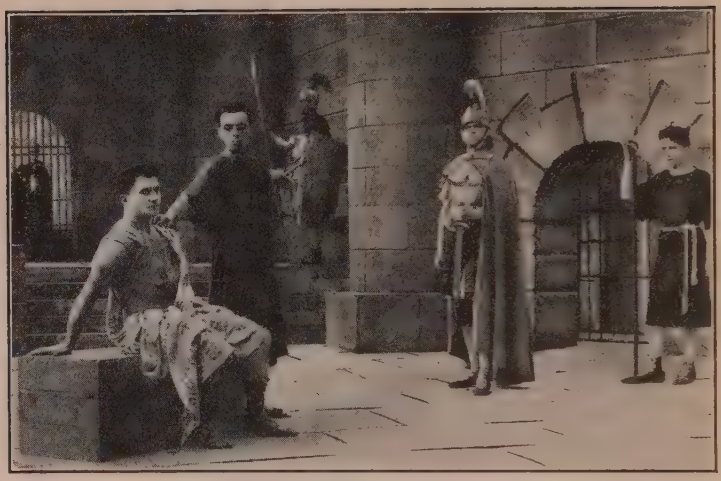


FIG. 45. SPARTACUS, CAPTĪVUS RŌMĀNŌRUM
(From "Spartacus.")

140. Spartacus

Spartacus erat clārus servus, captīvus Rōmānōrum. Sociōs ēvocābat et incitābat: "Ō sociī, Rōmānī nōn sunt amīcī nostrī. Puer eram in patriā meā, et vīta grāta erat. Silvās et agrōs amābam; līber eram. Vērum amīcum habēbam, puerum bonum et grātum. Sed Rōmānī patriam meam vāstant; mē et amīcum meum ex patriā portant; nunc captīvus sum et servus. Vir sum et in arēnā pugnō. Hodiē[1] virum necāvī[2]— et erat amīcus meus! Virī estis; Rōmam nōn amātis. Nunc hōra est: pugnāte! Servōs līberābimus et ad patriam migrāre mātūrābimus."

Read Guerber (*Story*), pp. 167–170; Morris, pp. 198–203.

[1] *to-day.* [2] *I killed.*

SECOND REVIEW (LESSONS XIII–XX)

141. Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. ager[1]
2. amīcitia
3. animus
4. arma
5. auxilium
6. bellum
7. captīvus
8. carrus
9. castra
10. colōnus
11. concordia
12. cōnsilium
13. disciplīna
14. equus
15. frūmentum
16. glōria
17. grātia
18. lingua
19. magister
20. numerus
21. nūntius
22. patria
23. praemium
24. puer
25. servus
26. signum
27. socius
28. vigilia
29. vir

Adjectives

30. altus
31. amīcus
32. barbarus
33. līber
34. malus
35. meus
36. noster
37. pūblicus
38. sacer
39. singulī

Verbs

40. augeō
41. dēbeō
42. doceō
43. ēvocō
44. habeō
45. habitō
46. labōrō
47. maneō
48. mātūrō
49. mereō
50. migrō
51. moveō
52. teneō
53. terreō
54. videō
55. vocō

Adverb

56. nōn

Prepositions

57. ab
58. dē
59. ex
60. in

---

[1] Give the full vocabulary form of each word as presented in the previous lessons.

142 Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. *field*
2. *friendship*
3. *mind*
4. *arms*
5. *help*
6. *war*
7. *prisoner*
8. *cart*
9. *camp*
10. *settler*
11. *harmony*
12. *plan*
13. *training*
14. *horse*
15. *grain*
16. *glory*
17. *gratitude*
18. *tongue*
19. *teacher*
20. *number*
21. *messenger*
22. *fatherland*
23. *reward*
24. *boy*
25. *slave*
26. *sign*
27. *comrade*
28. *watchfulness*
29. *man*

Adjectives

30. *high*
31. *friendly*
32. *foreign*
33. *free*
34. *bad*
35. *my*
36. *our*
37. *public*
38. *sacred*
39. *one at a time*

Verbs

40. *increase*
41. *owe, ought*
42. *teach*
43. *call out*
44. *have*
45. *live*
46. *labor*
47. *remain*
48. *hasten*
49. *deserve*
50. *depart*
51. *move*
52. *hold*
53. *frighten*
54. *see*
55. *call*

Adverb

56. *not*

Prepositions

57. *from, by*
58. *from, concerning*
59. *out of, from*
60. *in, on, into*

143. Declension and Agreement of Adjectives and Nouns

We have noted (**16**) that an adjective in Latin must agree with its noun in gender, number, and case. This agreement is indicated by endings. In order, therefore, to modify nouns of different genders, every adjective thus far studied has a threefold declension as follows:

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	mag′nus	mag′na	mag′num	mag′nī	mag′nae	mag′na
Gen.	mag′nī	mag′nae	mag′nī	magnō′-rum	magnā′-rum	magnō′-rum
Dat.	mag′nō	mag′nae	mag′nō	mag′nīs	mag′nīs	mag′nīs
Acc.	mag′num	mag′nam	mag′num	mag′nōs	mag′nās	mag′na
Abl.	mag′nō	mag′nā	mag′nō	mag′nīs	mag′nīs	mag′nīs

144. Drill. — (*a*) Decline in full **līber, lībera, līberum** and **novus, nova, novum.**

(*b*) Decline the adjective **sacer, sacra, sacrum** in turn with **nūntius, via,** and **bellum.**

(*c*) Give the vocative of **servus, nūntius, captīvus.**

145. A Study in Agreement

Inasmuch as **nauta** is masculine and belongs to the first declension, an adjective, when made to agree with it in gender, number, and case, must assume the masculine endings of the second declension, as follows: **nauta bonus, nautae bonī,** etc. Decline in full. Similarly **agricola.**

146. Drill. — Decline together *a bad boy, pleasing harmony,* and *public aid.*

147. Review of Verbs

(1) Give the present stems of the following verbs: **habitō, terreō, vocō, moveō, dēbeō, mātūrō, augeō.**

(2) Conjugate in full, with meanings, (*a*) **migrō** in the present, (*b*) **maneō** in the imperfect, (*c*) **doceō** in the future.

(3) Give in Latin: *they were, he will be, I am, you* (sing.) *are, move! she is, you* (plur.) *were, we shall be, I was, fight! they are.*

148. Rapid-Fire Drills

(1) *Translate:* we were; **habēbis; māteriā; probāmus;** from the small waves; **manent;** she did intrust; of our gratitude; **tuōs amīcōs;** you were laying waste.

(2) What forms are: **tenent, socī, amābāmus, amīce, vigiliīs, nūntiī, nūntiābimus, docēbitis, mōnstrās, auxiliōrum, nūntī?**

149. Blackboard Drill (*To the Teacher*).— Select fifteen or twenty nouns of the first and second declensions in various cases, singular and plural, place them on the board without reference to order of cases, and exhaust the possibilities of case and meaning. This will afford an excellent drill for the rapid recognition of forms.

150. English Word Studies — Review

(1) Give and define three English nouns which retain Latin nominative forms, singular and plural, of the first declension.

(2) Give and define three English words which preserve Latin verb forms.

(3) Give and define three English nouns which retain Latin nominative forms, singular and plural, of the second declension, masculine.

(4) Give and define three English nouns which retain Latin nominative forms, singular and plural, of the second declension, neuter.

(5) Give prefix and root word from which the following are derived, and define:

defame, approve, advocate, invocation, immigrant, emigrant, avocation, vocation, deter.

(6) What is the original form of the prefix in the following?

affect, effect, defect, aspect, improve, alliteration, affront, abstain, illusion.

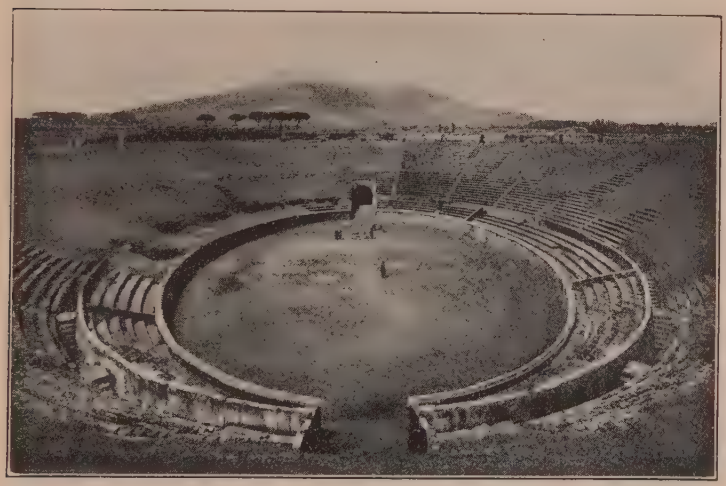


FIG. 46. THE AMPHITHEATER AT POMPEII

Mt. Vesuvius, the eruption of which destroyed Pompeii in 79 A.D., is shown in the background. Amphitheaters were used for gladiatorial contests — duels between professionals. Beast fights — similar to the modern bull fights — were also held there.

© *International*

FIG. 47. MODERN ROME FROM AN AIRPLANE

The Colosseum (Fig. 41) is in the foreground; beyond it, the Forum, then the modern city.

LESSON XXI

LATIN QUESTIONS

151. Questions

In Latin a question is regularly introduced by an interrogative word — either a pronoun (**quis,** *who?* **quid,** *what?*) or adverb (**ubi,** *where?* etc.), or the particle **–ne.** The latter is therefore a kind of question mark at the beginning of a sentence and cannot be translated. It is never used alone but is always attached to the first word in the sentence. Such attached words are called **enclitics.** As the enclitic becomes part of the preceding word, the word accent may shift: **īnsulam'ne Corsi'cane.**

When **nōn** is used in a question, it is put first and the enclitic **–ne** is attached to it.

152. Conversation: A Geography Lesson

M. = **Magister,** *teacher* **D.** = **Discipulī,** *pupils*

M. Spectāte, discipulī. **D.** Spectāmus, magister.

M. Ubi est Italia? **D.** In Eurōpā Italia est.

M. Estne Italia lāta? **D.** Italia longa sed nōn lāta est.

M. Īnsulamne vidētis? **D.** Corsicam vidēmus.

M. Corsicane est magna īnsula? **D.** Parva, nōn magna īnsula est Corsica.

M. Quid in Siciliā vidētis? **D.** Aetnam vidēmus.

M. Magnam īnsulam mōnstrō; Britannia est. Colōnī ex Britanniā ad Americam migrābant.

M. Ubi magna victōria erat? **D.** In Galliā magna victōria erat.

M. Eratne Gallia prōvincia? **D.** Gallia erat prōvincia imperī[1] Rōmānī.

M. Nōnne magna erat glōria Galliae? **D.** Magna erat et est et erit glōria Galliae.

M. Discipulī, quis oculōs[2] bonōs habet? **Lūcius.** Ego.[3]

M. Mōnstrā discipulīs Rōmam. **Lūcius.** Rōma in Italiā est.

Note. — Ask questions and make statements similar to the above, using the accompanying map or preferably a large wall map.

Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Eurōpane est in Italiā? 2. Īnsulane est Italia? 3. Ubi est Rōma? 4. Estne Italia prōvincia?

153. Bellum et Victōria

Colōnī in īnsulā manēbant et sociīs arma et frūmentum dōnābant. Equīs et carrīs frūmentum ad castra portābant. Virī pugnāre et augēre numerum captīvōrum mātūrābant. Longum erat bellum, magna victōria. Cōpiae sociōrum multōs agrōs vāstābant et colōnīs praedam multam dōnābant. Castra movēre et nāvigāre parābant. Multōs nautās et nūntiōs singulōs in viā vidēbāmus. Erat novum vidēre multōs virōs, equōs, et carrōs. Multōs captīvōs et arma habēbant. Cōpiae ad patriam nāvigābant. Patria pugnās et victōriās memoriā tenēbit et laudābit.

---

[1] *Empire.* [2] *eyes.* [3] *I.*

10°
0°
10°
50°
40°
30°
OCEANUS ATLANTICUS
HIBERNIA
MARE GERMANICUM
Eboracum (York)
BRITANNIA
Londinium
Saxones
Albis
Rhenus
GERMANIA
Belgae
Remi
Lutetia (Paris)
Sequana
Matrona (Marne)
Liger (Loire)
GALLIA
RAETIA
NORICUM
Lugdunum (Lyons)
Genava
AQUITANIA
Garumna
Rhodanus
Mediolanum (Milan)
Genua
Padus Fl.
Rubico
Numantia
Hiberus (Ebro)
PYRENAEI
Narbo
Massilia (Marseilles)
HISPANIA
Tagus
LUSITANIA
Anas
Saguntum
Tarraco
CORSICA
Roma
Ostia
Neapolis
Pompeii
Canna
Tare
Corduba
Gades (Cadiz)
BALEARES
MARE
SARDINIA
Nova Carthago (Cartagena)
Utica
Carthago
SICILIA
Aetna
Syracusae
MAURETANIA
ATLAS
Zama
NUMIDIA
AFRICA
MELITA (MALTA)
Thapsus
MED
Roman Territory 264 B.C. Before Punic Wars
" " 201 B.C. After Second Punic War
" " 133 B.C.
" " 44 B.C. Death of Caesar
" " 14 A.D. Death of Augustus
" " Second Century A.D.
0°
10°
Longitude
East

30°
40°
50°
60°
50°
40°
30°
DACIA
Danuvius
SIA
THRACIA
Byzantium
Constantinople
Bosporus
PONTUS EUXINUS
(Black Sea)
CAUCASUS
MARE CASPIUM
BITHYNIA
PONTUS
ARMENIA
GALATIA
CAPPADOCIA
Troia
Mare
ASIA
PARTHIA
MESOPOTAMIA
ASSYRIA
Tigris
Euphrates
CILICIA
AMPHYLIA
LYCIA
Antiochia
PHOENICIA
Palmyra
SYRIA
Damascus
Babylon
RHODUS
CYPRUS
CRETA
Tyrus
PALESTINA
Hierosolyma
(Jerusalem)
Alexandria
ARABIA
AEGYPTUS
Nilus
IMPERIUM ROMANUM
Scale of miles
0 100 200 300 400 500
Greenwich
30°
40°
Wms. Eng. Co., N. Y.

LESSON XXII

THIRD CONJUGATION: PRESENT AND IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

154. Vocabulary

a′gō, a′gere, *drive, do, discuss, live* or *spend* (time) (agent)
cē′dō, cē′dere, *move, retreat* (accede)
accē′dō, accē′dere, *approach* (w. **ad**)
excē′dō, excē′dere, *go away, depart*
dēfen′dō, dēfen′dere, *defend* (defendant)
op′pidum, –ī, n., *town*
pō′nō, pō′nere, *put, place* (postpone)
sem′per, adv., *always* (sempiternal)

155. Third Conjugation

(*a*) Verbs of the **third conjugation** have the stem vowel **–ĕ–**. Note the difference of stem vowel in:

1st Conj. (*Long-A Verbs*): Pres. stem **parā–** (from infin. **parāre**)
2nd Conj. (*Long-E Verbs*): Pres. stem **vidē–** (from infin. **vidēre**)
3rd Conj. (*Short-E Verbs*): Pres. stem **pōnĕ–** (from infin. **pōnĕre**)

(*b*) The short vowel **–e–** of the third conjugation changes to **–i–** in forming the present tense, except in the third person plural, where it becomes **–u–**. In the first person singular it disappears before **–ō–**. Short **–e–** is lengthened in the imperfect tense.

Present (*I place*, etc.)		Imperfect (*I was placing*, etc.)	
pō′nō	pō′nimus	pōnē′bam	pōnēbā′mus
pō′nis	pō′nitis	pōnē′bās	pōnēbā′tis
pō′nit	pō′nunt	pōnē′bat	pōnē′bant

156. Plural Imperative in *–īte*. The short stem vowel **–e–** in third conjugation verbs changes to short **–i–** before **–te** in forming the plural imperative: sing., **accēde;** plur., **accēdĭte,** *approach.*

157. Drill. — (*a*) Memorize the model verb **pōnō** and conjugate **agō, dēfendō,** and **cēdō** in the present and imperfect tenses indicative.

(*b*) Form the present imperative, singular and plural, of the above verbs, and of **vocō** and **videō.**

158. Exercises

Oral. 1. Semper, puerī, agite vītam bonam. 2. Colōnī ex agrīs in oppida excēdēbant. 3. Equōsne tuōs, Cornēlī, in aquam agis? 4. Memoria poenae nōn grāta est. 5. Ubi praedam pōnitis? In viā praedam pōnimus. 6. Sociī ad castra accēdunt sed pugnāre nōn parant. 7. Ad īnsulam cēdēbāmus et castra dēfendere parābāmus.

Written. 1. He was living a good life. 2. The foreign men are defending the camp with arms. 3. The slave is-getting-ready to put the grain into the wagon. 4. We ought to increase the number of our forces in the land of our allies. 5. Is he not living a long life?

159. English Word Studies

We have seen that many English nouns have preserved their original Latin forms. A great many more have preserved the base of the Latin noun. Others again consist of the Latin base plus silent **–e.** Some adjectives also preserve the Latin base or the base plus **–e.** The following are examples:

base: *form, public, sign;* base plus **-e**: *cause, fortune, fame, cure, plane.*

The same rule is illustrated in the following words, which have undergone changes in the base:

base: *letter* (**littera**), *number* (**numerus**), *car* (**carrus**), *clear* (**clārus**); base plus **-e**: *single* (**singulī**).

Give other examples of this rule from nouns and adjectives already studied.

160. Virginia et Vēra

Virginia et Vēra sunt duae puellae quae[1] in oppidō nostrō habitant. Estne oppidum in Eurōpā? In Eurōpā nōn est, et puellae Eurōpaeae[2] nōn sunt. Oppidum in Americā est, et puellae Americānae sunt. Nōmen oppidō[3] Chicago est.

Fig. 48. Puella Rōmāna

Quot[4] litterās nōmen "Virginia" habet? Nōmen "Virginia" octō litterās habet; nōmen "Vēra" quattuor habet. Littera prīma ambōrum "V" est; littera ultima "a" est. Nōmen "Virginia" longum est; nōmen "Vēra" nōn longum est. Puella Virginia parva est; Vēra magna est. Puella parva habet nōmen magnum; puella magna habet nōmen parvum. Alia[5] puella nōmen "Alta" habet, sed alta nōn est. Estne Clāra clāra?

---

[1] *who.* [2] Adjective. [3] Possessive dative: translate as if it were **oppidī.**
[4] *how many.* [5] *another.*

LESSON XXIII

APPOSITION

161. Vocabulary

ae′quus, –a, –um, *even, equal, fair, just*	(equality)
exspec′tō, exspectā′re, *look out for, await*	[***spectō***]
mit′tō, mit′tere, *let go, send*	(intermittent)
offi′cium, offi′cī, n., *duty*	(office)
po′pulus, –ī, m., *people*	(popular)
re′gō, re′gere, *guide, rule*	(regent)

162. English Word Study

Many English verbs preserve the Latin base with or without silent **–e:** (*a*) *cede, probe, accuse, evoke;* (*b*) *defend, labor.*

Give other examples of this rule from verbs that you have studied.

163. Apposition

1. **Multī virī, amīcī captīvōrum, in castrīs sunt,** *Many men, friends of the prisoners, are in the camp.*

2. **Nautīs, amīcīs nostrīs, pecūniam dōnāmus,** *We give money to the sailors, our friends.*

Observe that **amīcī** (1) describes the subject **virī** and stands in direct relation to it and is therefore in the nominative, while **amīcīs** (2) limits or refers directly to **nautīs,** the indirect object, and is accordingly in the dative. No verb intervenes. This construction is called **apposition.**

164. Rule. — *A noun in apposition with another noun (or pronoun) is in the same case.*

165. Drill. — (*a*) Decline **officium nostrum** and **populus aequus.**

(*b*) Conjugate **exspectō, mittō,** and **regō** in the present and imperfect tenses.

166. Exercises

Oral. 1. Mārcus, agricola Rōmānus, in agrīs nunc nōn labōrat. 2. In Americā, patriā nostrā, semper habitābimus. 3. Vir bonus et aequus populum patriae nostrae regit. 4. Dēfendere patriam est officium virōrum. 5. Cōpiae in castrīs nōn manent sed ad oppidum cēdunt et nūntium exspectant. 6. Mittite auxilia ad Rōmānōs, sociōs nostrōs. 7. Magna erat et semper erit glōria populī Rōmānī.

Written. 1. Did the boys see our friend, the sailor, on the street? 2. It is the duty of the slave to drive the horses to water. 3. Are you sending aid to our allies, the Roman people? 4. The sailors, our allies and friends, were departing from the town.

167. Vir Quī Patriam Regit

Estne aequus vir quī[1] patriam nostram regit? Officium virī quī populum regit est patriam semper dēfendere et servāre, in bellō virōs ad pugnam ēvocāre. Bonīs virīs patriam mandāre dēbēmus. Bonōs virōs probāmus, malōs accūsāmus. Vir quī populum regit semper labōrat; vītam dūram agit. Labōrāsne semper et vītam dūram agis?

Vir quī patriam regit in albā domō[2] habitat. In quō[3] oppidō habitat? Semperne ibi manet? Quattuor

[1] *who.* [2] *white house.* [3] *what.*

aut octō annōs ibi manet. Tum excēdit et alium virum ad Albam Domum mittimus. Vidēbisne Albam Domum? Multī puerī et puellae eam[1] spectant. Ūnus ex puerīs[2] fortasse[3] erit vir quī in Albā Domō habitābit. Fortasse[3] tū[4] eris ille[5] vir! Sī[6] labōrābis, fortasse illud[7] praemium merēbis.

FIG. 49. DOMUS RŌMĀNA

Interior of a Roman house. Note the chairs, table, boxes of manuscript rolls (**librī**), and statuary. (From "Julius Caesar.")

---

[1] *it.* [2] *one of the boys.* [3] *perhaps.* [4] *you.* [5] *that.* [6] *if.* [7] *that.*

LESSON XXIV

THIRD CONJUGATION *-IŌ* VERBS, FOURTH CONJUGATION VERBS: PRESENT AND IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

168. Vocabulary

ca′piō, ca′pere, *take, seize* (captive)
acci′piō, acci′pere, *receive*
fa′ciō, fa′cere, *do, make* (efficient)
mū′niō, mūnī′re, *fortify* (munitions)
quod, conj., *because*
ve′niō, venī′re, *come* (convene)
inve′niō, invenī′re, *come upon, find*

169. Latin and English Word Formation: Vowel Changes

When a Latin word is compounded with a prefix, short **–a–** or short **–e–** in the root is usually "weakened" to short **–i–** before a single consonant except **–r–**. The English derivatives show the same change. Long vowels are not affected; for example:

From **agō,** Latin **ex-igō, ab-igō, red-igō,** etc.; English *exigency,* etc.

From **capiō,** Latin **ac-cipiō, in-cipiō,** etc.; English *incipient, recipe,* etc.

From **faciō,** Latin **ef-ficiō, dē-ficiō,** etc.; English *efficient, deficient,* etc.

From **habeō,** Latin **pro-hibeō, ex-hibeō,** etc.; English *prohibit, exhibit,* etc.

From **teneō,** Latin **con-tineō, re-tineō,** etc.; English *continent, retinue,* etc.

Exercise. — Illustrate the rule further with English derivatives of the Latin verbs which you have studied.

170. Third Conjugation Verbs in *–iō*: Present and Imperfect Indicative Active

A small but important group of verbs of the third conjugation ends in **–iō** instead of **–ō**. While their present stems end in **–ĕ,** **–i–** is inserted before the lengthened stem vowel in forming the imperfect and future tenses, as well as in the first person singular and the third person plural of the present tense. Compare the following model of an **–iō** verb with **pōnō** (**155,** *b*):

Present (*I take*, etc.)		Imperfect (*I was taking*, etc.)	
ca′pi**ō**	ca′pi**mus**	capiē′**bam**	capiēbā′**mus**
ca′pi**s**	ca′pi**tis**	capiē′**bās**	capiēbā′**tis**
ca′pi**t**	ca′pi**unt**	capiē′**bat**	capiē′**bant**

171. Fourth Conjugation

Most verbs ending in **–iō**, however, belong to the **fourth conjugation** and are distinguished by the stem vowel **–ī–**.

Verbs of the fourth conjugation are called Long-I Verbs, because they retain long **–ī–** throughout their conjugation except where long vowels are regularly shortened (**23,** *a*). Note by contrast that **–iō** verbs of the third conjugation have short **–i–** throughout.

Present (*I fortify*, etc.)		Imperfect (*I was fortifying*, etc.)	
mū′ni**ō**	mūnī′**mus**	mūniē′**bam**	mūniēbā′**mus**
mū′nī**s**	mūnī′**tis**	mūniē′**bās**	mūniēbā′**tis**
mū′ni**t**	mū′ni**unt**	mūniē′**bat**	mūniē′**bant**

172. Drill. — Conjugate and give all possible meanings of the present and imperfect tenses of **accēdō, inveniō, faciō.**

173. Exercises

Oral. 1. Puella magnam pecūniam in viā invenit. 2. Ubi estis, puerī et puellae? Venīmus. 3. Puerī malī magnam poenam merent, sed bonī multa praemia merent. 4. Nōnne aequum est semper laudāre et dēfendere amīcōs? 5. Castra mūniēbant et virōs ēvocābant, quod pugnāre parābant. 6. In castrīs captīvōs inveniunt et multam praedam capiunt. 7. Virī magna praemia accipiunt, quod officium faciunt et armīs patriam dēfendunt.

Written. 1. We do not find good timber in the forest. 2. We were fortifying the camp and defending the island with arms. 3. It is pleasing to find money. 4. Sail to the island, men, and lay waste the fields. 5. Marcus is not receiving a reward because he was a bad boy.

174. Rōmānī

Quondam Rōma oppidum parvum erat. Ibi Rōmānī habitābant et ibi pugnābant. Victōriīs magnīs patriam servābant et augēbant. Magna praemia Rōmānī accipiēbant, quod officium faciēbant et armīs patriam dēfendēbant. Multōs colōnōs in aliās terrās mittēbant. Aequē[1] multās prōvinciās regēbant. Frūmentum ex aliīs terrīs in Italiam portābant. Ad Britanniam, Hispāniam, Āfricam, Graeciam, Asiam nāvigābant. Nunc

[1] *justly.*

Rōma magna et pulchra est. Multī Americānī ad Italiam veniunt et viās pulchrās et templa et Forum Rōmae spectant. Mātūrābisne in Italiam venīre?

Read Sabin, pp. 100–101; Guerber (*Story*), pp. 11–13; Harding, pp. 7–12.

FIG. 50. ITALIA PULCHRA

A picturesque Roman tomb about fifteen miles east of Rome on the way to Tivoli. Part of the bridge is ancient. The river, called the Anio, is a tributary of the Tiber.

LESSON XXV

WORD ORDER

175. Vocabulary

dū'cō, dū'cere, *lead*	(reduce)
effi'ciō, effi'cere, *make out, bring about*	[***faciō***]
lo'cus, –ī, m., *place;* plur., **lo'ca**[1]	(local)
pre'tium, pre'tī, n., *price*	(precious)
ter'minus, –ī, m., *end, boundary*	(terminal)

176. Latin Phrases in English

ad īnfīnītum, *to infinity, i.e.* without limit.
ad astra per aspera, *to the stars through difficulties.*
ex animō, *from the heart* (sincerely).
Experientia docet, *Experience teaches.*

177. Word Order

We have observed from the beginning (**9**) that the words in a Latin sentence show their connection with one another by means of endings, regardless of position (unlike English). They may therefore be shifted rather freely without obscuring the relationship. The normal order is:

SUBJECT

NOUN — *adjective* (*genitive, appositive*)

PREDICATE

ablative — indir. obj. — dir. obj. — *adverb* — **VERB**

(*a*) **Remember,** therefore, that the normal order of words is as follows:

[1] When used in this original sense, **locus** changes gender in the plural.

1. Adjectives usually follow their nouns, but adjectives of quantity precede: **virī bonī; multī virī.**

2. Possessive adjectives (**meus, tuus,** etc.) follow their nouns, unless emphatic.

3. A genitive follows its noun.

4. An indirect object stands before a direct object.

5. A word used to ask a question usually stands first, as in English.

6. The verb stands last. Forms of the linking verb are often placed in the middle of a sentence, as in English.

7. For **nōnne,** see **151.**

(*b*) But this normal order is far less regular in Latin than the normal order is in English. The shifted order serves to bring out varying shades of emphasis. This is done also in English, though to a less extent, largely in imitation of the Latin. Emphasis is gained particularly by:

1. Putting the emphatic word *first* in the sentence.

2. *Separating* the emphatic word from the word to which it belongs.

The former is common in English: *Great is the glory of the Lord!*

178. Exercises

Oral. 1. Arma nova capiunt et locum dēfendunt. 2. Ad terram sociōrum cōpiās dūcēbāmus. 3. Multōs equōs habēre dēbēmus, sed magnum est pretium. 4. Magister tuus concordiam nōn efficit, quod puerī sunt malī. 5. Vocā, Mārce, virōs ad arma et mūnī loca plāna. 6. Ubi est terminus agrōrum Mārcī, amīcī nostrī? 7. Ad oppidum auxilia nunc mittimus, sed locum nōn mūnīmus.

Written. 1. The price of instruction is small, but the rewards are great. 2. Great is the fame of our teacher.

3. The sailors were seizing and fortifying many places on the island. 4. We are coming to the boundaries of our friends' fields. 5. They are hastening to lead a large number of prisoners to the small camp.

179. Castra Rōmāna

In multīs locīs Galliae et Hispāniae et Britanniae vestīgia castrōrum Rōmānōrum invenīmus. Rōmānī castra in locīs altīs pōnēbant ubi aqua bona erat. Vāllō et fossā castra mūniēbant. Vāllum erat altum et quattuor portās habēbat. Quās[1] portās vigiliae semper dēfendēbant. Fossa erat alta sed aquam nōn continēbat.

Vidēmus verbum "castra" in nōminibus[2] multōrum oppidōrum Americānōrum — Lan**caster,** Wor**cester, Chester,** et cētera. Memoriāne tenēs alia[3]?

Read Davis, p. 330.

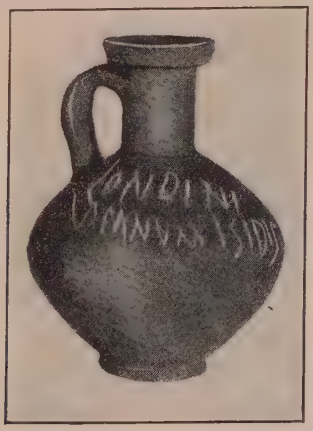


FIG. 51. A ROMAN VASE FROM LONDON
Note the Latin name of the city, **Londīnī,** scratched on it.

[1] *these.* [2] *names.* [3] *others.*

LESSON XXVI

THIRD CONJUGATION: FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

180. Vocabulary

com′modus, –a, –um, *suitable, convenient*	(commodity)
fu′giō, fu′gere, *flee*	(fugitive)
ō′tium, ō′tī, n., *leisure, rest*	(otiose)
stu′dium, stu′dī, n., *eagerness, interest;* plur., *studies*	(studious)
va′leō, valē′re, *be strong, be well, be powerful*	(valid)
va′rius, –a, –um, *changing, varying*	(variety)

181. Latin Phrases in English

victōria, nōn praeda, *victory, not booty.*

auxiliō ab altō, *by aid from (on) high.*

Montānī semper līberī, *Mountaineers (are) always free* (motto of West Virginia).

ex officiō, *out of (as a result of) one's duty* or *office; e.g.* a president of an organization may be a member of a committee, *ex officio* (pronounced "offishio"), as a result of his office as president.

182. Third Conjugation: Future Active

The future sign of verbs of the first and second conjugations is **–bi–** (**51**). The future sign of verbs of the third and fourth conjugations, however, is **–ē–**. The **–ō** verbs of the third conjugation, in forming the future, substitute **–ē–** for the stem vowel **–ĕ–**, except in the first singular (**–am**).[1]

pō′**nam,** *I shall place*	pōnē′**mus,** *we shall place*
pō′**nēs,** *you will place*	pōnē′**tis,** *you will place*
pō′**net,** *he will place*	pō′**nent,** *they will place*

[1] The third singular and plural have **–ĕ–**, according to rule (**23,** *a*).

183. Drill. — Give the present of **mittō,** the imperfect of **cēdō,** and the future of **dūcō, dēfendō,** and **agō.**

184. Exercises

Oral. 1. Valēsne, fīlia mea? Valeō. 2. Puerī bonī magnam fāmam ex studiīs accipiunt. 3. Varia est fortūna bellī, sed victōria erit nostra. 4. Multās hōrās in ōtiō nōn agēmus sed semper labōrābimus. 5. Puerī nōn excēdent sed puellās dēfendent. 6. Cōpiae nostrae ē castrīs nōn fugiunt sed ad locum commodum excēdunt. 7. Litterās ad Mārcum, amīcum meum, mittam.

Written. 1. They will be powerful; we are fleeing; he will lead; they were fortifying. 2. Where were the girls? Did they remain in a suitable place? 3. We shall remain in the town and send a messenger to our daughters. 4. They fortify the camp and summon reinforcements from the province.

185. Cerēs et Prōserpina

Cerēs erat dea frūmentī et agrōrum. Fīlia deae Prōserpina erat. Dea et fīlia in clārā īnsulā Siciliā habitābant. Quondam Prōserpina et aliae puellae in agrīs erant. Locum commodum inveniunt et ibi manent et flōrēs[1] legunt. Ōtium grātum est. Plūtō, deus Īnferōrum,[2] Prōserpinam videt et amat. Equōs incitat et ad locum accēdit ubi puellae sunt. Puellās terret. Prōserpina fugere mātūrat, sed Plūtō eam[3] capit, in carrō pōnit, ad Īnferōs dūcit.

Cerēs nocte[4] ex agrīs venit. Fīliam exspectat, tum vocat, sed Prōserpina nōn venit. Magna est cūra deae.

[1] *flowers.* [2] *those below, i.e.* the shades in Hades. [3] *her.* [4] *at night.*

Ad multa loca, ad terminōs terrae Cerēs accēdit; in silvīs, in agrīs, in oppidīs multārum terrārum multōs virōs, puerōs, puellās videt. Semper fīliam vocat sed nōn invenit.

Quod Cerēs Prōserpinam nōn invenit, in agrīs nōn labōrat. Flōrēs nōn sunt, frūmentum in agrīs nōn est. Carrī ad oppida frūmentum nōn portant. Pretium frūmentī magnum est. Populus vītam dūram agit et deam accūsat. Multī agricolae dīcunt:

"Quid[1] agēmus? In agrīs labōrāmus sed frūmentum nōn habēmus. Deī nōn aequī sunt; officium nōn faciunt. Vītam nostram servāre dēbent."

Iuppiter, quī deōs et virōs regit, iniūriās populī videt et deae agrōrum nūntiat:

"Plūtō fīliam tuam habet. Mercurium nūntium ad Īnferōs mittam. Mercurius fīliam tuam ad tē[2] dūcet. Sed nōn semper in terrā Prōserpina manēbit. Partem[3] annī in terrā, partem sub terrā aget."

Mercurium ēvocat et ad Īnferōs mittit. Mercurius Prōserpinam in Siciliam dūcit et Cerēs fīliam accipit. Prōserpina partem annī in terrā, partem sub terrā agit. Cum[4] lībera in terrā est, multōs flōrēs et magnam cōpiam frūmentī vidēmus, quod Cerēs grāta in agrīs est. Sed cum Prōserpina ad Īnferōs excēdit, Cerēs trīstis[5] est, et flōrēs nōn sunt.

Read Sabin, pp. 43–47; Guerber, pp. 145–154; Bulfinch, pp. 64–69; Harding (*Greek Gods*), pp. 48–51; Baker, pp. 127–136.

---

[1] *what.* [2] *you.* [3] Accusative singular of **pars.** [4] *whenever.* [5] *sad.*

Courtesy of Willy Pogany

FIG. 52. PLŪTŌ ET PRŌSERPINA

LESSON XXVII

FORMATION OF ADVERBS

186. Vocabulary

affi′ciō, affi′cere, *affect, visit with, afflict with*	[***faciō***]
cum, prep. with abl., *with*	
dū′rus, –a, –um, *hard, harsh*	(durable)
fir′mus, –a, –um, *strong, steadfast, firm*	(firmness)
ge′rō, ge′rere, *carry on, manage*	(belligerent)
inci′piō, inci′pere, *take to, begin*	[***capiō***]
perpe′tuus, –a, –um, *constant*	(perpetuity)

FIG. 53. HADRIAN'S VILLA NEAR TIVOLI

The emperor Hadrian (117–138 A.D.) built a magnificent summer home, or rather a fair-sized town, near Rome. The wall here shown furnished a shady walk morning and afternoon, on the one side or the other.

187. Latin and English Word Formation

The preposition **cum** is often used as a prefix in Latin and English but always in the assimilated forms **com–, con–, col–, cor–, co–.** It usually means *together* rather than *with.*

Define the following words, all formed from verbs which you have studied: *convoke, collaborate, commotion, convene.*

Give some other English words formed by attaching this prefix to Latin verbs, nouns, or adjectives already studied.

188. Formation of Adverbs

In English, adverbs are commonly formed from adjectives by adding the suffix *–ly*: adj., *clear;* adv., *clearly.*

In Latin, adverbs are likewise formed from adjectives. As a rule, adverbs are formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding **–ē** to the base: adj., **clārus;** adv., **clārē;** adj., **līber;** adv., **līberē.**

189. Drill. — Form adverbs from **pūblicus, grātus, commodus,** and **aequus.**

190. Ablative of Accompaniment

The means or instrument *with which* something is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (**66**): *They fought with arms,* **Armīs pugnābant.** When, however, *with* means *together with* or *along with,* the preposition **cum** with the ablative is used. This expresses **accompaniment: Cum servō venit,** *He is coming with the slave.*

Caution. — When tempted to use **cum** (*with*), be sure that *with* means accompaniment or association. In the following English sentences determine when **cum** should be used and when it should be omitted:

(*a*) *Anna is* ***with the sailor.***

(*b*) *Soldiers fight* ***with weapons;*** *generals fight* ***with armies;*** *both soldiers and generals fight* ***with their enemies.***

Fig. 54. Nautae Terram Firmam Vidēre Incipiēbant
(From "Julius Caesar.")

191. Exercises

Oral. 1. Amīcus noster cum familiā ad Eurōpam nāvigābit. 2. Cum cōpiīs īnsulārum bellum dūrum et perpetuum gerēmus. 3. Armīs oppida dēfendent et cum sociīs pugnābunt. 4. Magister dūrus puerōs malōs et puellās malās poenā aequē afficit. 5. Nautae terram firmam vidēre incipiēbant. 6. Nautae, pūblicē līberāte

captīvōs. 7. Servus cum magnā cōpiā pecūniae ē patriā fugit; nōn ōtium sed dūrās cūrās invenit. 8. In amīcitiā firmā et perpetuā cum sociīs nostrīs manēbimus.

Written. 1. It is not just to carry on war with friends. 2. They strongly fortify the camp and begin to fight with our allies. 3. A bad boy afflicts the family with constant care. 4. The settlers began to flee to the town with (their) families. 5. We shall send reinforcements with grain and defend the island with our troops.

192. Lūcius et Mārcus

Rōmānī et Aquītānī, sociī Rōmānōrum, cum Germānīs pugnābant. Lūcius, clārus Aquītānus, ex equō virōs Rōmānōs et Aquītānōs in Germānōs incitābat. Servus Lūciō nūntiat: "Germānī frātrem[1] tuum Mārcum capiunt!" Lūcius frātrem amābat. Equum incitat, Germānōs terret, frātrem servat, fugit, sed equus nōn valēbat: Lūcius frātrem sōlum[2] in equō pōnit, et ad castra Aquītānōrum et Rōmānōrum equum incitat. Tum[3] sōlus Germānōs exspectat. Multī Germānī accēdunt. Lūcius cēdere incipit, auxilium exspectat — sed auxilium nōn venit — ē vītā excēdit. Mārcus videt et equum in Germānōs incitat — et vītam āmittit.[4]

---

[1] *brother.* [2] *alone.* [3] *then.* [4] *loses.*

LESSON XXVIII

FOURTH CONJUGATION: FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE. FUTURE OF *-IŌ* VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

193. Vocabulary

au′diō, audī′re, *hear*	(auditory)
conti′neō, continē′re, *hold together, detain, contain*	[***teneō***]
tar′dus, –a, –um, *slow, late*	(retard)
tra′hō, tra′here, *draw, drag*	(traction)
ver′bum, –ī, n., *word*	(verbal)

194. Future Active of Fourth Conjugation and Third Conjugation *–iō* Verbs

Verbs of the fourth conjugation form the future by adding **–ē–** directly to the present stem (long **–ī–** of the stem is shortened, however, since it precedes another vowel). Verbs of the third conjugation ending in **–iō** resemble fourth conjugation verbs in the future tense, owing to the insertion of **–i–** (**170**):

I shall fortify, etc.		*I shall take*, etc.	
mū′niam	**mūniē′mus**	**ca′piam**	**capiē′mus**
mū′niēs	**mūniē′tis**	**ca′piēs**	**capiē′tis**
mū′niet	**mū′nient**	**ca′piet**	**ca′pient**

195. Drill. — Give the future of **portō, contineō, trahō, incipiō, audiō.**

196. Exercises

Oral. 1. Grātum est audīre vēra verba amīcōrum. 2. Captīvōs in locō lātō et commodō continēbimus. 3. Nautae nostrī ex aquā puerum trahunt et vītam

servant. 4. Armīsne oppidum dēfendere incipiēmus? 5. Magister tardōs puerōs poenā pūblicē afficiet sed puellās bonās verbīs dūrīs nōn terrēbit. 6. Colōnī ex agrīs ad oppidum carrīs frūmentum portābunt et magnam pecūniam accipient. 7. Magnus numerus equōrum carrōs agricolārum tardē trahēbat. Carrī frūmentum continēbant. Frūmentum ad sociōs mittere mātūrābāmus.

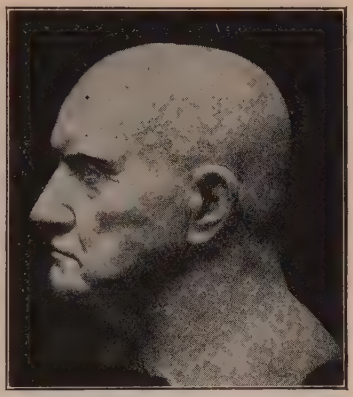


FIG. 55. VIR RŌMĀNUS

Written. 1. Anna, a good girl, will justly receive a large reward. 2. We shall fortify the camp and defend (it) with arms. 3. The men are dragging the prisoner to the water. 4. The boys will not receive the reward, because they are late. 5. The late boys and girls will not hear the words of the famous man.

197. Latin and English Word Formation

Most prefixes are prepositions, but a few are not. **Re–** is used only as a prefix in Latin and English; it means *back* or *again.* It sometimes has the form **red–**, especially before vowels. Examples: ***re*tineō, *hold back;* *re*ficiō, *make again;* *red*igō, *drive back.***

In English, **re–** is freely used with all sorts of words: *reduce, revisit, rehash, refill.*

Exercise. — Give other examples of the prefix **re–** in Latin and English words.

FIG. 56. TEMPLUM RŌMĀNUM
This finely preserved temple is at Nîmes, France.

198. Vīta Antīqua

Poētae[1] multa[2] dē deīs virīsque antīquīs nārrant. Multās fābulās dē clārīs Graecīs et Rōmānīs ā magistrō tuō audiēs et in librīs legēs. Fortasse ōlim ad Graeciam Italiamque nāvigābis et templa deōrum et clāra loca vidēbis dē quibus[3] poētae saepe scrībunt. Tum grātum erit verba poētārum memoriā tenēre. Italia multās antīquās ruīnās[1] continet. Multa[2] dē vītā antīquōrum Graecōrum et Rōmānōrum nōscēs sī ad Italiam nāvigābis et ibi manēbis. Multī Americānī ex Eurōpā variās rēs[4] Rōmānās portant. Fortasse magister tuus rēs Rōmānās habet et puerīs puellīsque mōnstrābit. Librī tuī Latīnī multās novās fābulās dē clārīs Rōmānīs continēbunt.

[1] Use the English derivative. [2] *many things.* [3] *which.* [4] *things.*

LESSON XXIX

IDIOMS

199. Vocabulary

conve′niō, convenī′re, *come together, assemble* [*veniō*]
con′vocō, convocā′re, *call together* [*vocō*]
i′bi, adv., *there*
me′dius, –a, –um, *middle, middle of* (mediator)
redū′cō, redū′cere, *lead back* [*dūcō*]
senten′tia, –ae, f., *feeling, opinion, motto* (sentence)

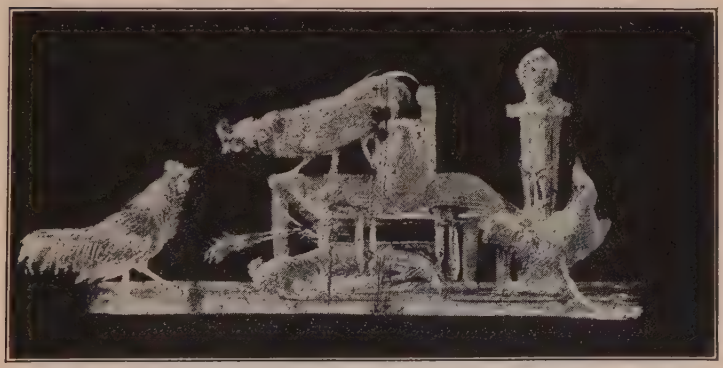


FIG. 57. A COCKFIGHT
From a Pompeian wall painting.

200. English Word Study

A friend is a person whom you know well, love dearly, and treat familiarly. How many English words can you call friends, according to this definition? If you will trace English words back to their Latin roots, you will gain many new friends. For example: A "sentence" in grammar is a single, complete *opinion* or expression.

A judicial "sentence" is a judge's *opinion*. A "convention" *comes together* in an "auditorium" to *hear* the speaker. A "mediator" settles disputes by taking a *middle* position. A spiritualistic "medium" is supposed to take a *middle* position between the unseen spirit and the "audience" who *hear*. A "studious" person is one who is *eager* to learn. An "alarm" is a call *to arms* (**ad arma**). To "repatriate" a person is to bring him *back* to his *fatherland*. Learn to look carefully at the *make-up* of every strange English word and you will often detect an old Latin friend *in disguise*.

201. Idioms

Every language contains set phrases or fixed expressions with meanings which cannot be translated literally. For example, we say, *How are you?* when we really mean, *How do you feel?*

FIG. 58. CAST OF A DOG AT POMPEII

Pompeii was buried by a shower of ashes from Vesuvius (cf. Fig. 46). This dog, as well as a number of human beings, was suffocated by them. As the body decayed, the ashes formed a perfect mold which the excavators filled with plaster.

Certain set phrases occur in Latin which are peculiar to it and cannot be translated literally into English. These fixed expressions are said to be **idiomatic.** The following should be memorized and entered in the notebook under the general heading "Idioms":

1. **grātiās agere,** *to thank,* with dat. (literally, *to act gratitude*)
2. **grātiam habēre,** *to feel grateful,* with dat. (lit., *to have gratitude*)
3. **vītam agere,** *to live a life* (lit., *to act life*)
4. **bellum gerere,** *to wage* or *carry on war*
5. **castra pōnere,** *to pitch camp* (lit., *to place camp*)
6. **castra movēre,** *to break camp* (lit., *to move camp*)
7. **viam mūnīre,** *to build a road* (lit., *to fortify a road;* roads were built like walls)
8. **verba facere,** *to speak, make a speech* (lit., *to make words*)
9. **memoriā tenēre,** *to remember* (lit., *to hold in memory*)
10. **cōnsilium capere,** *to adopt a plan* (lit., *to take a plan*)

202. Exercises

Oral. 1. Pōnite castra, puerī, in agrīs et ibi agite līberam vītam. 2. Magistrō nostrō grātiam habēmus et līberē grātiās agēmus. 3. Cōpiās ex mediā silvā redūcam et pugnāre incipiam. 4. Rōmānī multās longās viās in Italiā mūniēbant. 5. Puerōs singulōs convocābimus et sententiās audiēmus. 6. Virī ex multīs terrīs convenient et verba facient. 7. Magister verba faciet et puellīs grātiās aget.

Written. 1. We shall break camp and come to town with our friends. 2. The boys and girls feel grateful and will thank the teacher. 3. We ought to feel grateful to your friends. 4. The boys will find water and pitch camp. 5. We shall remember the teacher's words concerning duty.

203. Aenēās

Graecī Trōiam occupant. Fīliās Priamī, quī Trōiam regēbat, terrent et ad castra Graeca trahunt. Priamum et fīlium occīdunt.

Fig. 59. Aenēās Patrem Portat et Fīlium Dūcit

Aenēās Trōiānus clāmōrem[1] audit. Arma capit et cum multīs virīs oppidum dēfendere mātūrat. Pugnāre incipit, sed Venus dea, māter Aenēae,[2] ad eum[3] in mediō oppidō venit et verba facit:

"Tenē memoriā familiam tuam. Nōnne fīlium tuum amās? Cūr nōn vītam fīlī servāre mātūrās? Cum familiā et amīcīs ex oppidō fuge et nāvigā ad aliās terrās. Novam patriam inveniēs, novum oppidum mūniēs. Glōria novae patriae magna erit. Deī Trōiam vāstant. Trōiānōs poenā afficient."

Cōnsilium nōn grātum sed bonum Aenēās audit et probat. Ad familiam virōs redūcit et amīcōs convocat. Patrem[4] portat et fīlium parvum dūcit. Cum multīs

[1] Accusative singular. [2] Genitive singular. [3] *him.*
[4] Accusative singular of pater.

servīs et sociīs ex oppidō fugit. Singulī in ūnum locum conveniunt, sed Creūsam uxōrem[1] Aenēās nōn invenit. Ibi castra pōnunt. Māteriam ex silvā portant et nāvēs[2] parant. In nāvēs magnam cōpiam frūmentī portant. Tum undīs nāvēs mandant et migrant. Ad multās īnsulās et terrās novās veniunt sed patriam novam nōn inveniunt. Vītam dūram agunt. Semper mala est fortūna. Causa est īra Iūnōnis,[3] rēgīnae deōrum.

In īnsulā Crētā castra pōnunt. Tum in somnō Aenēās Penātēs[4] videt et audit:

"Crēta patria vestra nōn erit. Excēdite, Trōiānī. Locus est quem[5] Graecī Hesperiam, aliī Italiam vocant. Terra antīqua est. Ibi patria vestra erit. Ibi in ōtiō et concordiā habitābitis et magnum oppidum pōnētis."

Ita Trōiānī cōnsilium novum capiunt. Castra movent et ad Italiam nāvigant. Sed Iūnō īram nōn dēpōnit.

Read Sabin, pp. 331–333; Gayley, pp. 346–350; Bulfinch, pp. 314–315; Guerber, pp. 360–364.

FIG. 60. A COIN OF CAESAR

On the left, the head of Venus; on the right, Aeneas carrying his father, Anchises, and the image of Athena (Minerva) from Troy.

[1] Accusative singular. [2] Accusative plural of **nāvis**. [3] *of Juno.*
[4] Accusative plural. [5] Accusative: *which.*

Fig. 61. The Colosseum at Rome

THIRD REVIEW (LESSONS XXI–XXIX)

204. Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. locus
2. officium
3. oppidum
4. ōtium
5. populus
6. pretium
7. sententia
8. studium
9. terminus
10. verbum

Adjectives

11. aequus
12. commodus
13. dūrus
14. firmus
15. medius
16. perpetuus
17. tardus
18. varius

Verbs

19. accēdō
20. accipiō
21. afficiō
22. agō
23. audiō
24. capiō
25. cēdō
26. contineō
27. conveniō
28. convocō
29. dēfendō
30. dūcō
31. efficiō
32. excēdō
33. exspectō
34. faciō
35. fugiō
36. gerō
37. incipiō
38. inveniō
39. mittō
40. mūniō
41. pōnō
42. redūcō
43. regō
44. trahō
45. valeō
46. veniō

Adverbs

47. ibi
48. semper

Preposition

49. cum

Conjunction

50. quod

Interrogative Particle

51. –ne

205. Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. *place*
2. *duty*
3. *town*
4. *leisure*
5. *people*
6. *price*
7. *opinion*
8. *eagerness*
9. *end*
10. *word*

Adjectives

11. *even, just*
12. *convenient*
13. *hard*
14. *strong*
15. *middle (of)*
16. *constant*
17. *slow*
18. *changing*

Verbs

19. *approach*
20. *receive*
21. *affect*
22. *drive, act*
23. *hear*
24. *take*
25. *move, retreat*
26. *contain*
27. *come together*
28. *call together*
29. *defend*
30. *lead*
31. *bring about*
32. *go away*
33. *await*
34. *do, make*
35. *flee*
36. *carry on*
37. *begin*
38. *come upon*
39. *send*
40. *fortify*
41. *put*
42. *lead back*
43. *rule*
44. *draw*
45. *be strong*
46. *come*

Adverbs

47. *there*
48. *always*

Preposition

49. *with*

Conjunction

50. *because*

Interrogative Particle

51. = *?*

206. Nouns and Adjectives

Drill Exercises. — 1. Decline (*a*) **oppidum commodum,** (*b*) **puella bona,** (*c*) **vir aequus,** (*d*) **officium magnum.**

2. Decline in Latin (*a*) *a small word,* (*b*) *harsh opinion,* (*c*) *a sacred place,* (*d*) *a famous people.*

3. Give the nominative, singular and plural, of *great interest.*

Give the genitive, singular and plural, of *a constant duty.*

Give the dative, singular and plural, of *a good price.*

Give the accusative, singular and plural, of *varying opinion.*

Give the ablative, singular and plural, of *a firm man.*

207. Verbs: Present System of the Four Conjugations

Drill Exercises. — 1. Conjugate in the present indicative active: **sum, exspectō, dēbeō, mittō, efficiō, veniō.**

2. Conjugate in the imperfect indicative active: **sum, convocō, mereō, cēdō, afficiō, inveniō.**

3. Conjugate in the future indicative active: **sum, līberō, videō, dēfendō, accipiō, audiō.**

4. Form the present imperative, singular and plural, of **convocō, audiō, trahō, gerō, fugiō, valeō.**

208. Formation of Adverbs. — Give the Latin for *harshly, conveniently, fairly.*

209. Recognition of Verb Forms — Rapid-Fire Drills

I. *Give tense, person, and number, and translate:* Vident, mittent, dūcent, pōnit, pōnet, terrent, mittunt, incipient, erunt, valēbō, erās, fugiēbās, es, audiētis, exspectābimus, eris, dūcēbant, capiēmus, inveniēmus, erimus, veniam, accēdunt, erant, laudāmus.

II. *Give in Latin:* We shall send; he will be; I fortified; they approached; you (*sing.*) await; we are strong; we were; they will flee; they receive; you (*plur.*) did come; they were; he is managing; he is; they will begin; they will be.

210. Conundrum. — Why is the future tense of the third and fourth conjugations like a horse without a bridle? (Answer: It has no "–bit.")

211. English and Latin Word Studies

1. Give prefix and Latin root word from which the following are derived: **redigō, concipiō, attrahō, corrigō, committō;** *respect, allocation, depopulate, exigency, deficient.*

2. Define according to derivation: *inspect, exponent, fugitive, verbose, incipient.*

3. Make Latin words out of **ad–** and **capiō, in–** and **pōnō, con–** and **labōrō, ad–** and **teneō, dē–** and **mereō.**

FIG. 62. A ROMAN BUTCHER SHOP

From a relief in Dresden. Apparently the lady is going to have spareribs for dinner. Cleavers and chopping blocks have not changed much since ancient times.

LESSON XXX

SUBSTANTIVES. STORY OF LUCIUS

212. Substantives

When any part of speech, other than a noun or pronoun, is used like a noun or pronoun, it is called a **substantive.** We have already noted the substantive use of the infinitive (**136, 137**). Likewise, an adjective may be used substantively; the masculine refers to persons, the neuter to things:

(*a*) **Nostrī** (**virī**) **veniunt,** *Our* (*men*) *are coming.*
(*b*) **Multa audiēs,** *You will hear many* (*things*).

213. Hints for Reading and Translating

The first step in translating Latin is to follow the order of words, separating them into groups according to their agreement. Such word groups or phrases should be read and translated as units, with proper attention to emphasis and expression.

After translating **Forum Rōmānum** with due regard to the word groups in each sentence, practice reading the entire passage aloud in the Latin with as much expression as you can.

214. THE STORY OF LUCIUS

Forum Rōmānum

Quondam[1] puer parvus Lūcius in Italiā habitābat. Dē glōriā patriae multa audiēbat. Magister Lūciō

[1] *once upon a time.*

et cēterīs[1] puerīs loca clāra Rōmae mōnstrābat. In Forum Rōmānum puerōs dūcēbat. In hunc[2] locum populus Rōmānus conveniēbat. Ibi virī amīcōs vidēbant et aedificia[3] pūblica spectābant. Ibi nūntiī magnās victōriās nūntiābant. Ibi virī clārī in rōstrīs[4] verba pūblicē faciēbant. Magister multa dē patriā in Forō docēbat. Puerī magistrō magnam grātiam habēbant, quod Forum amābant. Ē Forō puerī cum magistrō in Sacram Viam ambulābant[5] et tabernās[6] spectābant. Cupitisne[7] plūra[8] dē Lūciō audīre?

FIG. 63. FORUM RŌMĀNUM

A view from the Capitoline Hill, facing east (cf. Figs. 2, 64). In the foreground, the Basilica Julia (a courthouse); to the left, the Forum proper; in the left background, the Colosseum; on the right, the Palatine Hill.

[1] *the other.* [2] *this.* [3] *buildings.* [4] *the rostra* (speakers' platform). [5] *walked.* [6] *shops.* [7] *desire.* [8] *more.*

215. Conversation

(See *Color Map of the Roman World* between pp. 90 and 91.)

M. = Magister **D. = Discipulī**

M. Spectāte, puerī et puellae. **D.** Spectāmus, magister.

M. Ubi oppida vidētis? **D.** In Āfricā et in Asiā et in Eurōpā multa oppida vidēmus.

M. In mediā terrā aquam vidētis. Illam[1] aquam "Medi-terrā-neum Mare[2]" vocāmus.

M. Ibi est Lūsitānia — vidētisne? **D.** Vidēmus.

M. Ubi est Hibernia? **D.** Hibernia est īnsula in Ōceanō Atlanticō.

M. Multī virī multōrum populōrum in Eurōpā habitant.

M. Ubi pugnābant Sociī in Bellō Magnō? **D.** Sociī in Galliā et in Italiā pugnābant.

Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Ubi habitāmus? 2. Nōnne officium nostrum est patriam dēfendere? 3. Ubi Germānī agrōs vāstābant? 4. Tenēsne memoriā Bellum Magnum?

216. GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE

The City of Rome

According to tradition, Rome was founded in 753 B.C. The first settlement was on the Palatine Hill, named after Pales, the goddess of shepherds. This was natural because the first settlers were shepherds. As the

[1] *that.* [2] *Sea.*

city grew it spread to the nearby hills and the valleys between them. In the course of time it came to be known as the "City of the Seven Hills." These hills are neither high nor extensive. The Palatine is only 142 feet above the level of the Tiber River — about the height of a ten-story building.

Below the Palatine Hill was the valley which came to be known as the Forum. At first a marshy district, it became the market place of Rome, then its chief shopping and business district, and finally the civic center. In its final development it was a rectangular paved space surrounded by temples, law courts, senate house, and other public buildings. At one end was a speakers' platform called the *rostra* because it was

FIG. 64. FORUM RŌMĀNUM

Thus it appeared during the Roman Empire. The view is toward the west. In the left background, the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline Hill.

ornamented with the beaks of ships (**rōstra**) captured in a war fought in the fourth century B.C.

The Palatine, because of its nearness to the Forum, became the residence district for the statesmen and wealthy people of the city. Hence it was natural that the first emperors had their homes there. Eventually the whole imperial administration was centered on this hill, and the emperor's buildings covered it completely. So the hill which was named after the patron goddess of the shepherds who built their rude huts there came to be the site of magnificent buildings. Thus it happens that our word *palace* is derived from the name of the hill.

Another hill near the Forum, the Capitoline, got its name from the famous temple of Jupiter known as the Capitolium, because it was the "head" (**caput**), or chief temple of that god. From it the Capitol at Washington gets its name, as well as the Capitols of the various states. The hill also had on it a fort and the temple of Juno Moneta. In connection with this a mint for coining money was later established, and thus from the word **monēta** we get our words *money* and *mint.*

The streets of Rome were narrow and crooked. In the early days they were unpaved. Only during the last part of the first century B.C. (99–1) did Rome begin to become beautiful.

In the early days the people of Rome got their water from wells, springs, and the Tiber River, which winds its way along one side of the city in the shape of the letter S. In 312 B.C. Appius Claudius built the first aqueduct, which brought pure water from a distance.

There were many street fountains, and eventually many houses were piped for running water.

For better administration the emperor Augustus divided the city into fourteen regions, or wards. One feature of this arrangement was the reorganization and extension of the police and fire department (**vigilēs,** *watchmen*). Previously fire protection had been so poor that private fire companies were organized. These bought up burning houses at bargain prices and then proceeded to extinguish the fire.

In early days a wall known as the Servian wall was built around the city. But Rome soon outgrew this. In the third century A.D. the wall of Aurelian was built.

At its height, Rome had a population of more than a million. The modern city has been growing rapidly in recent years, but has not yet reached this figure. The latest official estimate (1928) puts it at 867,000.

Rome has been one of the most important cities of the world for a longer time than any other. For hundreds of years it was the capital of the great Roman Empire, then it continued its importance as the seat of the papacy, and in recent generations it has become also the capital of one of the powerful nations of Europe. Even in ancient times it received the name of the "Eternal City" (**urbs aeterna**), and it seems that this name has been justified.

Read Greenwood, pp. 120–176; Botsford, pp. 348–351.

Fig. 65. The Interior Wall of an Ancient House at Pompeii

LESSON XXXI

PRESENT SYSTEM PASSIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

217. Vocabulary

commit'tō, commit'tere, *join together, commit, intrust;* **proe'lium commit'tere,** *to begin battle* [***mittō***]

fīni'timus, –a, –um, *neighboring;* **fīni'timus, –ī,** m., *neighbor*

pau'cī, –ae, –a, *few* (paucity)

proe'lium, proe'lī, n., *battle*

–que, conj., *and* (translated before the word to which it is joined)

re'liquus, –a, –um, *remaining, rest of* (relic)

218. English and Latin Word Formation

We have seen how Latin and English words are formed from others by the use of prefixes. There are other ways of forming new words. These we shall discuss later. For the present it is sufficient to recognize the roots that words have in common. Note the relationship and review the meanings of the following words which have occurred in the preceding vocabularies:

(*a*) **amīcus** and **amīcitia,** (*b*) **nāvigō** and **nauta,** (*c*) **nūntiō** and **nūntius,** (*d*) **capiō** and **captīvus** (a "captive" is one who is *taken*), (*e*) **pugna** and **pugnō,** (*f*) **puer** and **puella,** (*g*) **habeō** and **habitō** (to "inhabit" a place is to keep on *having* it).

From now on try to associate new Latin words with those you have already had, as well as with English derivatives which you find.

219. Voice: Active and Passive (*Study* 628.)

1. **Vir accūsābit,** *The man will accuse.*
2. **Vir accūsābitur,** *The man will be accused.*

Observe (*a*) that in 1 the verb shows that the subject *acts* (**active voice**), and in 2 that it is *acted upon* (**passive voice**); (*b*) that voice is indicated in Latin by endings.

Note. — The linking verb **sum** has no voice, for it merely indicates existence.

220. Progressive and Passive Verb Forms Distinguished in English (*Study* 627, 631.)

Be careful to distinguish between active progressive forms and true passive verb phrases, both of which employ the verb *to be*.

Active (progressive): The present participle combined with any tense of the verb *to be* is active: *He is seeing* (**videt**); *They were calling* (**vocābant**).

Passive: The past participle combined with any tense of the verb *to be* is passive: *He is seen* (**vidētur**); *They were called* (**vocābantur**).

Summary: 1. *to be* + present participle = active
2. *to be* + past participle = passive

221. Passive Voice of the Four Conjugations in Present System

The passive personal endings, which are substituted for the active,[1] are:

[1] But in forms ending in **–ō** in the active (as **parō** and **parābō**), the passive ending **–r** is *added to*, not *substituted for*, the active ending. The **–ō–** becomes short.

Personal Endings		Present	
r–	**–mur**	pa′**ror**, *I am prepared*	parā′**mur**, *we are prepared*
–ris	**–minī**	parā′**ris**, *you are prepared*	parā′**minī**, *you are prepared*
–tur	**–ntur**	parā′**tur**, *he is prepared*	paran′**tur**,[1] *they are prepared*

Similarly **habeor, pōnor, capior, mūnior** (see **656, 657, 659, 658**).

Imperfect

parā′**bar**, *I was being prepared, was prepared* — parābā′**mur**, *we were being prepared*, etc.
parābā′**ris**, *you were being prepared*, etc. — parābā′**minī**, *you were being prepared*, etc.
parābā′**tur**, *he was being prepared*, etc. — parāban′**tur**, *they were being prepared*, etc.

Similarly **habēbar, pōnēbar, capiēbar, mūniēbar** (see **656, 657, 659, 658**).

Future

parā′**bor**, *I shall be prepared* — parā′**bimur**, *we shall be prepared*
parā′**beris**, *you will be prepared* — parābi′**minī**, *you will be prepared*
parā′**bitur**, *he will be prepared* — parābun′**tur**, *they will be prepared*

Similarly **habēbor, pōnar, capiar, mūniar** (see **656, 657, 659, 658**).

222. Drill. — Conjugate **pugnō, videō, dēfendō, accipiō,** and **inveniō** in the present system passive.

[1] For the vowel shortened before **–ntur**, see **23**, *a*.

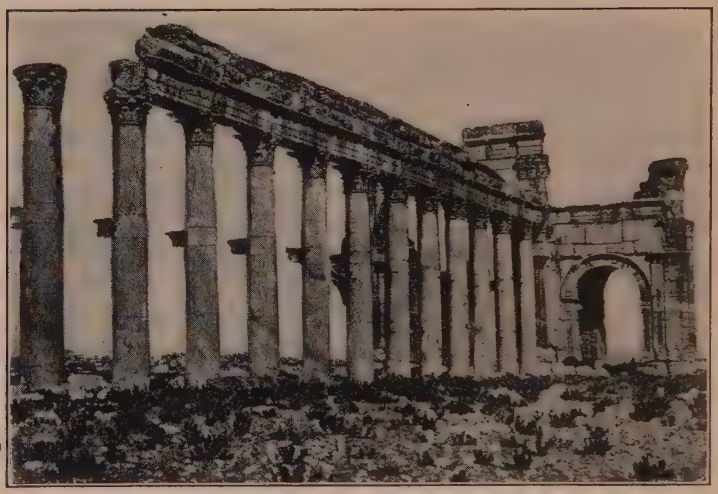


FIG. 66. ROMAN RUINS IN PALMYRA, SYRIA
The Roman Empire extended to many regions which now seem very remote.

223. Exercises

Oral. 1. Reliquī nautae ad prōvinciam mittentur. 2. Rōmānī proelium cum fīnitimīs nunc committunt. 3. Americam, terram līberōrum, amāmus et laudāmus. 4. Pauca signa proelī in fīnitimīs agrīs oppidīsque vidēbantur. 5. Multa praemia reliquīs puerīs puellīsque dōnābuntur. 6. Captīvī ad oppidum redūcentur et proelium committētur.

Written. 1. We shall be accused; he is being taught; it was not approved; they will be sent. 2. They will receive a few words of advice; a few words of advice will be received. 3. Where are the-rest-of the boys? Are they working in the fields? 4. The-rest-of the men will be sent to the island and will lead-back many prisoners.

FIG. 67. SICILIA

The Greeks called Sicily "Trinacria," the three-cornered island, here represented as three-legged. The Greek letters give the name of the city of Panormus (Palermo).

224. Ad Italiam

In magnīs undīs nāvēs[1] Trōiānōrum volvuntur. Magnum est perīculum. Sed ad īnsulam parvam Trōiānī veniunt et ex undīs servantur. In īnsulā nōn manent. Ad Actium nāvigant et ibi inveniunt Helenum Trōiānum, quī terram regēbat. Helenus verba facit:

"Longa est via ad Italiam, ad quam[2] accēdere parātis. Nōn dēbētis accēdere ad terrās quae[3] proximae[4] nostrīs terrīs sunt, quod ibi Graecī habitant. Accēdite ad Siciliam et nāvigāte ab Siciliā ad Italiam. Dūrum est semper nāvigāre, sed Fāta viam invenient."

Verba Helenī grātē accipiuntur, et Aenēās Helenō grātiās agit. Tum sociōs incitat. Castra moventur nāvēsque[1] undīs committuntur. "Italiam, Italiam videō!" clāmat nauta et mōnstrat terram. In terrā

[1] Nominative plural. [2] *which.* [3] Nominative plural feminine: *which.* [4] *nearest to.*

equī clārē videntur. "Signum bellī sunt equī," dīcit Anchīsēs; "equīs bellum geritur." Nōn ibi manent sed ad Siciliam nāvigant. Aetna eōs[1] terret et ab Siciliā nāvigant.

Tum Iūnō in patriam ventōrum venit et ad Aeolum, quī ventōs regit et continet, accēdit. Dīcit:

"Trōiānī malī in undīs nāvigant et in Italiam Penātēs[2] portant. Nōn aequum est. Sī ventōs dūrōs in nāvēs[2] Trōiānōrum mittēs, magnam grātiam habēbō et magna praemia tibi[3] dōnābō."

Fig. 68. Neptūnus

Aeolus ventōs incitat et in nāvēs mittere mātūrat. Altae undae Trōiānōs terrent. Virī et arma in undīs sunt. Tum Neptūnus, deus undārum, ventōs audit et ad locum venit ubi nāvēs sunt. Īra Neptūnī magna est. Ventōs accūsat. Ventī lātē fugere mātūrant. Trōiānī ad terram veniunt et servantur. In terram nāvēs trahuntur. Ex nāvibus[4] frūmentum portātur. Locus commodus invenītur et castra pōnuntur. Aqua et māteria ex silvā portantur. Sed in quā[5] terrā sunt? Nōn sciunt.[6]

Read Sabin, pp. 334–336; Bulfinch, pp. 316–318; Guerber, pp. 365–367.

[1] *them.* [2] Accusative plural. [3] *to you.* [4] Ablative plural. [5] *what.* [6] *know.*

LESSON XXXII

ABLATIVE OF PERSONAL AGENT

225. Vocabulary

appel'lō, appellā're, *call, call upon, name* (appellate)
aut, conj., *or;* **aut . . . aut,** *either . . . or*
et . . . et, conj., *both . . . and*
ne'que (or **nec**), conj., *and not, nor;* **ne'que . . . ne'que,** *neither . . . nor*
praesi'dium, praesi'dī, n., *garrison, guard, protection*

226. Latin Phrases in English

magnum bonum, *great good.*
terra firma, *solid earth* (as opposed to water).
via media, *a middle way* or *course.*
cōnsiliō et armīs, *by counsel and by arms.*
nōn ministrārī, sed ministrāre, *not to be served, but to serve* (motto of Wellesley College).
In Deō spērāmus, *In God we trust* (motto of Brown University).

227. Ablative of Personal Agent

1. **Amāmur ab amīcīs,** *We are loved by our friends.*
2. **Vir ā puerō vidētur,** *The man is seen by the boy.*

228. Rule. — *The ablative preceded by* **ā** *or* **ab** *is used with a passive verb to denote the person by whom anything is done.*

Caution. — The ablative of personal agent must be carefully distinguished from the ablative of means, both of which are frequently translated with *by*. Remember that *"means" refers to things,* while *"agent" always denotes a person.* Furthermore, the ablative of means *never* takes a preposition, while the ablative of personal agent is never used without the preposition **ā** (**ab**). This preposition means *by* only when used with a personal agent.

1. **Oppidum cōnsiliō capitur,** *The town is taken* ***by*** *strategy* **(means).**

2. **Oppidum ā nostrīs capitur,** *The town is taken* ***by*** *our men* **(agent).**

229. Agreement. — In both English and Latin, when two singular subjects are connected by *or* (**aut**), *either . . . or* (**aut . . . aut**), *neither . . . nor* (**neque . . . neque**), the verb is in the singular: *Neither the boy nor the girl* ***is*** *in the forest,* **Neque puer neque puella in silvā *est*.**

230. Drill. — Turn back to page 112 (**196**) and put into the passive *Oral* 3, 5, 6, 7.

231. Exercises

Oral. 1. Puer equōs dūcit; equī ā puerō dūcuntur. 2. Magister puerōs puellāsque docēbat; puerī puellaeque ā magistrō docēbantur. 3. Aut puerī aut virī equōs ad agrōs redūcent. 4. Neque servus neque equus in viīs vidēbitur. 5. Multa praemia ā reliquīs puerīs puellīsque grātē accipientur. 6. Neque praesidium neque auxilium ā nostrīs sociīs mittitur. 7. Et sociī et amīcī[1] ā multīs populīs appellābimur.

Written. 1. The men see few signs of battle; few signs of battle are seen by the men. 2. The girls were frightened by the bad boys. 3. The grain is being carried by wagon to the town. 4. The troops were fleeing to the neighboring woods; there they were captured by our strong guard. 5. Neither water nor grain is being carried by the-rest-of the men.

[1] Observe that the predicate nominative (**15,** *b*) may be used with other verbs than **sum.**

232. Aenēās in Āfricā Est

Aenēās sociōs in locum commodum convocat et verba facit:

"Dūra est vīta nostra. Multa sunt mala nostra. In terrā nōn nōtā sumus. Sed deī nōs[1] servābunt. Cōnfīdite deīs.[2] Nōn semper perpetuīs cūrīs afficiēmur. Habēte firmum animum. Italia nostra erit. Ibi et terminus malōrum nostrōrum et ōtium grātum invenientur. Ibi patria erit et nova Trōia."

FIG. 69. VENUS

Tum Aenēās cum sociō ūnō ex castrīs excēdit. Loca explōrāre mātūrat. Venus māter eum[3] videt et accēdit. Nōmen terrae et oppidī, quod[4] appellātur Carthāgō et in Āfricā est, et nōmen rēgīnae, quae[5] est Dīdō, Aenēae[6] Venus nūntiat. Via ā deā Aenēae mōnstrātur. Aenēās prōcēdit et magnum oppidum videt. In mediō oppidō templum Iūnōnis[7] est. Ad templum rēgīna Dīdō cum multīs sociīs venit. Ibi sunt reliquī Trōiānī quōs[8] undae ab Aenēā[9] sēparāverant.[10] Hī[11] servantur et ad oppidum veniunt.

Dīdō mala Trōiānōrum audit et dīcit:

"Auxiliō meō vel in Italiam vel in Siciliam veniētis,

---

[1] *us.* [2] Dative with **cōnfīdere.** [3] *him.* [4] *which.* [5] *who.* [6] Dative. [7] *of Juno.* [8] *whom.* [9] Ablative. [10] Use the English derivative in the past perfect tense (*had* ——). [11] *these.*

amīcī. Et pecūniam et nāvēs[1] dōnābō. Sed sī in nostrā patriā manēre grātum est, oppidum nostrum vestrum est. Trōiānōs in amīcitiam et concordiam accipiēmus."

Tum magna cēna ā rēgīnā parātur. Aenēās nūntium ad castra mittit, quī Iūlō, fīliō Aenēae, dīcit:

"Venī ad oppidum, Iūle, et portā dōna. Pater tē[2] exspectat."

Sed in locō Iūlī Venus deum Amōrem[3] mittit. Sed et Aenēās et reliquī Trōiānī deum[4] crēdunt esse Iūlum. Tum Amor rēgīnam afficit, et Dīdō Aenēam amāre incipit.

Read Sabin, pp. 335–336; Guerber, pp. 366–367; Clarke, pp. 52–61.

Fig. 70. Amor Rēgīnam Afficit, et Dīdō Aenēam Amāre Incipit

[1] Accusative plural. [2] *you.* [3] *Love,* a Roman god.
[4] **deum . . . Iūlum:** *believe the god to be Iulus.*

LESSON XXXIII

PERFECT STEM. PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

233. Vocabulary

āmit′tō, āmit′tere, āmī′sī, *let go, lose*	[*mittō*]
an′nus, –ī, m., *year*	(annual)
lī′ber, lī′brī, m., *book*	(library)
perī′culum, –ī, n., *trial, danger*	(perilous)
prō, prep. with abl., *in front of, before,* ***for***	
pro′perō, properā′re, properā′vī, *hasten*	

FIG. 71. SATYRS AS ROPEWALKERS

A satyr was a mythological being, half man, half goat. The central figure plays a flute; the one on the right, a lyre. An ancient wall painting.

234. Latin and English Word Formation

As a prefix **pro–** has its prepositional meanings, with the additional one of *forward.* Define the following derivatives of words which you have already studied:

provoke, prospect, produce, proceed.

Latin Phrases in English

prō patriā, *for (one's) country.*
prō bonō pūblicō, *for the public good.*
prō fōrmā, *for (as a matter of) form.*

235. The Perfect Stem

In English, the **perfect** tense is formed by use of the auxiliary *have* (*has*) with the past participle: *I have prepared, he has gone.*

In Latin, the **perfect stem** is used in forming the three perfect tenses in the active — the **perfect, past perfect,** and **future perfect.** The perfect stem is found by dropping the personal ending **–ī** from the perfect active indicative: **āmīsī, āmīs–.**

Note. — All verbs of the first conjugation thus far studied form the perfect stem by adding **–v** to the present stem: **properā–, properāv–.** No rules, however, can be given for forming the perfect stem of verbs of the other conjugations. Hereafter the first person singular of the perfect active indicative will be given in the vocabularies as the third form. This should be memorized.

236. Perfect Active Indicative

The following endings (used in no other tenses) are added directly to the perfect stem in forming the **perfect indicative active:**

Perfect Endings	First Conjugation	Second Conjugation
–ī	parā′**vī,** *I prepared, I have prepared*	ha′**buī,** *I had, I have had*
–istī	parāvis′**tī,** *you prepared,* etc.	habuis′**tī,** *you had,* etc.
–it	parā′**vit,** *he prepared,* etc.	ha′**buit,** *he had,* etc.
–imus	parā′**vimus,** *we prepared,* etc.	habu′**imus,** *we had,* etc.
–istis	parāvis′**tis,** *you prepared,* etc.	habuis′**tis,** *you had,* etc.
–ērunt	parāvē′**runt,** *they prepared,* etc.	habuē′**runt,** *they had,* etc.

Similarly **posuī, cēpī, mūnīvī** (see **657, 659, 658**).

237. Drill. — Conjugate the following in the perfect indicative active:

convocō (convocāv–), agō (ēg–), excēdō (excess–), dēfendō (dēfend–), mittō (mīs–), trahō (trāx–), accipiō (accēp–), videō (vīd–), fugiō (fūg–), veniō (vēn–).

238. Exercises

Oral. 1. Āmīsimus; nūntiāvit; augēbis; occupāvistis; āmittitur; ēvocāminī. 2. Puer in viā librum āmīsit. 3. Ex oppidō excessimus et ad agrōs silvāsque properāvimus. 4. Multī vītam in bellō āmīsērunt sed magnam glōriam accēpērunt. 5. Multōs annōs in perīculō ēgimus; nunc ōtium habēmus. 6. Properāre dēbēmus, quod perīculum nunc est magnum. 7. Multī captīvī ā puerīs prō castrīs vidēbantur.

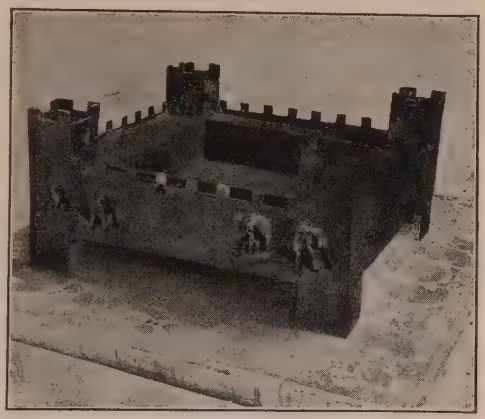


FIG. 72. A PORTABLE HOT-WATER HEATER

The heater has the form of a fortified camp. A charcoal fire was built in the interior. The water was poured into the towers and circulated around the fire.

Written. 1. To lose; he has departed; we have intrusted; we shall be heard. 2. Were the girls being frightened by the horses? Where were the boys? 3. They saw the danger clearly and fled to the camp. 4. I have intrusted the care of the camp to the guards.

239. Aenēās et Dīdō

Ad Annam sorōrem[1] Dīdō properāvit:

"Anna soror," dīcit, "animus meus perīculīs terrētur; Aenēam amō. Quid[2] agam?"

Anna respondet:

"Aenēās est bonus vir. Prō Trōiā pugnāvit; nunc prō nostrā patriā pugnābit. Populī fīnitimī nōn sunt amīcī. Proelium committere parant. Terminī nostrī ab Aenēā dēfendentur."

Aenēās in Āfricā cum rēgīnā manet. Dīdō Trōiānum per oppidum dūcit et eī[3] cōpiās oppidumque mōnstrat.

Tum Iuppiter Mercurium nūntium ad Aenēam mīsit.

"Nōn aequum est in hōc[4] locō manēre," Mercurius dīcit. "Verba deī memoriā nōn tenēs; nunc properā in Italiam cum sociīs tuīs, ubi fīlius tuus reget. Ibi ōtium habēbis neque labōrābis. Annum in hōc locō ēgistī. Tardus in patriam novam veniēs."

Fig. 73. Mercurius

As messenger of the gods Mercury sometimes became weary in spite of his winged feet.

Aenēās sociōs convocāvit. Sociī arma parāvērunt et frūmentum in nāvēs[5] portāvērunt. Anna cōnsilia Trōiānōrum rēgīnae nūntiāvit. Dīdō Aenēam verbīs accūsāvit:

"Cūr fugis? Dūrus es; iniūriam facis. Magnum est

[1] Accusative: *sister*. [2] *what*. [3] *to him*. [4] *this*. [5] Accusative plural.

perīculum nostrum. Ā populīs fīnitimīs bellum gerētur, agrī nostrī vāstābuntur, oppidum occupābitur. Prō patriā meā et tuā pugnāre dēbēs."

Aenēās respondet:

"Deum Mercurium vīdī. Officium meum est ad Italiam nāvigāre. Dūrum est, sed deus imperat."

Aenēās excessit et ad nāvēs vēnit. Sociī convēnērunt et nāvēs in aquam trāxērunt. Tum nāvēs undīs ventīsque commīsērunt. Dīdō nāvēs vīdit et sē[1] interfēcit.[2]

Trōiānī ad Italiam migrāvērunt et patriam novam invēnērunt. Posterī[3] Trōiānōrum Rōmam cōnstituērunt.[4]

Read Sabin, pp. 337–341; Gayley, pp. 352–354; Bulfinch, pp. 318–320; Clarke, pp. 61–74.

FIG. 74. A ROMAN WEDDING. (From "Julius Caesar.")

[1] *herself.* [2] *killed.* [3] *descendants.* [4] *founded.*

LESSON XXXIV

PERFECT INDICATIVE OF *SUM*. THE USE OF THE IMPERFECT AND THE PERFECT

240. Vocabulary

com′parō, comparā′re, comparā′vī, *get together, prepare* [*parō*]
fī′lius, fī′lī, m., *son* [*fīlia*]
nōs′cō, nōs′cere, nō′vī, *learn;* in perf. tenses, "have learned" = *know*
prōcē′dō, prōcē′dere, prōces′sī, *go forth, advance* [*cēdō*]
sum, es′se, fu′ī, *be* (essence)
ab′sum, abes′se, ā′fuī, *be away from, be absent*

241. Perfect Indicative of *Sum*

The verb **sum** is conjugated regularly in the perfect:

fu′**ī,** *I have been, I was*	fu′**imus,** *we have been, we were*
fuis′**tī,** *you have been, you were*	fuis′**tis,** *you have been, you were*
fu′**it,** *he has been, he was*	fuē′**runt,** *they have been, they were*

242. How the Perfect and the Imperfect Differ in Latin (*Study* **626,** *b, d.*)

The perfect tense represents an act (*a*) as *now complete,* like the English present perfect, expressed by *has* and *have:* **vīdī,** *I have seen;* (*b*) as a *simple act* performed *once,* like the English past: **vīdī,** *I saw.* The latter use of the Latin perfect is to be carefully distinguished from the imperfect, which always denotes a state of being or an act as *repeated, customary,* or *continuous,* like the English progressive past:

Perfect: **vīdī,** *I saw* (once).
Imperfect: **vidēbam,** *I kept seeing* (all along), *I was seeing.*

The perfect tense is used more commonly in Latin than the imperfect.

243. Exercises

Oral. 1. Multī puerī aberant. Nōnne valēbant? 2. Aquam portābam et reliquī puerī in magnō agrō castra pōnēbant. 3. Paucī (of us) labōrābāmus, sed reliquī puerī in castrīs semper manēbant. 4. Agricolārum fīliī et fīliae multa dē agrīs et equīs nōvērunt. 5. Magistrī fīlius multa dē librīs nōvit, sed agrī fīlium agricolae docent. 6. Multī virī servī fuērunt; nunc līberī sunt. 7. Prō patriā ad pugnam prōcessērunt; prō patriā et arma et frūmentum comparāvērunt; prō patriā labōrāvērunt et pecūniam dōnāvērunt.

Written. 1. We are the sons of free (men) and love our native land. 2. We know much about many lands and peoples. 3. Much grain is being prepared by the farmers in the provinces. 4. We hastened from the town into the fields and learned many (things). 5. The farmer has spent many years in the fields.

244. Latin and English Word Formation

We have already studied the preposition **in** used as a prefix (**126**). There is another prefix **in–**, used chiefly with adjectives and nouns, which has an entirely different meaning and must be carefully distinguished from the former. It is a negative prefix (like "un–"), as in *injustice*. It is assimilated like the other prefix **in–**, *e.g. il-legal, im-moral, ir-regular*. Define the following derivatives of words which you have studied:

immemorial, immaterial, inglorious, ingratitude, illiberal, illiterate, infirm.

The prefix **dis–** in English and Latin means *apart,* but sometimes it is purely negative like **in–**. Distinguish carefully from **dē–**. It is either assimilated or left unchanged, as follows:

dis-inter, dis-locate, dis-arm, dif-fuse, di-vert, di-stant, dis-similar.

Define the first three of these words, derived from words in previous vocabularies.

245. Grātia

Tenēsne memoriā puerum quem[1] in viā vīdistī? Huic[2] grātiam habēre dēbēmus, quod amīcum nostrum ex aquā trāxit et vītam servāvit. Magnae undae amīcum nostrum terrēbant: auxilium aberat et amīcus noster vītam āmittēbat. Sed puer eum[3] vīdit et servāvit. Reliquī spectābant et nihil[4] faciēbant. Amīcus noster fuit grātus et magnum praemium puerō dōnāvit. Nōmen puerī nōn nōvī. Fīlius agricolae est sed nōn semper in agrīs fuit. In oppidō fīnitimō habitābat.

FIG. 75. PUER RŌMĀNUS

[1] *whom.* [2] *to him.* [3] *him.* [4] *nothing.*

LESSON XXXV

PAST PERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

246. Vocabulary

dīmit′tō, dīmit′tere, dīmī′sī, *let go, send away* [***mittō***]
inimī′cus, –a, –um, *unfriendly, hostile;* as a noun, *enemy* [***amīcus***]
in′teger, –gra, –grum, *untouched, fresh* (integer)
por′ta, –ae, f., *gate* (portal)
prōdū′cō, prōdū′cere, prōdū′xī, *lead forth* or *out* [***dūcō***]
reti′neō, retinē′re, reti′nuī, *hold back, restrain, keep* [***teneō***]

247. Past Perfect Indicative Active (*Study* **626,** *e.*)

In English, the **past perfect** tense is formed by use of the auxiliary *had* with the past participle: *I had prepared, they had prepared.*

In Latin, the **past perfect** (sometimes called pluperfect) is formed by adding the tense sign **–erā–** to the perfect stem, together with the personal endings used throughout the present system. It is equivalent in form to the various forms of the imperfect tense of **sum** added to the perfect stem of the given verb:

parā′**veram,** *I had prepared*	parāve**rā′mus,** *we had prepared*
parā′**verās,** *you had prepared*	parāve**rā′tis,** *you had prepared*
parā′**verat,** *he, she, it had prepared*	parā′**verant,** *they had prepared*

Similarly **habueram, posueram, cēperam, mūnīveram.**
(For full conjugation see **656, 657, 659, 658.**)

248. Future Perfect Indicative Active (*Study* **626**, *f.*)

In English, the **future perfect** tense is formed by use of the auxiliary *shall have* with the past participle: *I shall have prepared.*

In Latin, the **future perfect** is formed by adding the tense sign **–eri–** to the perfect stem, together with the personal endings used throughout the present system. It is equivalent in form to the various forms of the future tense of **sum** (with the exception of **–erint** in the third plural) added to the perfect stem of the given verb:

parā′**verō**,[1] *I shall have prepared*	parāve′**rimus**, *we shall have prepared*
parā′**veris**, *you will have prepared*	parāve′**ritis**, *you will have prepared*
parā′**verit**, *he, she, it will have prepared*	parā′**verint**, *they will have prepared*
Similarly **habuerō, posuerō, cēperō, mūnīverō.** (For full conjugation see **656, 657, 659, 658.**)	

Note. — The three tenses, perfect, past perfect, and future perfect, which are based upon the perfect stem, form the **perfect system.**

249. Drill. — Conjugate the following in the perfect system active: **videō, –ēre, vīdī; cēdō, –ere, cessī; efficiō, –ere, effēcī; moveō, –ēre, mōvī; incipiō, –ere, incēpī.**

[1] **–i–** disappears before final **ō** (**23**, *a*).

250. Exercises

Oral. 1. Inimīcōs nostrōs amāre dēbēmus. 2. Parvī puerī linguam retinēre dēbent. 3. Magister puerōs dīmīsit, quod fōrmās verbōrum nōn nōverant. 4. Nostrī castra movēre et proelium committere parāverint. 5. Integrae cōpiae nostrae bellum gerere incēpērunt et prō populīs līberīs pugnāvērunt. 6. Marius prō portīs castrōrum cōpiās prōdūxerat. 7. Virī ē castrīs vēnerant et ad oppidum barbarōrum tardē prōcēdēbant.

Written. 1. The slave deserved a large reward, because he had saved the life of our friend's son. 2. Marius had fought in Gaul for (his) native land. 3. We shall have seen strange lands, towns, and peoples. 4. We shall have sent the messenger to the province.

251. Latin and English Word Formation

We have seen that prefixes are so called because they are attached to the beginnings of words (**111**). Particles which are attached to the ends of words are called **suffixes** (**sub,** *under, after;* **fīxus,** *attached*). Like the Latin prefixes, the Latin suffixes play a very important part in the formation of English words.

The suffix **–ia** usually has the form **–y** in English. Give the English forms of the following words found in the preceding vocabularies: **memoria, glōria, familia, iniūria.**

What must be the Latin words from which are derived *colony, luxury, perfidy?*

Some **–ia** nouns drop the **–ia** entirely in English (**159**): *concord, vigil, matter* (from **māteria**).

252. Aenēās et Latīnus

Aenēās ad Italiam nunc vēnerat. Fīnitimam terram ubi Trōiānī castra posuerant bonus Latīnus regēbat. Lāvīnia, fīlia Latīnī, ā Turnō amābātur, sed deī verbīs signīsque mātrimōnium nōn probāverant.

"Vir veniet quī[1] Lāvīniam in mātrimōnium dūcet. Populus novus terram Latīnī reget." Haec[2] fuērunt verba deōrum, et Latīnus audīvit.

Aenēās nūntiōs ad portās oppidī Latīnī dīmīsit, quī dīxērunt:

"Properāmus concordiam amīcitiamque efficere. Bellum nōn gerēmus in populum Latīnī."

Latīnus respondit:

"Sī Aenēās nōn erit inimīcus, tum nostra amīcitia erit perpetua."

Tum Latīnus nūntiōs cum equīs integrīs et dōnīs commodīs ad castra Trōiāna dīmīsit. Trōiānī amīcitiam concordiamque effēcerant — Aenēās et Latīnus nunc erant amīcī sociīque.

Read Gayley, pp. 362–367; Guerber, pp. 373–377.

FIG. 76. CUPIDS FISHING
From an ancient wall painting.

[1] *who.* [2] *these.*

LESSON XXXVI

PERSONAL PRONOUNS. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

253. Vocabulary

benefi′cium, benefi′cī, n., *kindness* [*faciō*]
cu′piō, cu′pere, cupī′vī, *desire* (cupidity)
du′bitō, dubitā′re, dubitā′vī, *hesitate, doubt* (indubitable)
gla′dius, gla′dī, m., *sword* (gladiator)
is, *he, it*[1]; **ea,** *she, it*[1]
mi′ser, mi′sera, mi′serum, *wretched* (misery)
si′ne, with abl., *without*
ves′ter, ves′tra, ves′trum, *your* (referring to two or more persons)

254. How Personal Pronouns Are Used

In English, personal pronouns are used to indicate the person of the verb: *I* am, *you* are. In Latin, as we have seen (**23**), personal endings perform this function. When, however, emphasis or sharp contrast in subjects is desired, the Latin employs the personal pronouns **ego** (*I*) and **tū** (*you*). **Is** and **ea** serve as the personal pronoun of the third person (*he* and *she*). The full declension of these will be given later. Memorize the declensions of **ego** and **tū**:[2]

Fig. 77. A Sleepy Child

[1] The word *it* is used to translate **is** and **ea** when the noun referred to is masculine or feminine in Latin but neuter in English (**8**).

[2] When the preposition **cum** is used with the ablative forms of **ego** and **tū**, it is attached to them: **mēcum,** *with me;* **nōbīscum,** *with us.*

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	**e′go,** *I*	**nōs,** *we*
Gen.	**me′ī,** *of me*	**nos′trum,** *of us*
Dat.	**mi′hi,** *to (for) me*	**nō′bīs,** *to (for) us*
Acc.	**mē,** *me*	**nōs,** *us*
Abl.	**mē,** *with (from,* etc.) *me*	**nō′bīs,** *with (from,* etc.) *us*

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	**tū,** *you*	**vōs,** *you*
Gen.	**tu′ī,** *of you*	**ves′trum,** *of you*
Dat.	**ti′bi,** *to (for) you*	**vō′bīs,** *to (for) you*
Acc.	**tē,** *you*	**vōs,** *you*
Abl.	**tē,** *with (from,* etc.) *you*	**vō′bīs,** *with (from,* etc.) *you*

255. Possessive Adjectives

From the base of **ego** (**me–**), **nōs** (**nostr–**), **tū** (**tu–**), and **vōs** (**vestr–**), the possessive adjectives **meus, noster, tuus,** and **vester** are derived.

The possessive adjectives follow the noun except when emphatic.

Caution. — Never use the genitives **meī, tuī, nostrum,** and **vestrum** to show possession; use the corresponding possessive adjectives **meus, tuus, noster,** and **vester.**

Query. — What is the difference between **tuus** and **vester?**

256. Personal Pronoun Test

First copy these sentences. Then translate the underscored English words into the proper Latin forms.

1. She is my friend; he, my enemy.
2. I shall give you a book.
3. She showed us beautiful flowers.

4. I criticize you; you criticize me.

5. We'll treat you (*plur.*) if you'll treat us.

6. I will show you (*sing.*) the house.

7. He came to us and showed us many pictures which he had taken.

8. Come with us and we will go with you (*plur.*).

9. He was mentioned by me, but she told me nothing.

10. Your daughter was seen by us with you (*sing.*) on the street.

257. Exercises

Oral. 1. Ego sum amīcus tuus, is est inimīcus. 2. Cupitisne vidēre nōs, amīcōs vestrōs? 3. Retinuī gladium meum et cōpiās integrās ad portam oppidī prōdūxī. 4. Fīlius meus in perīculum mēcum properāre nōn dubitāverat. 5. Ego sum miser sine tē, tū misera es quod tēcum nōn maneō. 6. Multa beneficia ā tē, amīce, accēpī.

Written. 1. We are Americans; you are foreigners. 2. Come (*plur.*) with us; we are your friends, not your enemies. 3. I desire to present the sword to you (*sing.*). 4. I was wretched without you but hesitated to flee with you.

258. Latin Phrases in English

inter nōs, *between us.*

Et tū, Brūte, *You too, Brutus!* (said by Caesar on receiving the deathblow from his friend, Brutus).

Tē Deum, *Thee, God* (*we praise*); the name of a hymn.

Pāx vōbīscum, *Peace* (*be*) *with you!*

FIG. 78. "INVĒNĪ PILAM TUAM, LŪCĪ!"

259. Lūcius Pilam Āmittit

Lūcius. Mārce, venī ad nōs.

Mārcus. Mēne vocās, Lūcī?

Lūcius. Tē vocō. Pilam[1] meam novam āmīsī. Fortūna est misera! Dā[2] nōbīs auxilium. Sī et nōs et tū pilam quaerēmus, nōs eam[3] inveniēmus. Sed sine auxiliō tuō numquam[4] ea ā nōbīs inveniētur.

Mārcus. Ubi pilam āmīsistī? Quid faciēbās?

Lūcius. In herbā āmīsī. Ego et Cornēlius lūdēbāmus.

Mārcus. Invēnī pilam tuam, Lūcī! Cape.

Lūcius. Magnam grātiam tibi prō beneficiō tuō habeō, Mārce. Nunc lūde nōbīscum. Tē vincam!

Mārcus. Grātiās agō. Vōbīscum lūdere cupiō. Sed mē nōn vincēs.

---

[1] *ball.* [2] *give.* [3] *it.* [4] *never.*

LESSON XXXVII

PAST PERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE OF *SUM*. INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

260. Vocabulary

discē'dō, discē'dere, disces'sī, *go away, depart* [*cēdō*]
e'tiam, adv., *also, even*
iu'beō, iubē're, ius'sī, *order, command*
lī'berī, –ō'rum, m., *children* [*līber*]
red'igō, redi'gere, redē'gī, *drive* or *bring back, reduce* [*agō*]
remo'veō, removē're, remō'vī, *move back, remove, withdraw* [*moveō*]

261. Past Perfect and Future Perfect of *Sum*

Past Perfect	Future Perfect
fu'eram, *I had been*	fu'erō, *I shall have been*
fu'erās, *you had been*	fu'eris, *you will have been*
fu'erat, *he had been*	fu'erit, *he will have been*
fuerā'mus, *we had been*	fue'rimus, *we shall have been*
fuerā'tis, *you had been*	fue'ritis, *you will have been*
fu'erant, *they had been*	fu'erint, *they will have been*

262. Infinitive Object as in English (*Study* 630.)

Virōs discēdere iussī, *I ordered the men to go away.*

Observe that (*a*) in English such verbs as *order, teach* (also *wish, forbid,* etc.) take an infinitive as *object,* often with a noun or pronoun in the accusative, which may be regarded as its *subject;* (*b*) in Latin certain verbs of similar meaning take the infinitive with subject accusative.

263. Rule. — *The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative.*

264. Exercises

Oral. 1. Līberōs nostrōs semper retinēre bonōs librōs docēmus. 2. Nōnne bonum est inimīcōs in amīcitiam et concordiam redigere? 3. Magister puerōs puellāsque etiam inimīcōs amāre docēbat. 4. Captīvī ex oppidō equōs remōverant et ad fīnitima castra sine armīs prōcesserant. 5. Fīnitimī nostrī nōs dīmittere cōpiās et etiam discēdere ex īnsulā iussērunt. 6. Cum sociīs nostrīs fuerat et prō patriā nostrā et prō nōbīs in Galliā pugnāverat. 7. Novum erat vidēre magnum numerum captīvōrum in viīs lātīs oppidī.

Written. 1. I had been; we shall have been; they had been; you will have been. 2. It was good to see our forces near the gates of the town. 3. They had hesitated to remove the grain to the camp without wagons. 4. The children of farmers are beginning to go away from the farms (**ager**). 5. Lucius, order the boy to lead out fresh horses to the gate. 6. We desire to carry the timber by wagon to the town.

265. Latin and English Word Formation

The Latin suffix **–ia** usually has the form **–y** in English, as we have seen (**251**). When it is preceded by **–t–**, the combination **–tia** as a general rule has the form **–ce** in English.

Give the English forms of the following words found in the preceding vocabularies: **grātia, sententia.**

What must be the Latin words from which are derived *science, diligence, prudence?*

Latin Verb Forms in English

Present: *deficit.*
Perfect: *affidavit, vici.*

266. Fabius et Līvius

Bellō[1] Pūnicō T.[2] Līvius Tarentum, oppidum Italiae, āmīsit et ad arcem[3] oppidī fūgit. Q.[4] Fabius Maximus magnā vigilantiā et magnō cōnsiliō oppidum recēpit. Tum ad arcem properāvit. Ibi Līvius superbus Fabiō dīxit[5]: "Meā operā Tarentum recēpistī." Fabius respondit: "Certē,[6] Līvī, nam ego recēpī oppidum quod[7] tū āmīsistī."

FIG. 79. WATCHING THE BULLETIN BOARD

The Romans had no newspapers like ours and depended on bulletin boards for reports of battles and other news. (From "Julius Caesar.")

---

[1] Ablative: *in.* [2] T. = Titus. [3] Accusative of arx. [4] Q. = Quīntus.
[5] From dīcō, dictus; derivative? [6] Adverb. [7] *which.*

LESSON XXXVIII

PERFECT AND PAST PERFECT PASSIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

267. Vocabulary

ēgre′gius, –a, –um, *distinguished, excellent* (egregious)
exem′plum, –ī, n., *sample, example* (exemplary)
per, prep. with acc., *through*
prōpō′nō, prōpō′nere, prōpo′suī, prōpo′situs, *set forth, present* [***pōnō***]
rema′neō, remanē′re, remān′sī, remānsū′rus,[1] *remain behind, remain* [***maneō***]
sub, prep., *under, close to;* with acc. after verbs of motion; with abl. after verbs of rest

268. Latin and English Word Formation

The preposition **sub,** used as a prefix in Latin and English, means *under, up from under:* **sus-tineō,** *to hold **up;*** **succēdō,** *to come **up.*** It is regularly assimilated before certain consonants: *sup-port, suc-ceed, sug-gest, sus-ceptible, suf-fer, sur-rogate, sus-tenance, sus-pend,* but *sub-mit, sub-trahend.* We use it freely in English to form new words: *sub-let, sub-lease.*

Per usually remains unchanged when used as a prefix.

269. Perfect Participle

The **perfect participle** in Latin is passive and is declined like **magnus, –a, –um.** It agrees, like an ordinary adjective, with a noun or pronoun in gender, number, and case. The perfect participle of each new verb

[1] A few verbs lack the perfect participle; some of these have the future active participle in **–ūrus,** which appears as the fourth principal part.

will hereafter be given in the vocabularies as the fourth part. In the first conjugation it is regularly formed by adding **–tus** to the present stem: **parā–tus.**

270. Perfect System Passive

In English, all the passive tenses are compound, consisting of two or more parts.

In Latin, the tenses of the present and perfect systems thus far studied have been single or **simple** in form. The three perfect tenses in the passive, however, are **compound,** *i.e.* they are formed by combining the perfect participle of the given verb in turn with the present, imperfect, and future tenses of **sum** to form the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses respectively.

271. Perfect Indicative Passive

In English, the present perfect passive is formed by using the perfect tense of *to be* (i.e. *have been*) as an auxiliary with the past participle.

In Latin, the perfect passive is formed by using the *present* tense of **sum** as an auxiliary with the perfect participle.

parā′tus (**–a, –um**)	**sum,** *I was, have been prepared* **es,** *you were, have been prepared* **est,** *he was, has been prepared*	parā′tī (**–ae, –a**)	**su′mus,** *we were, have been prepared* **es′tis,** *you were, have been prepared* **sunt,** *they were, have been prepared*

Similarly **habitus sum, positus sum, captus sum, mūnītus sum.**
(For full conjugation see **656–659.**)

272. Past Perfect Indicative Passive

In English, the past perfect passive is formed by using the past perfect tense of *to be* (i.e. *had been*) as an auxiliary with the past participle.

In Latin, the past perfect passive is formed by using the *imperfect* tense of **sum** (*i.e.* **eram**) as an auxiliary with the perfect participle (cf. the formation of the corresponding active tense by adding the imperfect tense of **sum** to the perfect stem: **parāv-eram**):

parā'tus (**–a, –um**)	**e'ram,** *I had been prepared* **e'rās,** *you had been prepared* **e'rat,** *he had been prepared*	parā'tī (**–ae, –a**)	**erā'mus,** *we had been prepared* **erā'tis,** *you had been prepared* **e'rant,** *they had been prepared*

Similarly **habitus eram, positus eram, captus eram, mūnītus eram.**

(For full conjugation see **656–659.**)

273. Drill. — Conjugate the following in the perfect and past perfect passive:

trahō, –ere, trāxī, trāctus — **moveō, –ēre, mōvī, mōtus**
videō, –ēre, vīdī, vīsus — **agō, –ere, ēgī, āctus**

274. Exercises

Oral. 1. Ēgregium exemplum beneficī ā magistrō vestrō prōpositum est. 2. Arma carrīs ad castra portāta erant. 3. Equī ab agricolā per silvam ad aquam āctī erant. 4. Puellae magnīs undīs terrentur sed iniūriam nōn accipient. 5. Ēgregiumne exemplum amī-

citiae memoriā tenētis? 6. Sub aquā remanēre nōn grātum est. 7. Vir ā puerō sub aquam trāctus erat, sed et vir et puer servātī[1] sunt

Written. 1. They have been seen; I had been dragged; you had been moved; he had been; they will have been. 2. The rest of the books had been removed by the boy's teacher. 3. The farmer's son had seen few towns, but he knew much about horses and fields and woods. 4. In Gaul my son had fought for you in many battles.

FIG. 80. JULIA
Daughter of the emperor Titus.

275. Aenēās et Turnus

Trōia ā Graecīs capta erat et Aenēās cum paucīs Trōiānīs ad Italiam vēnerat. Sed Iūnō inimīca remānsit et multōs barbarōs populōs Italiae contrā Aenēam miserum incitāvit. Ā Turnō Lāvīnia, fīlia rēgis[2] Latīnī, amābātur sed Aenēae[3] dōnāta erat. Turnus īrā magnā afficiēbātur et bellum gerere properāvit. Sed Fāta causam Trōiānōrum probāverant. Aenēās auxilium ā Graecīs quī in Italiā habitābant accēpit, quod

[1] Note that the participle is plural because it refers to both **vir** and **puer.**

[2] Genitive singular of **rēx.** [3] Dative.

erant inimīcī Turnō. Per multōs diēs bellum gerēbant, et multa ēgregia exempla virtūtis[1] in proeliīs clārīs prōposita sunt.

Tandem Turnus sōlus Aenēam ad pugnam ēvocāvit. In locō commodō ad portās oppidī gladiīs pugnāvērunt. Nōn longa fuit pugna, quod Venus, māter Aenēae, fīliō ēgregia arma dōnāverat, quae[2] Vulcānus fēcerat. Fāta iusserant auxilium ad Turnum nōn mittī[3]; itaque Iūnō aberat. Turnus vītam āmīsit, et cōpiae Turnī discessērunt. Colōnia[4] ab Aenēā cōnstitūta est quae[2] 'Lāvīnium" prō Lāvīniā appellāta est.

Read Sabin, pp. 341–342; Gayley, pp. 367–372; Bulfinch, pp. 345–348.

FIG. 81. THE FORGE OF VULCAN
From a painting by Velasquez.

[1] *of courage.* [2] *which.* [3] *to be sent.* [4] Use the English derivative.

LESSON XXXIX

FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE AND PRESENT INFINITIVE PASSIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

276. Vocabulary

ad′sum, ades′se, ad′fuī, adfutū′rus, *be near, be present* [***sum***]
de′us, –ī, m., *god* (deify)
ēdū′cō, ēdū′cere, ēdū′xī, ēduc′tus, *lead out* [***dūcō***]
permit′tō, permit′tere, permī′sī, permis′sus, *let go through, allow, intrust* (with dat.) [***mittō***]
prī′mus, –a, –um, *first* (primary)
susci′piō, susci′pere, suscē′pī, suscep′tus, *take up, undertake* [***capiō***]

FIG. 82. VIA RŌMĀNA IN AFRICĀ

This street is in Timgad, Algeria. Under Roman rule all northern Africa was rich and prosperous.

277. Latin Phrases in English

Deō grātiās, *thanks to God.*

Deī grātiā, *by the grace of God* (seen on Canadian coins).

per annum, *by (through) the year.*

sīc semper tyrannīs, *thus always to tyrants* (motto of the state of Virginia).

sub rosā, *under the rose, i.e.* in concealment.

278. Future Perfect Indicative Passive

In English, the future perfect passive is formed by using the future perfect tense of *to be* (i.e. *shall have been*) as an auxiliary with the past participle.

In Latin, the future perfect passive is formed by using the *future* tense of **sum** (*i.e.* **erō**) as an auxiliary with the perfect participle (cf. the formation of the corresponding active tense by adding the future of **sum** to the perfect stem: **parāv–erō**):

parā'tus (**–a, –um**)	**e'rō,** *I shall have been prepared*	parā'tī (**–ae, –a**)	**e'rimus,** *we shall have been prepared*
	e'ris, *you will have been prepared*		**e'ritis,** *you will have been prepared*
	e'rit, *he will have been prepared*		**e'runt,** *they will have been prepared*

Similarly **habitus erō, positus erō, captus erō, mūnītus erō.**
(For the full conjugation see **656–659.**)

279. Drill. — Conjugate the following in the perfect system passive: **āmittō, –ere, āmīsī, āmissus; ēdūcō, –ere, ēdūxī, ēductus; suscipiō, –ere, suscēpī, susceptus.**

280. Present Infinitive Passive

In English, the present infinitive passive is formed by using the auxiliary *to be* with the past participle.

In Latin, the present infinitive passive is formed by changing the active infinitive ending **–re** to **–rī**:

Active: parā′**re**, *to prepare;* habē′**re**; mūnī′**re**
Passive: parā′**rī**, *to be prepared;* habē′**rī**; mūnī′**rī**

Note. — In the third conjugation, final **–ĕre** is changed to **–ī**:
Active: pō′**nere**, *to place;* ca′**pere**
Passive: pō′**nī**, *to be placed;* ca′**pī**

281. Drill. — Form the present passive infinitive of **videō, agō, trahō, suscipiō,** and **moveō.**

282. Exercises

Oral. 1. Causam populī suscipere est officium bonōrum. 2. Vītam meam et fortūnās tibi permittere nōn dubitāvī. 3. Equī ex oppidō per agrōs lātōs ēductī erunt. 4. Pecūnia merērī et servārī ā puerīs puellīsque dēbet. 5. Deō grātiam habēre et ego et tū dēbēmus, quod vītam nostram regit. 6. Puerī adfuērunt prīmī, quod puellae tardae fuērunt. 7. Verbīs bonōrum virōrum semper incitārī et regī dēbēmus.

Written. 1. God teaches us to love our enemies. 2. The troops will have been ordered to advance and seize the town. 3. Where are the boys? They are absent, but the girls are present. 4. We have ordered the boys to be dismissed. 5. The boys ought to be called together and praised by the teacher.

283. Niobē

Niobē, rēgīna superba, in Graeciā habitābat. Avus erat Iuppiter, quī deōs virōsque regēbat, et hoc[1] superbiam rēgīnae augēbat. Niobē erat etiam superba quod septem fīliōs et septem fīliās habēbat.

Apollō deus erat fīlius Lātōnae, et Diāna erat fīlia. Aliōs līberōs Lātōna nōn habēbat.

Sacra[2] Lātōnae ā populō parābantur. Superba Niobē adfuit et rogāvit:

"Cūr sacra mātrī[3] duōrum līberōrum parātis? Etiam Niobē dea est; XIV, nōn duōs, līberōs habet. Lātōna glōriam nōn meret — Niobē esse prīma dēbet."

Fig. 83. Niobē

Superba verba rēginae Lātōna audīvit. Fīlium vocāvit et eum[4] septem fīliōs Niobae interficere iussit. Niobē septem fīliōs nunc āmīserat, tamen remānsit superba. Itaque Lātōna iussit etiam fīliās septem ā Diānā interficī. Singulae fīliae ē vītā discessērunt, et Niobē misera in saxum dūrum mūtāta est. Poenā magnā et aequā affecta erat.

Read Sabin, pp. 13–15; Gayley, pp. 99–103; Bulfinch, pp. 134–139; Guerber, pp. 93–96.

---

[1] *this.* [2] *sacred rites.* [3] *for the mother.* [4] *him* (subject of **interficere**).

FOURTH REVIEW (LESSONS XXXI–XXXIX)

284. Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. annus
2. beneficium
3. deus
4. exemplum
5. fīlius
6. gladius
7. liber
8. lībertī
9. perīculum
10. porta
11. praesidium
12. proelium

Adjectives

13. ēgregius
14. fīnitimus
15. inimīcus
16. integer
17. miser
18. paucī
19. prīmus
20. reliquus
21. vester

Pronouns

22. ego
23. tū
24. is, ea

Verbs

25. absum
26. adsum
27. āmittō
28. appellō
29. committō
30. comparō
31. cupiō
32. dīmittō
33. discēdō
34. dubitō
35. ēdūcō
36. iubeō
37. nōscō
38. permittō
39. prōcēdō
40. prōdūcō
41. properō
42. prōpōnō
43. redigō
44. remaneō
45. removeō
46. retineō
47. sum
48. suscipiō

Adverb

49. etiam

Prepositions

50. per
51. prō
52. sine
53. sub

Conjunctions

54. aut
55. aut . . . aut
56. et . . . et
57. neque
58. neque . . . neque
59. -que

285. Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. *year*
2. *kindness*
3. *god*
4. *example*
5. *son*
6. *sword*
7. *book*
8. *children*
9. *danger*
10. *gate*
11. *garrison*
12. *battle*

Adjectives

13. *distinguished*
14. *neighboring*
15. *unfriendly*
16. *untouched, whole*
17. *wretched*
18. *few*
19. *first*
20. *remaining*
21. *your*

Pronouns

22. *I*
23. *you*
24. *he, she*

Verbs

25. *be away*
26. *be present*
27. *lose*
28. *call, name*
29. *join together, intrust*
30. *get ready*
31. *desire*
32. *send away*
33. *depart*
34. *hesitate*
35. *lead out*
36. *order*
37. *learn*
38. *intrust*
39. *go forth*
40. *lead forth*
41. *hasten*
42. *set forth*
43. *reduce*
44. *remain*
45. *remove*
46. *hold back*
47. *be*
48. *undertake*

Adverb

49. *also*

Prepositions

50. *through*
51. *for*
52. *without*
53. *under*

Conjunctions

54. *or*
55. *either . . . or*
56. *both . . . and*
57. *nor*
58. *neither . . . nor*
59. *and*

286. Rapid-Fire Drills. — (*a*) *Give tense, person, and number, and translate:*

Appellantur, permitte, redūcēminī, āmīsērunt, nōvī, erant, remanē, āfuērunt, retinuit, dīmīserāmus, dis-

cēdite, iusserō, prōcesserant, discessistī, prōdūxeram, removēte, redēgērunt, prōpositum est, remānsit, properā, fuerō.

(*b*) *Give in Latin:*

1. It was committed; you have been away; we have hastened. 2. I have prepared; he had been; to remove. 3. To dismiss; to be presented; to be called; he had had.

(*c*) *Give in Latin:*

To me; we; us; with you (*sing.*); of us; to you (*plur.*); of me; for us; with us; to you (*sing.*); you (*dir. obj. sing.*); you (*subject plur.*).

287. Decline (*a*) **proelium integrum,** (*b*) **agricola bonus,** (*c*) **fīlius meus,** (*d*) **liber parvus,** (*e*) **perīculum magnum.**

288. Synopses[1]**:** (Six tenses)

(*a*) 1. Give **iubeō** in the 1st sing., indic. act.
2. Give **prōpōnō** in the 2nd sing., indic. pass.
3. Give **prōdūcō** in the 3rd sing., indic. act.
4. Give **līberō** in the 2nd plur., indic. pass.

(*b*) Give **sum** in the 1st sing.; **absum** in the 3rd sing.; **adsum** in the 2nd plur.

289. A Color Scheme for Learning Verb Forms

It has been seen that a Latin verb need never be blindly memorized, for it is conjugated regularly throughout by combining certain stems with tense signs and personal endings in a logical way, as may be shown by the following color scheme:

Use white chalk for the present stem and yellow for the perfect stem; light red for all tense signs, light green for personal endings. For the compound tenses of the perfect system passive, use blue for the past participle and white for the three tenses of **sum.**

[1] For definition of synopsis see **632.**

290. Word Study

Find and use in sentences as many English derivatives as possible from **servō, moveō, dūcō, capiō.** For example: from **servō** is derived *conservation,* used as follows: *The* **conservation** *of our forests is a necessity.*

Enter the derivatives in your notebook, using a separate page for each Latin word.

Fig. 84. In a Roman Bakery

Loaves of bread just like these were found, thoroughly charred, in Pompeii.

LESSON XL

WORD SENSE. THE STORY OF LUCIUS

291. Hints for Developing "Word Sense"

No word in any language, except a few prepositions, etc., has the same meaning at all times. While words, as a rule, have one general meaning, they may have several *shades of meaning*, which depend entirely upon their context or surroundings. You have doubtless seen the chameleon, a lizardlike creature which, for protection, changes its color to suit that of the leaf or limb upon which it rests. This we call "imitative coloring." Words, like chameleons, take on a local color. In translating a Latin word, therefore, it is necessary to derive its exact meaning (as opposed to its general or "vocabulary" meaning) from its context or setting; for example,

AGERE

equōs	praedam	multum	grātiās	causam	cum virō
drive	*carry off*	*do*	*give*	*plead*	*deal*
horses	booty	much	thanks	a case	with a man

The above are only a few of the meanings of **agō.** From now on, do not confine yourself to the meanings given to words in the vocabulary, but select the one best suited to the context. In this way you will learn to express yourself in good English.

292. How to Study a Connected Passage

Do not turn to the vocabulary at the end of the book for a word you do not know. Read an entire paragraph before you look up a word. There are three ways to find the meaning of a word *without looking it up:*

1. *English derivatives* (nearly every Latin word has at least one English derivative).

2. *Related Latin words* (if you know the meaning of **re–** and **dūcō,** you know the meaning of **redūcō**).

3. *Sensible guessing.*

Use the vocabulary merely to verify results. In this way you will save time and gain a better command of Latin.

293. THE STORY OF LUCIUS (*Cont.*)

Lūdus

FIG. 85. PUER RŌMĀNUS

Lūciumne in memoriā habētis? Lūcius reliquīque puerī Rōmānī ā magistrō in Forum Rōmānum ductī erant. Nunc iterum dē Lūciō audiētis, quod bonī puerī puellaeque fuistis. Dē lūdō Lūcī nunc agēmus. Lūdus est locus ubi magister puerōs puellāsque docet. Prīmus lūdus vocābātur "lūdus litterārum." In Lūcī lūdō puellae nōn erant, et paucī puerī. Nōn erat pūblicus lūdus, sed tamen pretium disciplīnae erat parvum. Puerī pecūniam et praemia

ad magistrum portābant. Servī puerōs ad lūdum ante aurōram dūcēbant et lanternam librōsque portābant. Nōnne dūrum erat puerum Rōmānum esse? Servī in lūdō manēbant et puerōs ad familiās redūcēbant.

Fig. 86. Sleepyhead

Perhaps a schoolboy on his way to school with his lantern.

What Roman Boys Studied

Etiam magister servus erat. Litterās et verba et numerōs docēbat. Lingua lūdī erat Latīna, quod puerī Rōmānī erant. Numerōs Lūcius nōn amābat. Magister puerīs fōrmās litterārum mōnstrābat. Tum digitōs puerōrum tenēbat, et litterās faciēbant. Sententiae[1] puerīs ā magistrō mōnstrābantur. Exemplum sententiae est: "Ibi semper est victōria ubi concordia est." Sententiās semper amābat Lūcius et in memoriā tenēbat. Dīligentiā et studiō praemia merēbat.

Bad Luck

Tardī discipulī poenā afficiēbantur, sed Lūcius semper prīmus veniēbat, quod ad lūdum properābat neque in viīs remanēbat. Sed mala fortūna vēnit. Pecūnia

[1] *mottoes.*

ā Lūciō ad magistrum portābātur et in viā āmissa est. Tardus fuit. Magister puerōs appellāverat, et reliquī puerī responderant, "Adsum!" Tum magister Lūcium appellāvit. Puerī respondērunt, "Abest!" Tum vēnit Lūcius sine pecūniā et magister puerīque dē pecūniā audīvērunt. Magister dūrus Lūcium miserum ā puerīs sublevārī iussit et poenā eum[1] affēcit, quod pecūniam āmīserat et tardus fuerat.

FIG. 87. LŪCIUS IN LŪDŌ POENĀ AFFICITUR

FOUND!

Magister discipulōs dīmīsit et singulī excessērunt. Lūcius cum servō discessit et pecūniam in viā invēnit. Ad lūdum properāvit et magistrō pecūniam dōnāvit. Magister bonō puerō grātiās ēgit et librum dōnāvit.

294. Conversation: School

Magister. Discipulōs appellābō. Anna. **Anna.** Adsum.

M. Marīa. **Marīa.** Adsum.

M. Mārcus. **Discipulī.** Abest.

[1] *him.*

M. Ubi est Mārcus? **D.** Ad lūdum nōn vēnit. (Etc.).

M. Grātumne erat esse puerum Rōmānum? **D.** Nōn grātum erat esse puerum Rōmānum, quod puerī Rōmānī ante aurōram in lūdum dūcēbantur.

M. Ubi puerī Rōmānī labōrābant? **D.** In lūdō puerī Rōmānī labōrābant.

M. Multīne puerī in lūdō fuērunt? **D.** Paucī puerī in lūdō fuērunt.

Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Ubi nunc estis? 2. Estne grātum in lūdō esse? 3. Pecūniamne tuam āmīsistī? 4. Ubi librum tuum Latīnum āmīsistī? 5. Tardusne in lūdum vēnistī? 6. Semperne tardus in lūdum veniēs?

295. GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE

Roman Schools

Even before going to school some Roman children learned the alphabet by playing with letters cut out of ivory, as ours do from their blocks. They started to school at about the same age as our children. The schools were quite different, however. They were very small private schools, usually run by slaves for small fees. Work began early in the morning. The children were taken to and from school by slaves called **paedagōgī,** a Greek word which means those who "lead (take) children." They did no teaching but merely kept their children in order. Our word pedagogue is derived from this word.

In the elementary school, called the **lūdus litterārum,** the three *R*'s formed the basis of the curriculum. For reading they had to depend at first on the Twelve Tables of the law. In the third century B.C. a school teacher translated the *Odyssey* from Greek for the use of his pupils. Later other works of literature were used.

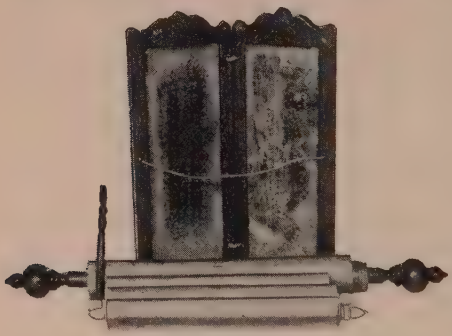


FIG. 88. WAX TABLET AND PAPYRUS ROLLS

Wax tablets, used for letters, accounts, etc., were of wood, covered with a thin layer of wax on which the letters were scratched with a bone or metal stylus. The rolls were used for books. Ink was used on them. (Photographed from models.)

Writing was practiced on wax tablets, which were something like slates, except that the writing surface was a thin layer of wax on a wooden board. The writing was done by scratching the wax with a pointed stylus made of metal or bone. The other end of this was flat for erasing, or rather smoothing over the wax. They also wrote with pen and ink on papyrus, a kind of paper made out of thin strips of a reed which grew in Egypt. Most books were made out of rolls of this material. But it was expensive, and school children used only the backs of old books and loose sheets for their "scratch paper."

Arithmetic was complicated by the fact that the Romans did not have the Arabic system of numerals with its zero. Multiplication and division were impos-

sible. The Romans had two helps in their arithmetic: an elaborate system of finger counting and the abacus, or counting board, similar to those used as toys by children to-day and those which you may see in Chinese laundries.

More advanced education prepared boys for the one respected profession in ancient Rome, that of law and public life. Hence the secondary school, called the **schola grammaticī** (*school of the grammarian*), specialized in language, composition, rhetoric, and public speaking. But the course was also a broadly cultural one and included literature, both Greek and Latin. Most educated Romans learned to speak and write Greek fluently.

The college course in the **schola rhētoricī** (*school of the rhetorician*) was still more technical in preparation for a career in which public speaking, whether in a law court or a legislative body, played a very important rôle. For graduate work students could go to such university centers as Athens or Rhodes and listen to lectures by leading philosophers and rhetoricians.

Read Davis, pp. 191–204; McDaniel, pp. 70–76; Johnston, pp. 75–85; Preston and Dodge, pp. 58–66.

Fig. 89. Magister et Puerī

A bowl in the Metropolitan Museum, New York.

LESSON XLI

FIRST CONJUGATION: REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS

296. Vocabulary

dīligen′tia, –ae, f., *carefulness, diligence* (diligent)
dō,[1] **da′re, de′dī, da′tus,** *give* (dative)
in′ter, prep. with acc., *between, among*
ob, prep. with acc., *toward, on account of, for*
perti′neō, pertinē′re, –tī′nuī, –ten′tus, with **ad,** *extend to, pertain to* [*teneō*]
submit′tō, submit′tere, –mī′sī, –mis′sus, (*send from under*), *dispatch* [*mittō*]

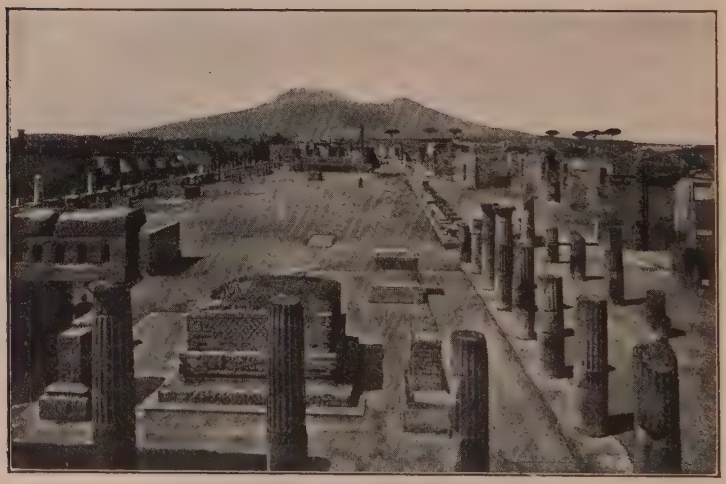


FIG. 90. THE FORUM OF POMPEII

Mt. Vesuvius is in the distance.

[1] **Dō** is irregular in three parts — perfect **dedī,** and **ă** in **dare** and **datus.** The **a** is short in all indicative forms except the present tense, second person singular.

297. Latin and English Word Formation

As a prefix in Latin and English, **inter-** has its usual meanings. It is rarely assimilated. It is used rather freely in English to form new words: *inter-class, inter-state, inter-scholastic,* etc.

As a prefix **ob**– has the meaning *towards* or *against.* It is regularly assimilated before certain consonants: *oc-cur, of-ficial, o-mission, op-ponent;* but *ob-tain, ob-serve, ob-durate, ob-vious.*

298. Principal Parts

(*a*) In English, every verb has three parts which, from their importance in forming the tenses, are called **principal parts.** Verbs that form the past tense by adding **–ed** to the present are said to be *regular,* while those which form the past tense in other ways — chiefly by changing the root vowel of the present — are said to be *irregular.* Note the following examples:

	Present	Past	Past Participle
Regular:	call	called	called
Irregular:	be	was	been
	see	saw	seen
	dō	did	done
	sing	sang	sung

Query. — Can you give the principal parts of *drink, write, go, come, run, give, sit, set, lie, lay?*

(*b*) In Latin, every verb regularly has four principal parts. They will hereafter be printed in the vocabularies and should be memorized. The principal parts of the model verbs of the four conjugations and of **sum** are as follows:

Conjugation	Pres. Indic.	Pres. Infin.	Perf. Indic.	Perf. Part.
I	**parō**	**parāre**	**parāvī**	**parātus**
II	**habeō**	**habēre**	**habuī**	**habitus**
III	(*a*) **pōnō**	**pōnere**	**posuī**	**positus**
	(*b*) **capiō**	**capere**	**cēpī**	**captus**
IV	**mūniō**	**mūnīre**	**mūnīvī**	**mūnītus**
Irregular Verbs	**sum**	**esse**	**fuī**	**futūrus**[1]
	absum	**abesse**	**āfuī**	**āfutūrus**

299. Tense Stems

Every Latin verb has approximately *one hundred and fifty forms*, all of which are built upon **three stems,** obtained from the principal parts as follows:

1. To find the **present stem,** drop **–re** from the present infinitive active: **parā–**, etc.

2. To find the **perfect stem,** drop **–ī** from the perfect indicative active: **parāv–**, etc.

3. To find the **participial stem,** drop **–us** from the perfect participle: **parāt–**, etc.

Query. — What tenses are formed (*a*) upon the present stem, (*b*) upon the perfect stem, (*c*) with the perfect participle?

300. First Conjugation: Review of Principal Parts

Verbs of the first conjugation generally form the perfect stem by adding **–v** to the present stem (**235, Note**) and form the perfect participle by adding **–tus** to the present stem (**269**). Review the meanings of the following verbs, whose principal parts are perfectly regular:

[1] See **267,** footnote 1.

accūsō, amō, appellō, convocō, dōnō, dubitō, ēvocō, exspectō, habitō, incitō, labōrō, laudō, līberō, mandō, mātūrō, migrō, mōnstrō, nāvigō, nūntiō, occupō, portō, probō, pugnō, servō, spectō, vāstō, vocō.

301. Exercises

Oral. 1. Officium pūblicum est puerīs puellīsque disciplīnam dare. 2. Dīligentia puerōrum amīcīs nūntiāta erit. 3. Castra in altō locō erant inter oppidum et silvam. 4. Ob multās causās amīcitia et concordia inter līberōs esse dēbent. 5. America ob amīcitiam auxilium submīsit. 6. Ob magnum perīculum cōpiae nostrae colōnīs arma permīsērunt. 7. Nostrī agrī ad viam, vestrī ad silvam pertinent.

FIG. 91. A STREET CORNER IN POMPEII
Note the fountain and the stepping-stones for use in wet weather.

Written. 1. On account of the war we did not desire to sail to Europe. 2. The fields had been laid waste and the town seized by the slaves. 3. He has been aroused by the messenger's harsh words. 4. We have dispatched a large number of reinforcements to the provinces.

FIG. 92. PUER RŌMĀNUS AD LŪDUM Ā SERVŌ DŪCĒBĀTUR

302. Lūdī Rōmānī et Americānī

Lūdī[1] Rōmānī nostrīs lūdīs similēs[2] nōn erant. In lūdīs Rōmānīs erant nūllae puellae, in nostrīs sunt multae; puerī Rōmānī ad lūdum ā servīs dūcēbantur, nōs sōlī venīmus; magistrī Rōmānī servī erant, nostrī līberī sunt; lingua lūdōrum Rōmānōrum erat Latīna, lingua lūdōrum nostrōrum est Anglica. Dīligentiā et studiō puerī Rōmānī praemia merēbant, nunc puerī Americānī "A" merent. Tardī discipulī Rōmānī poenā afficiēbantur, nunc poena nōn similis est; sed tardī discipulī poenā semper afficiuntur. Ob multās causās vīta discipulōrum nostrōrum grāta est, sed etiam puerī Rōmānī lūdum librōsque amābant.

[1] *schools.* [2] *similar to.*

LESSON XLII

DECLENSION OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN *QUĪ*. AGREEMENT OF THE RELATIVE

303. Vocabulary

cūr, interrog. adv., *why?*
nātū′ra, –ae, f., *nature* (natural)
pul′cher, –chra, –chrum, *beautiful* (pulchritude)
susti′neō, sustinē′re, –ti′nuī, –ten′tus, *hold up, maintain, endure* [***teneō***]

304. Word Study: Intensive Prefixes

Most of the Latin prepositions which are used as prefixes in Latin and English may have intensive force, especially **con–, ex–, ob–, per–**. They are then best translated either by an English intensive, as *up* or *out*, or by an adverb, as *completely, thoroughly, deeply*. Thus **commoveō** means to *move greatly*, **permagnus,** *very great*, **obtineō,** to *hold on to*, **concitō,** to *rouse up*, **excipiō,** to *catch, receive*.

FIG. 93. A BAKERY IN POMPEII

Note the stone mills in which the bakers ground their own flour and the brick oven in which the bread was baked. For the finished product see Fig. 84.

305. The Relative Pronoun *Quī* (*Study* 611, *c.*)

The pronouns *who, which, what,* and *that* in English are called **relative** pronouns because they *relate* or refer to some *foregoing* word, called their **antecedent.**

There is only one relative pronoun in Latin, declined as follows:

quī, *who, which, that*

	Singular			Plural		
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius[1]	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

English Meanings in Singular and Plural

	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	*who, which, that*	*which, that*
Gen.	*of whom, whose, of which*	*of which, whose*
Dat.	*to (for) whom, which*	*to (for) which*
Acc.	*whom, which, that*	*which, that*
Abl.	*by,* etc., *whom, which*	*by,* etc., *which*

306. Relative Pronouns as Used in English

While *that* as a relative can be used to refer to both persons and things, *who* always refers to persons and *which* to things (in other words, *which* is the neuter of *who*). *Which* and *that* do not change form to indicate case, while *who* does:

Nom. *who* Gen. *whose* Dat. and Acc. *whom*

[1] Note that the genitive singular is alike in all genders, likewise the dative singular, and that the accusative singular, masculine and feminine, ends in **–m,** as in English *whom.* As in all pronouns, the nominative singular feminine is like the nominative plural neuter.

307. The Relative Pronoun as Used in Latin

In the following sentences the antecedent and relative are underscored. Give the number and gender of each:

1. (*a*) **Puella abest; puellam accūsō,** *The girl is absent; the girl I accuse.*

(*b*) **Puella quam accūsō abest,** *The girl whom I accuse is absent.*

2. **Oppidum quod vīdit erat parvum,** *The town which he saw was small.*

3. **Castra ex quibus vēnimus erant magna,** *The camp from which we came was large.*

4. **Virum cui librum dedī vīdistī,** *You saw the man to whom I gave the book.*

5. **Puer cuius librum habeō est amīcus noster,** *The boy whose book I have is our friend.*

Observe that the relative and the antecedent are always of the same number and gender but not necessarily in the same case.

308. Rule. — *The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon its use in its own clause.*

Note. — While the relative may be omitted in English, it is never omitted in Latin: *The man (whom) I saw,* **Vir *quem* vīdī.**

309. Drill. — Copy and write in Latin the proper form of the underscored English words:

1. I saw the horses that were on the road.
2. The boy whom I visited is my cousin.
3. Have you seen the girl to whom I gave the books?
4. The man by whom we were robbed has been arrested.

5. Where is the road by which we came?

6. I know the town in which he was born.

7. The land from which our parents came is beautiful.

8. Have you ever seen the islands to which we sailed?

9. All the men to whom we spoke were pleased.

10. All the girls whom I have invited have accepted, but one girl whose mother is sick may not be able to come.

FIG. 94. TEMPLUM RŌMĀNUM

This temple in Rome was used as a church for many centuries. In 1926 it was restored to its original form by the removal of mediaeval walls and decorations. Mussolini was present at the formal opening of the temple.

310. Exercises

Oral. 1. Vir cui pecūniam permīsī erat amīcus meus. 2. Cūr nōn sustinētis fortūnam quam Nātūra vōbīs dedit? 3. America bellum suscipere nōn dubitāvit ob iniūriās quās accēperat. 4. Virī quōrum fīliōs doceō ēgregiī agricolae sunt. 5. Cūr pecūniam puerō nōn dedistī quem in viā vīdistī? 6. Librōs quī ad fāmam et fortūnam pertinent puerī amant. 7. Via quā vēnimus erat pulchra.

Written. 1. The boy whom I saw in the woods is approaching. 2. He endured constant dangers on-account-of (his) enemies. 3. I saw the boy whose book I lost. 4. The war which was waged by our men in Europe had been approved by the people. 5. The men who did not fight maintained the country with money.

311. Templa Deōrum

Silvae erant prīma templa deōrum. Prīmō[1] virī in agrīs habitābant et Nātūram colēbant. Posteā virī quī in oppidīs habitābant aedificia pulchra in altīs locīs ad glōriam deōrum pōnēbant. Templa saepe in altīs locīs posita sunt quod haec[2] loca fīnitima caelō erant, in quō deī habitābant.

"Nātūra est pulchra," hominēs[3] dīxērunt. "Etiam loca sacra ad quae deī veniunt et in quibus verba nostra audiunt esse pulchra dēbent."

Itaque Graecī et Rōmānī ob beneficia deōrum magna et pulchra templa faciēbant quae erant grāta deīs. Statua deī aut deae semper in templō pōnēbātur.

---

[1] *at first.* [2] *these.* [3] *men.*

In Graeciā et Italiā ruīnae[1] templōrum multōrum et pulchrōrum videntur. Templum clārum Athēnae, quod Parthenōn appellātur, ob fōrmam pulchram semper laudātum est. Nōnne vīdistī multās pictūrās[1] templōrum antīquōrum? Pictūrae templōrum et Graecōrum et Rōmānōrum in multīs librīs inveniuntur.

In templīs virī auxilium deōrum petēbant. Virī malī quōrum vīta in perīculō erat saepe ad templa fugiēbant, quod neque ex templīs removēbantur neque ibi poenā afficiēbantur.

Read Harding (*Greek Gods*), pp. 8–9.

FIG. 95. "TEMPLA SAEPE IN ALTĪS LOCĪS POSITA SUNT"

This picturesque little temple is situated on a high hill at Tivoli (ancient Tibur), about eighteen miles east of Rome in the Sabine Hills.

[1] Use the English derivative.

LESSON XLIII

SECOND CONJUGATION: REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS

312. Vocabulary

cōnser′vō, –ā′re, –ā′vī, –ā′tus, *save, preserve* [***servō***]
intermit′tō, intermit′tere, –mī′sī, –mis′sus, (lit., *let go between*), *suspend, stop, cease* [***mittō***]
obti′neō, obtinē′re, –ti′nuī, –ten′tus, *hold, obtain* [***teneō***]
permo′veō, permovē′re, –mō′vī, –mō′tus, *move deeply, induce* [***moveō***]
pe′tō, pe′tere, petī′vī, petī′tus, *seek, ask* (petition)
tum, adv., *then*

313. Interesting English Words

Many English words that seem quite dull and ordinary have very interesting stories locked up within them. The key to these stories is Latin. Use this key and do not lose it. Let us try it now.

The "efficient" person is the one who *accomplishes* (**efficiō**) something — remember this when you hear people talk about "efficiency." A "traction" company is engaged in *drawing* or *hauling* vehicles. What is a "tractor"? What sort of person is a "tractable" person? Politicians should remember that a public "office" is a *duty*. An "office" is also a place where one does his *duty* or *daily work*.

314. Second Conjugation: Review of Principal Parts

The following are verbs already studied, but whose principal parts have not been given in full. Memorize their principal parts and give the three stems of each:

dēbeō	dēbēre	dēbuī	dēbitus
mereō	merēre	meruī	meritus
terreō	terrēre	terruī	territus
valeō	valēre	valuī	valitūrus
teneō	tenēre	tenuī	tentus[1]
contineō	continēre	continuī	contentus
retineō	retinēre	retinuī	retentus
doceō	docēre	docuī	doctus
augeō	augēre	auxī	auctus
maneō	manēre	mānsī	mānsus[1]
iubeō	iubēre	iussī	iussus
moveō	movēre	mōvī	mōtus
removeō	removēre	remōvī	remōtus
videō	vidēre	vīdī	vīsus

Note. — It will be seen that no general rule can be given for forming the perfect and participial stems of verbs of the second conjugation. The most common type, however, is illustrated by **dēbeō**. Note the other types, which are arranged in groups.

315. Ablative of Manner

In English, the manner of an action is expressed by an adverb or a phrase answering the question *How?* When a phrase is used, a preposition, such as *with*, introduces it.

In Latin, manner is similarly expressed:

[1] In this book the perfect participle is given as the fourth principal part even when it is rare or used only in the neuter. This is done for the sake of simplicity and to help in the matter of word formation. In the case of intransitive verbs the perfect participle cannot of course be translated as a passive and should be learned merely as a principal part.

1. **Cum studiō labōrat,** *He labors with eagerness* (*eagerly*).

2. (**Cum**) **magnō studiō labōrat,** *He labors with great eagerness* (*very eagerly*).

Note that when an adjective is used, **cum** may be omitted.

Caution. — Be careful to distinguish this latest use of "with" from the "with" studied in section **190** under **Caution.** Distinguish the three different uses of "with" in these sentences:

(*a*) *I shall go* **with him with the greatest pleasure.**

(*b*) *We can work* **with greater success with this equipment.**

(*c*) **With my auto** *I can cover the distance* **with you with ease.**

316. Exercises

Oral. 1. Magnā cūrā silvās nostrās cōnservābimus. 2. Servus pecūniam petet quae ab agricolā retenta est. 3. Magnā iniūriā tum populus miser regēbātur. 4. Puer quī prīmum locum obtinuerat cum magnā cūrā et studiō labōrāverat. 5. Multī puerī studia ob bellum intermīsērunt. 6. Amīcus noster litterīs neque permōtus neque territus est sed aequō animō ad castra prōcessit. 7. Frūmentō et pecūniā et armīs causam sociōrum nostrōrum līberē sustinuimus.

Written. 1. He has been deeply-moved by my words. 2. The teacher carefully taught the boys to save money. 3. The bad boy very carefully removed the teacher's books. 4. Why do you not seek the friendship of the girls who live on High Street? 5. The slave was unjustly accused but was set free.

317. Colossēum

Lūdōs et pompās populus Rōmānus semper amābat. In Italiā, Āfricā, Galliā inveniuntur theātra et amphitheātra Rōmānōrum, in quibus lūdī etiam nunc habentur. Vīdistīne pictūrās Colossēī Rōmānī?

Captīvī et servī in arēnā pugnāre cōgēbantur. Populus Rōmānus studium lūdōrum numquam intermīsit. Multī captīvī cum magnō animō pugnābant et lībertātem[1] obtinēbant. Multī malī virī etiam prō vītā pugnābant et poenam in arēnā dabant.

Ōlim duo gladiātōrēs[1] in arēnā Rōmānā pugnābant. Tum inter gladiātōrēs vēnit sine gladiō vir bonus aequusque, quī dīxit:[2] "Cūr pugnātis? Nōn dēbētis pugnāre; nam estis amīcī." Gladiātōrēs verbīs nōn permōtī sunt sed virum bonum interfēcērunt.[3] Servī virum ex arēnā trahere incipiēbant. Tum populus īrā magnā incitātus est, quod vir erat Tēlemachus, quī amīcus pauperibus[4] semper fuerat. Numquam posteā gladiātōrēs in Colossēō pugnāvērunt.

Read Davis, pp. 401–406.

FIG. 96. THE INTERIOR OF THE COLOSSEUM AFTER A SNOWFALL

[1] Use the English derivative. [2] *said.* [3] *killed.* [4] *to the poor.*

LESSON XLIV

DECLENSION OF THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN *QUIS*

318. Vocabulary

cō′gō, –ere, coē′gī, coāc′tus, (*drive together*), *collect compel* [***agō***]
mo′dus, –ī, m., *measure, limit, manner* (moderate)
mo′neō, –ē′re, mo′nuī, mo′nitus, *remind, warn* (monitor)
rēg′num, –ī, n., *royal power, kingdom* [***regō***]

319. Latin Phrases in English

Cui bonō? (lit., *to whom for a good?*) *For whose benefit is it? What good is it?*

in absentiā, *in absence.*

in perpetuum, (*to perpetuity*), *forever.*

Īlium fuit, *Ilium has been* (i.e. *no longer exists*), said of Troy (**Īlium**) after its destruction by the Greeks; now applied to anything that is past.

320. Interrogatives (*Study* 611, *b.*)

I. **Pronoun.** — In English, the interrogative pronoun *who* refers only to persons, *what* refers only to things.

In Latin, the interrogative pronoun corresponding to *who* and *what* is **quis, quid,** declined as follows:

	M. and F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**quis,** *who?*	**quid,** *what?*	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Gen.	**cu′ius,** *whose?*	**cu′ius,** *of what?*	**quō′rum**	**quā′rum**	**quō′rum**
Dat.	**cui,** *to whom?*	**cui,** *to what?*	**quī′bus**	**quī′bus**	**quī′bus**
Acc.	**quem,** *whom?*	**quid,** *what?*	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Abl.	**quō,** *by whom?*	**quō,** *by what?*	**quī′bus**	**quī′bus**	**quī′bus**

Note. — The plural is translated like the singular.

II. **Adjective.** — In English, the interrogative pronoun *who* cannot be used as an adjective; we cannot say, *Who man?* But *what* may be used as an adjective, referring to persons or things: *What man? What thing?*

In Latin, the interrogative adjective is **quī, quae, quod,** declined throughout like the relative pronoun (**305**). Compare the interrogative **quis** with the relative **quī** and note differences in the singular.

Note. — In English, *which* can be used as pronoun or adjective, referring to persons or things. It differs in meaning from *who* and *what* in that it implies a limited choice: *Which hat shall I wear? Which do you mean, Mr. Jones or Mr. Smith?* **Quis** and **quī** are used in this sense only when more than two are involved.

321. Drill. — Decline *what ally? what price?*

Lapsūs Linguae ("Slips of the Tongue"). — Have you ever said, *Who did you see?* Why is *who* incorrect? Give the correct form and translate the sentence into Latin.

Fig. 97. The Ancient Tiber at Rome

322. Exercises

Oral. 1. Quī puer verbīs bonī virī nōn permōtus est? 2. Quid amīcī tuī fēcērunt et quod praemium accipient? 3. Quō modō sociī pecūniam coēgērunt? 4. Quod cōnsilium, puellae, ā magistrō vestrō vōbīs datum est? 5. Gallia tum multa rēgna continēbat quae ā populō Rōmānō occupāta erant. 6. Vōs puerī magnā cūrā dē perīculīs monitī erātis. 7. Quod fuit pretium librī quem ab amīcō tuō accēpistī? 8. Cui puerō, cui puellae, Nātūra nōn vītam grātam dedit?

Written. 1. To whom shall we give the money and present the rewards? 2. By what street did you girls come and whom did you seek? 3. In what manner did you obtain the money which you have? 4. Whose words were, "My kingdom for (**prō**) a horse!"? 5. How (in what manner) did you obtain your books?

Fig. 98. The Modern Tiber at Rome

FIG. 99. DENTĀTUS RESPONDIT: "AURUM MĒ NŌN TEMPTAT"

323. Vērus Rōmānus

Audīvistīne dē Dentātō? "Quis fuit et quid fēcit?" rogās. Dentātus fuit clārus Rōmānus quī multa proelia fēcit et inimīca castra oppidaque cēpit. Modus eius[1] vītae et ab amīcīs et ab inimīcīs probābātur et laudābātur, quod[2] Rōmānus bonus erat. Cum[3] officiīs pūblicīs nōn prohibēbātur,[4] agricola erat et labōrābat in agrīs.

Samnītēs, quōs Dentātus saepe superāverat, magnam pecūniam ad clārum virum mīsērunt. "Haec[5] pecūnia est tua. Auxilium tuum et amīcitiam petimus." Dentātus respondit: "Vestrum aurum et praemia mē[6] nōn temptant. Vērus Rōmānus nōn cupit habēre pecūniam sed superāre eōs[7] quī aurum rēgnumque habent."

[1] *his.* [2] *because.* [3] *whenever.* [4] *prevented.* [5] *this.* [6] *me.* [7] *those.*

Fig. 100. A Shop in Pompeii as It Used to Be

LESSON XLV

THIRD CONJUGATION: REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS

324. Vocabulary

an′te, adv. and prep. with acc., *before* (of time or place)
cognōs′cō, cognōs′cere, cognō′vī, cog′nitus, *learn;* perf. tenses, "have learned" = *know* [***nōscō***]
do′minus, –ī, m., *master, lord, ruler* (dominate)
iam, adv., *already*
le′gō, le′gere, lē′gī, lēc′tus, *gather, choose, read* (legible)
pli′cō, –ā′re, –āvī, –ā′tus, *fold* (implication)
scrī′bō, scrī′bere, scrīp′sī, scrīp′tus, *write* (Scripture)
trāns, prep. with acc., *across*

325. Latin and English Word Formation

Ante– has its regular meaning and form when used as a prefix. **Trāns–** means *through* or *across,* and sometimes has the form **trā–**, as **trā-dūcō.**

Importance of the Verb. — The most important part of speech in Latin for English derivation is the verb, and the most important part of the verb is the *perfect participle.* This form is also the most important for Latin word formation. Therefore *learn carefully* the principal parts of every verb. Nothing is more important.

By associating Latin word and English derivative, you can make the English help you in your Latin, and *vice versa.* You can often tell the conjugation or the perfect participle of a Latin verb by the help of an English derivative. The English word *mandate* shows that **mandō** has **mandātus** as its perfect participle and

is therefore of the first conjugation. Similarly *migrate, donation, spectator*, etc. The word *vision* helps one remember that the perfect participle of **videō** is **vīsus.** Similarly *motion* from **mōtus,** *merit* from **meritus,** *missive* from **missus,** *position* from **positus,** *active* from **āctus.**

Fig. 101. Porta Nigra in Trier, Germany
This magnificent "black gate" was built by the Romans.

326. Third Conjugation: Review of Principal Parts

Memorize the principal parts of these verbs already studied and give the three stems of each. No rule can be given for the formation of the third and fourth parts, from which the perfect and participial stems are obtained, but the commonest type has a perfect ending in **–sī.** The participle ends in **–tus** or **–sus:**

I	cēdō	cēdere	cessī	cessus
	(Similarly accēdō, discēdō, excēdō, prōcēdō)			
	gerō	gerere	gessī	gestus
	mittō	mittere	mīsī	missus
	(Similarly āmittō, committō, dīmittō)			
	dūcō	dūcere	dūxī	ductus
	(Similarly prōdūcō, redūcō)			
	regō	regere	rēxī	rēctus
	trahō	trahere	trāxī	trāctus
	pōnō	pōnere	posuī	positus
	dēfendō	dēfendere	dēfendī	dēfēnsus
	agō	agere	ēgī	āctus
	nōscō	nōscere	nōvī	nōtus
II	capiō	capere	cēpī	captus
	accipiō	accipere	accēpī	acceptus
	incipiō	incipere	incēpī	inceptus
	cupiō	cupere	cupīvī	cupītus
	faciō	facere	fēcī	factus
	afficiō	afficere	affēcī	affectus
	efficiō	efficere	effēcī	effectus
	fugiō	fugere	fūgī	fugitūrus

Note. — The change or lengthening of the vowel of the perfect and participial stems may be compared with the change of vowel in English *sing, sang, sung,* etc.

Query. — What is the sign of the future which is found in verbs of the third conjugation?

327. Exercises

Oral. 1. Bellum trāns Ōceanum cum victōriā gessimus. 2. Signa ante cōpiās posita erant. 3. Litterās quās scrīpsī plicābō et ad amīcum meum mittam.

4. Bonus est dominus noster, quod populum cum cōnsiliō et concordiā regit. 5. Linguam Latīnam cum studiō legere et scrībere incipimus, quod multa nova verba iam cognōvimus. 6. Litterae quās ad tē mīsī cum cūrā plicātae erant.

Written. 1. The new words ought always to be learned. 2. I do not know the boy who lives across the street. 3. The wretched prisoners had been dragged across the fields and placed in-front-of the camp. 4. Marcus, who wrote the letter which you are reading?

328. Pūblius Mārcō Sal.[1]

Sī valēs, bene est; ego valeō. Magnō studiō lēgī tuās litterās quās cum cūrā scrīpserās et plicāverās.

Rogās dē Galliā. Vīta nostra nōn dūra est. Multī captīvī in castrīs sunt. Caesar multās pugnās iam pugnāvit et multa oppida cēpit et mox erit dominus Galliae. Tum cōpiās nostrās trāns Rhēnum dūcet et Germānōs terrēbit. Sententia eius[2] est: "Veniō, videō, vincō." Magnus et clārus vir est. Fortasse in Britanniam prōcēdēmus, quae est magna īnsula.

Quid Quīntus noster agit? Quae nova officia suscēpit? Cūr nōn scrīpsit? Tuum respōnsum cum studiō exspectābō. Valē.[3]

Read Davis, pp. 207–209; Johnston, pp. 287–289.

---

[1] For **salūtem dīcit:** *Publius pays his respects to Marcus*, the usual form of greeting in a letter.

[2] *his.* [3] *farewell.*

LESSON XLVI

PERFECT PARTICIPLES USED AS ADJECTIVES AND NOUNS. CONJUGATION OF *POSSUM*

329. Vocabulary

cer'nō, –ere, crē'vī, crē'tus, (*separate*), *discern, see* (discretion)
cer'tus, –a, –um, *fixed, sure* [***cernō***]
commo'veō, –ē're, –mō'vī, –mō'tus, *move away, disturb* [***moveō***]
fac'tum, –ī, n., *deed* [***faciō***]
nam, conj., *for*
nō'tus, –a, –um, *known, familiar* [***nōscō***]
parā'tus, –a, –um, *prepared, ready* [***parō***]
possum, pos'se, po'tuī, ——, *can, be able* (with infinitive) [***sum***]

330. Perfect Participles Used as Adjectives and Nouns

Perfect participles of many verbs came to be used as simple adjectives, just as in English: **parātus,** "prepared," *ready;* **nōtus,** "known," *familiar;* **certus,** "decided," *sure.* A participle, like any adjective, may be used substantively: **factum,** "having been done," *deed.*

331. Drill. — Decline **via nōta** and **signum certum.**

332. Conjugation of *Possum*

Possum is a compound of **sum** and is therefore **irregular.** It has no passive voice. Review the conjugation of **sum.** **Possum** = **pot**(e) + **sum.** **Pot–** becomes **pos–** before all forms of **sum** which begin with **s–.** The perfect tenses are regular.

Present	
pos'sum, *I can, am able*	**pos'sumus,** *we can, are able*
pot'es, *you can, are able*	**potes'tis,** *you can, are able*
pot'est, *he can, is able*	**pos'sunt,** *they can, are able*
Imperfect **pot'eram,** etc., *I could, was able*	Future **pot'erō,** etc., *I shall be able*

(For full conjugation see **661.**)

333. Exercises

Oral. 1. "Semper parātus" est nōta sententia, quam bonī puerī memoriā tenēre dēbent. 2. Amīcus certus in malā fortūnā cernitur. 3. Perīcula vītae bonum virum commovēre nōn possunt. 4. Linguam Latīnam et legere et scrībere possum. 5. Facta virōrum clārōrum semper nōta erunt et laudābuntur. 6. "Facta, nōn verba" nostra sententia esse dēbet. 7. Ante bellum patria nostra nōn parāta erat; nam magnās cōpiās nōn habēbāmus.

Written. 1. The great deeds of our troops will surely be remembered by a grateful people. 2. Few men can neither read nor write. 3. We came across the fields, because the road was not familiar. 4. They had not been able to come on-account-of the bad streets. 5. My motto is: "Always ready." Is it yours?

334. Latin Words and Phrases in English

errātum (plur., **errāta**), *error.*

ante bellum, *before the war.*

dē factō, *from* or *according to fact, actual;* as a **dē factō** government, one which is actually in operation, even if not recognized as legal.

terra incognita, *an unknown land.*

335. Plīnius et Puer

Plīnius, clārus Rōmānus, ad oppidum parvum in quō nātus[1] erat vēnit et ibi amīcum cum fīliō vīdit. Plīnius puerō dīxit[2]: "Discipulusne es?" Puer respondit: "Discipulus Mediōlānī[3] sum." "Cūr nōn hīc[4]?" "Quod magistrōs hīc nōn habēmus." Tum Plīnius amīcō dīxit: "Hīc lūdum habēre dēbētis. Ego nōn līberōs habeō sed tertiam partem[5] pecūniae quam dabitis parātus sum dare."

Art and Archaeology

FIG. 102. A STREET IN POMPEII

This street is in one of the newly excavated parts of the city.

[1] *born.* [2] From dīcō. [3] *at Milan.* [4] *here.* [5] Accusative.

LESSON XLVII

FOURTH CONJUGATION: REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS. NUMERALS

336. Vocabulary

adhi′beō, –ē′re, –hi′buī, –hi′bitus, *apply, employ, summon* [***habeō***]
antecē′dō, –ere, –ces′sī, –ces′sus, *go before, precede* [***cēdō***]
crē′ber, –bra, –brum, *frequent, close together*
relin′quō, –ere, –lī′quī, –līc′tus, *leave behind, abandon* (relinquish)
stō, –ā′re, ste′tī, sta′tus, *stand* (station)
trādū′cō, –ere, –dū′xī, –duc′tus, *lead across* [***dūcō***]
trānspor′tō, –ā′re, –ā′vī, –ā′tus, *carry over, transport* [***portō***]

337. The Latin Influence upon English

Latin words have kept coming into English continuously from the beginning of the language down to the present moment. Julius Caesar twice visited the island of Britain with his army and fought with the native Celts, as he relates in his book called the "Gallic War." But the Romans did not conquer the island until a century later. During the first four centuries of our era the Romans ruled Britain, and the towns at least became thoroughly Roman. Though they then abandoned it, they left a number of Latin words in the speech of the native population. Some of these words were afterwards adopted by the Angles and Saxons when they invaded the island nearly fifteen hundred years ago and gave their name (*Angle-land, Eng-land*) and language to the island. Their language was a form of German, for they came from northern Germany. Even there they had taken some Latin words into

their language. So you see that one may say that Latin affected English even before English existed as a separate language.

As the Romans in Britain found it necessary to build many military camps, which developed into towns, the word **castra** is to be found in a number of town names, many of which have been used in our country also. So *Chester* (Pa.), *Ro-chester* (N. Y.), *Man-chester* (N. H.), *Wor-cester* (Mass.), *Glou-cester* (Mass.), *Lan-caster* (Pa.). What other names with these endings can you give?

338. Fourth Conjugation: Review of Principal Parts

Memorize the principal parts of the following verbs, which have occurred in previous lessons:

audiō	audīre	audīvī	audītus
veniō	venīre	vēnī	ventus
conveniō	convenīre	convēnī	conventus
inveniō	invenīre	invēnī	inventus

339. Numerals: How Lucius Learned to Count

Ūnus[1] puer et ūnus puer sunt **duo** puerī; duo librī et ūnus liber sunt **trēs** librī; duo equī et duo equī sunt **quattuor** equī; trēs carrī et duo carrī sunt **quīnque** carrī; quattuor oppida et duo oppida sunt **sex** oppida; sex dominī et ūnus dominus sunt **septem** dominī;

[1] *One.*

quīnque nautae et trēs nautae sunt **octō** nautae; septem agrī et duo agrī sunt **novem** agrī; sex puellae et quattuor puellae sunt **decem** puellae.

Summary: **ūnus, duo, trēs, quattuor, quīnque, sex, septem, octō, novem, decem.**

340. Exercises

Oral. 1. Multum frūmentum in Eurōpam trānsportāvimus. 2. Nūntium mīsimus ad Marium, quī sine auxiliīs antecesserat. 3. Ob equōs et carrōs crēbrōs in viā stāre nōn possumus. 4. Ubi pecūnia quam āmīserās inventa est? 5. Nōnne magnam dīligentiam in amīcōrum perīculīs adhibēre dēbēmus? 6. Gallī trāns agrōs in silvam cōpiās trādūxērunt. 7. Ob quās causās colōnī agrōs relīquērunt?

Written. 1. How did you hear about your friend's injury? 2. Marius ordered our forces to be led-across. 3. We ought to employ diligence and to labor with eagerness. 4. Why do you stand in the middle (of the) street?

341. Colōnī

Puerīs et puellīs Americānī "colōnī" nōtī sunt. Colōnī ē Britanniā ad Americam vēnērunt et in Americā habitāvērunt. Patriam novam petīvērunt et invēnērunt. Etiam puerīs puellīsque Rōmānīs "colōnī" nōtī erant. Rōmānī oppida occupāta et agrōs captōs virīs Rōmānīs dabant. Multīs Rōmānīs agrī nōn grātī erant; pugnās amābant. Sed multī in agrīs habitābant.

Multī virī quī in oppidīs habitāverant captīvī et servī colōnōrum malōrum factī labōrāre cōgēbantur.

Ōtium habēre nōn poterant. Aliī līberī erant et amīcī colōnōrum erant.

Cōpiae ā Rōmānīs in Britanniam trānsportātae sunt, in quā multa bella gesta sunt. Per colōnōs in Britanniam trāductōs lingua Latīna Britannīs data est. Rōmānī oppida in Britanniā mūnīvērunt — Londīnium, Eborācum, Lindum; nunc appellantur London, York, Lincoln. Vālla fēcērunt, viās mūnīvērunt. Britannia facta est prōvincia Rōmāna. Ruīnae[1] Rōmānae etiam nunc vidērī possunt. Quis nōn cupit ad Britanniam nāvigāre et ibi ruīnās Rōmānās vidēre?

By Ewing Galloway, N. Y.

FIG. 103. THE ROMAN WALL AT CHESTER, ENGLAND

[1] Translate by the English derivative.

LESSON XLVIII

PARTICIPLES USED AS CLAUSES

342. Vocabulary

addū'cō, -ere, -dū'xī, -duc'tus, *lead to, influence* [***dūcō***]
cōn'sulō, -ere, -su'lui, -sul'tus, *consult* (with acc.) (consultation)
fu'ga, -ae, f., *flight;* **in fu'gam da're,** *to put to flight* [***fugiō***]
nōn iam, adv., *no longer*
prōvi'deō, -ē're, -vī'dī, -vī'sus, *foresee, provide* [***videō***]
ti'midus, -a, -um, *fearful, afraid* (timidity)

343. The Latin Influence upon English (*Cont.*)

In the preceding lesson we saw that a number of Latin words came into English as a result of the Roman occupation of Britain. Other examples are *wall* (from **vāllum**), together with place names like *Walton* (*Wall-town*), *port* (from **portus,** *harbor*), together with place names like *Portsmouth*, *street* (from **strāta**). *Lin-coln* (from **colōnia,** *colony*); cf. *Cologne*, the name of a city in Germany, which was an ancient Roman colony.

A century and a half after the Angles and Saxons settled in England, Pope Gregory sent a number of missionaries, including the famous Augustine, to convert the island to Christianity. As the missionaries spoke Latin, they introduced a number of Latin words into English, especially words dealing with the Church, *e.g. temple* (**templum**), *disciple* (**discipulus**), *bishop* (**episcopus**). This last word came into Latin from Greek.

344. Participles Used as Clauses

The participle, although sparingly used in English, is exceedingly common in Latin. It often serves as a *one-word substitute* for a subordinate clause, introduced in English by *who*, etc., *when* or *after*, *since* or *because*, *although*, and *if*. The meaning of the Latin sentence as a whole will always determine the precise meaning of the participle. Make it a rule to translate the participle *literally* before attempting to expand it into a clause. Note the various translations in the following:

Relative 1. **Oppida *capta* vīdī,** *I saw the towns* ***which had been captured*** (lit., *the captured towns*).

Temporal 2. ***Convocātī* ad proelium dūcentur,** ***After they have been called together,*** *they will be led to battle* (lit., *having been called together*).

Causal 3. ***Territī* nōn prōcessērunt,** ***Because they were terrified,*** *they did not advance* (lit., *having been terrified*).

Adversative 4. ***Territī* nōn cessērunt,** ***Though they were terrified,*** *they did not yield.*

Conditional 5. ***Territī* cēdent,** ***If terrified,*** *they will yield.*

Observe that the *perfect* participle denotes time *before* that of the leading verb.

345. Exercises

Oral. 1. Malus puer, ab amīcīs monitus, verbīs addūcī nōn iam potest. 2. Fīlia mea est timida, quod multa perīcula semper prōvidet. 3. Monitī vōs dē perīculō cōnsulere nōn poterāmus. 4. Captīvī nōn parātī gladiōs cēpērunt et sociōs nostrōs in fugam dedērunt. 5. Rōmānī multa oppida occupāta relīquērunt. 6. Arma, ā Gallīs relīcta in multīs oppidīs, ā nostrīs inventa sunt. 7. Perīculum prōvīsum nostrōs nōn terruit.

Written. 1. I saw many arms that had been captured[1] by you. 2. The boys read the book because they had been influenced by the teacher's words. 3. We have given help to the wretched sailors abandoned on the island. 4. I have read the letter written by my son. 5. The Gauls captured the town although it was defended by the Germans.

346. Mārcus Pūbliō Sal.

Accēpī, Pūblī, litterās tuās scrīptās in Galliā et statim respondēbō, quod multa nova sunt. Quid putās? Quīntus noster fīliam Rūfī in mātrimōnium dūxit! Tenēsne memoriā eam?[2] Pulchra puella est, ā multīs amāta. Familia clāra est. Fortūna Quīntī bona est, sed Quīntus meret bonam fortūnam.

Scrīpsistī dē Caesaris[3] victōriīs. Cum magnō studiō lēgī litterās tuās, quod Gallia semper fuit terra nova et nōn nōta mihi. Paucī nūntiī dē Galliā vēnērunt, et paucae victōriae nūntiātae sunt. Caesar victōriīs suīs glōriam et fāmam armōrum Rōmānōrum augēbit. Nōn iam timēbimus Gallōs in fugam datōs. Alpēs nunc Rōmam ā perīculō dēfendent. Gallī territī nōn prōcēdent trāns Alpēs.

Caesar librum "Dē Bellō Gallicō" scrībere dēbet. Sī liber ab eō[4] scrībētur, ā multīs legētur; etiam post multōs annōs cum cūrā et dīligentiā legētur.

Litterae tuae nōn longae erant. Cūr longās litterās nōn scrībis? Multa nova vīdistī et vidēbis. Valē.[5]

---

[1] Express in two ways. [2] *her.* [3] Genitive singular. [4] *him.* [5] *farewell.*

347. Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. dīligentia
2. dominus
3. factum
4. fuga
5. modus
6. nātūra
7. rēgnum

Adjectives

8. certus
9. crēber
10. nōtus
11. parātus
12. pulcher
13. timidus

Pronouns

14. quī
15. quis

Numerals

16. ūnus
17. duo
18. trēs
19. quattuor
20. quīnque
21. sex
22. septem
23. octō
24. novem
25. decem

Verbs

26. addūcō
27. adhibeō
28. antecēdō
29. cernō
30. cognōscō
31. cōgō
32. commoveō
33. cōnservō
34. cōnsulō
35. dō
36. intermittō
37. legō
38. moneō
39. obtineō
40. permoveō
41. pertineō
42. petō
43. plicō
44. possum
45. prōvideō
46. relinquō
47. scrībō
48. stō
49. submittō
50. sustineō
51. trādūcō
52. trānsportō

Adverbs

53. cūr
54. iam
55. nōn iam
56. tum

Prepositions

57. ante
58. inter
59. ob
60. trāns

Conjunction

61. nam

348. Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. *carefulness*
2. *master*
3. *deed*
4. *flight*
5. *measure, manner*
6. *nature*
7. *kingdom*

Adjectives

8. *sure*
9. *frequent*
10. *known*
11. *prepared*
12. *beautiful*
13. *fearful*

Pronouns

14. *who*
15. *who?*

Numerals

16. *one*
17. *two*
18. *three*
19. *four*
20. *five*
21. *six*
22. *seven*
23. *eight*
24. *nine*
25. *ten*

Verbs

26. *influence*
27. *employ*
28. *go before*
29. *discern*
30. *learn*
31. *collect, compel*
32. *disturb*
33. *save*
34. *consult*
35. *give*
36. *suspend*
37. *gather, read*
38. *remind, warn*
39. *hold, obtain*
40. *move deeply*
41. *extend to*
42. *seek*
43. *fold*
44. *can*
45. *foresee*
46. *leave behind*
47. *write*
48. *stand*
49. *dispatch*
50. *maintain*
51. *lead across*
52. *carry over*

Adverbs

53. *why*
54. *already*
55. *no longer*
56. *then*

Prepositions

57. *before*
58. *between, among*
59. *on account of*
60. *across*

Conjunction

61. *for*

349. General Review of Principal Parts

1. Give the four parts of the following verbs: **mittō, cēdō, dūcō.**

(*a*) Form three compounds from each of the above verbs and give their principal parts.

2. Give the four parts of the following: **agō, capiō, veniō, faciō, pōnō.**

(*a*) Form one compound from each of the above verbs and give its principal parts.

3. Give in Latin the principal parts of the following verbs: *defend, flee, have, be, see, remain, teach, increase, frighten, learn.*

350. 1. Give in English the principal parts and a synopsis of *be* and *have* in the 1st plur.

2. Give a synopsis of **audiō** in the act. 3rd plur.; **capiō** in the pass. 1st plur.; **moveō** in the act. 2nd sing.; **agō** in the pass. 3rd sing.

351. Decline **quae nātūra, modus vester, quod rēgnum, signum parātum, dominus monitus.**

352. Perception Device for Learning the Verb

(*To the Teacher*)

This device is intended to fix the general scheme of the Latin verb as represented in the first and second conjugations.

Select three pieces of white cardboard 10 × 6 in. and print upon each in large letters one of the three stems of some regular verb. Next cut four pieces of cardboard 4 × 6 in., upon each of which place one of the four tense signs (**bā, bi,**[1] **erā, eri**). Cut six cards of the same size for each of the active personal endings; the reverse side should be used for the corresponding passive endings. Similar cards should be prepared for the first three tenses of **sum,** used in

[1] The future sign –ē– of the 3rd and 4th conjugations should be placed upon the reverse side. In like manner, the subjunctive signs may be placed later on the back of the other tense-sign cards, in order to save duplication.

forming the perfect system in the passive. After the four parts of the given verb have been written upon the blackboard and the three stems plainly underscored, proceed to build verb forms in the various tenses by holding up before the class a set of cards, as follows:

MOVĒ	BA	NTUR

Modifications in the present and imperfect tenses of the third and fourth conjugations (and elsewhere), due to the "connecting" vowel, must be explained by the teacher, for they cannot be illustrated conveniently.

Drill on verb forms must be incessant. Prompt recognition of tense, voice, and mood can be secured by having the student *translate* promiscuous verb forms selected from a large group written on the blackboard, representing both voices and every tense.

353. Conversation: Counting

(The teacher assigns a number — "Ūnus," "Duo," "Trēs," etc., to each of ten pupils. The following questions and others like them should be answered by the pupil whose number furnishes the correct answer.)

Magister. Quot (*how many*) sunt duo et quattuor? **Discipulus "Sex."** Duo et quattuor sunt sex.

M. Quot sunt quattuor et quīnque? **D. "Novem."** Quattuor et quīnque sunt novem.

Note. — A competitive game can be made by having two sets of ten (or less) and scoring one for the side whose representative answers first.

354. English Word Study

Find and use in sentences as many English derivatives as possible from **vocō, videō, mittō,** and **faciō.** Enter the derivatives in your notebook, using a separate page for each Latin word.

LESSON XLIX

355. THE STORY OF LUCIUS (*Cont.*)

Circus

Dē "lūdō" in quō magister docēbat lēgistis. Sed erat etiam "lūdus"[1] in quō ōtium agēbātur; nam puerī Rōmānī nōn semper labōrābant sed etiam lūdēbant. Dictum est: "Puerī puerī erunt."

"The Parade's Coming"

Fēriae erant. Lūcius, amīcus noster parvus, ad lūdōs pūblicōs in Circō factōs ā servō ductus est. Multī ad Circum conveniēbant; nam populus lūdōs amābat. Nōn paucī ante aurōram vēnerant. Lūcius et servus loca commoda beneficiō amīcī invēnērunt et exspectāvērunt. Sed quid audiunt? "Pompa venit! Pompa venit!" Pompa per Forum et Sacram Viam ad Circum prōcesserat et nunc per portam in Circum prōcēdēbat. In pompā fuērunt deōrum fōrmae, virī, puerī, equī, quadrīgae,[2] aurīgae.[3]

The Chariot Race: "They're Off!"

Pompa per Circum ducta est; Lūcius cum studiō exspectāvit. Tum sex quadrīgae, ad portam redāctae, signum exspectāvērunt. Signum datum est et equī ā portā missī sunt.

Inter aurīgās fuit Pūblius, quī magnam fāmam ob

[1] See Vocabulary.

[2] Quattuor equī quī carrum trahunt "quadrīgae" appellantur.

[3] "Aurīgae" sunt virī quī quadrīgās agunt.

multās victōriās habuit. Erat amīcus familiae Lūcī nostrī, et Lūcius multa dē Circō ā Pūbliō cognōverat. Nunc Lūcius cum reliquīs Pūblium magnō studiō spectābat.

Publius Handicapped at the Start

Sed Fortūna misera fuit. Pūblius habuit ūnum equum quī erat novus et tardus; reliquae quadrīgae antecessērunt. Lūcius magnā cūrā ob malam fortūnam amīcī affectus est. Sed victōria nōn āmissa erat; nam septem spatia erant.

Two Chariots Out of the Race

In mediō Circō erat longa spīna. Terminī spīnae "mētae" appellātī sunt. Magnum erat perīculum aurīgārum ad mētās. Itaque in prīmō spatiō nec prīmus nec secundus aurīga quadrīgās ā mētīs regere potuit. Ēiectī[1] per[2] terram equīs trāctī sunt et iniūriās accēpērunt. Servī virōs ad spīnam portāvērunt et auxilium dedērunt.

Publius Still Last

Nunc erant quattuor quadrīgae. Sex spatia restābant, sed Pūblius antecēdere nōn poterat. Quīnque, quattuor spatia restābant. Pūblius ultimus erat. Duo spatia restābant; populus cōnsilium multum Pūbliō dabat sed nōn audiēbātur. Pūblius magnā cūrā equōs regēbat et etiam retinēbat, sed populus nōn cognōverat. Ūnum spatium restābat; Lūcius lacrimās retinēre nōn potuit. Fortūna inimīca erat.

---

[1] From ēiciō. [2] *over.*

FIG. 104. MAGNUM ERAT PERĪCULUM AURĪGĀRUM AD MĒTĀS

"And the Last Shall Be First!"

Sed quid vidēmus? Pūblius antecēdit! Nōn iam equōs retinet sed incitat. Ūnus equus, "Parātus" appellātus (nam semper parātus erat), integer fuit et properāre incipit. Nōn iam Pūblius erat ultimus; iam secundum locum tenet. Ūnus aurīga ante Pūblium restat. Aequī sunt — deī sunt bonī! — prīmus ad mētam ultimam Pūblius venit et praemia victōriae accipit! Et Lūcius — quid faciēbat? "Iō! Iō! Pūblius! Parātus! Clāra victōria!" erant Lūcī verba.

Fig. 105. Pūblius et Parātus

From an ancient mosaic floor, made of bits of colored stone.

Nōnne magnum erat puerum Rōmānum esse? Sed etiam nunc in circō quadrīgās vidēre potestis; nam circum pompamque ā Rōmānīs accēpimus.

356. GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE

Amusements

The chief amusements for the people as a whole were the circus, the gladiatorial shows, and the theater. The oldest and most popular was the circus with its races, fully described in the "Story of Lucius" (cf. Figs. 104, 105). The races were the main thing; gradually

various side shows and acrobatic exhibitions were added to fill in the time between races. The modern circus is descended from the ancient, but the chariot races no longer have the same prominence.

The circus games were held at public expense on holidays. They were held in the valley between the Palatine and Aventine. Originally the people sat on the hillsides; later magnificent stands seating 200,000 people were built. Other circuses were built in Rome and elsewhere, but the original Circus Maximus remained the chief one.

For the interest these games created we may compare our baseball and football games. There were various racing clubs, distinguished by their colors, like our schools and colleges; we are reminded also of the "Red Sox" and "White Sox" of baseball. Drivers were popular heroes and often became rich. Their records and those of the horses were carefully kept. One man is said to have won 3559 races. This reminds us of the attention given to the number of home runs made by "Babe" Ruth.

The theater was another important place for amusement. In imitation of Greek custom, Roman theaters were semicircular and open to the sky. The actors usually wore masks which indicated what kind of part the actor was playing. Women's parts were played by men. Both comedies and tragedies were given. The most famous writers of comedies were Plautus and Terence. Their plays are still in existence.

The gladiatorial contests were rather late importations from Etruria, the country to the north of Rome. At first they consisted of sword fights between two

men — fencing matches with swords instead of foils. Curiously enough, these fights took place at funerals. Later on these became very popular. Fights between men and animals (like the Spanish bullfights) were added, as well as fights between animals. Sometimes very elaborate shows were put on. They were held in open air amphitheaters — which may be described as two theaters put together. Many Roman towns all over the world had their theaters and amphitheaters. The famous Colosseum at Rome (Fig. 61) was not built until 80 A.D. It had room for 50,000 people.

Read Davis, pp. 374–406; Guerber (*Story*), pp. 142–145; Johnston, chap. IX; Botsford, pp. 345–348.

FIG. 106. MASKS

LESSON L

THIRD DECLENSION: MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS

357. Vocabulary

dux, du′cis, m., *leader, general*	[*dūcō*]
ho′mō, ho′minis, m., *man, human being*	(homicide)
lēx, lē′gis, f., *law*	(legal)
mī′les, mī′litis, m., *soldier*	(military)
pāx, pā′cis, f., *peace*	(pacifist)
pre′mō, –ere, pres′sī, pres′sus, *press, press hard, oppress*	(pressure)
sa′lūs, salū′tis, f., *health, safety*	(salutary)

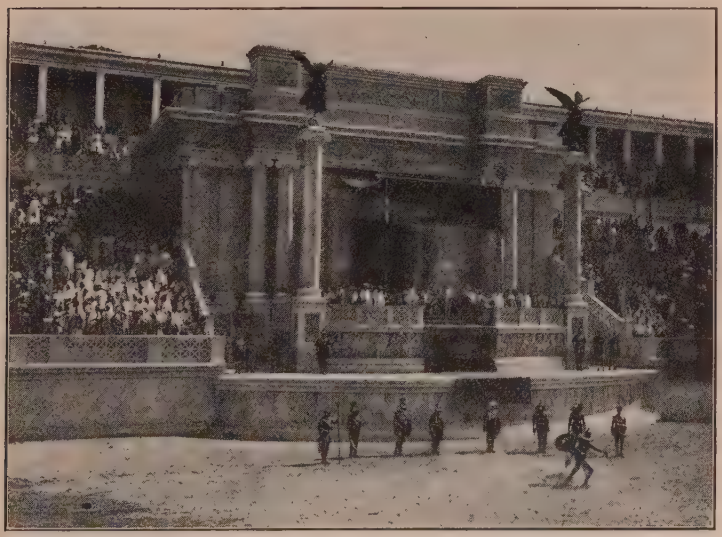


FIG. 107. GLADIATORS IN THE ARENA

The scene is in front of the emperor's box. At the left are the Vestal Virgins.

358. Third Declension: Masculine and Feminine Nouns

The genitive singular of nouns of the **third declension** ends in **–is**; the base is obtained by dropping this ending. All three genders are found among nouns of the third declension, and no general rule can be given. The gender, as well as the nominative and genitive singular, must therefore be learned from the vocabulary.[1] Masculine and feminine nouns are declined alike, as follows:

Endings			**mīles,** *soldier* (base, **mīlit–**)		**lēx,** *law* (base, **lēg–**)	
	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	—[1]	**–ēs**	mī'les	mī'litēs	lēx	lē'gēs
Gen.	**–is**	**–um**	mī'litis	mī'litum	lē'gis	lē'gum
Dat.	**–ī**	**–ibus**	mī'litī	mīli'tibus	lē'gī	lē'gibus
Acc.	**–em**	**–ēs**	mī'litem	mī'litēs	lē'gem	lē'gēs
Abl.	**–e**	**–ibus**	mī'lite	mīli'tibus	lē'ge	lē'gibus

a. **Observe** that the dative and ablative plural are alike; this is true of all declensions. The nominative and accusative plural also are alike in the third declension.

359. Drill. — Decline **dux bonus, homō magnus, pāx aequa, salūs nostra.**

360. Exercises

Oral. 1. Hominem nunc exspectō cui quattuor librōs mandāvī. 2. Dux mīlitēs ēvocātōs ad pugnam per plāna loca prōdūxit. 3. Ob vigiliam praesidī, equī nōn removērī poterant. 4. Magna est glōria mīlitum

[1] The ending of the nominative singular varies. When not omitted, it is usually **–s** or **–x**.

quī bellō pressī nōn cessērunt sed firmō animō prō causā sacrā pugnāvērunt. 5. Salūs patriae nostrae in armīs mīlitum nostrōrum nōn iam pōnētur, quod pācem aequam effēcimus. 6. Sine bellō pācem et ōtium et salūtem obtinēre cupimus. 7. Ibi potest valēre populus, ubi lēgēs valent.

Written. 1. Many books sent by boys and girls were received by the soldiers in the camps. 2. Why do you hesitate to approach (**ad**) the man? 3. "Safety first!" is a good motto. 4. The general ordered the soldiers to be called-together. 5. Why is he absent? He ought to set an example and be present.

361. Latin Phrases in English

pāx in bellō, *peace in (the midst of) war.*
Dux fēmina factī, *A woman (was) leader in (of) the deed.*
novus homō, *a new man* (in politics); hence, *an upstart.*
lēx scrīpta, *the written law.*

362. Ulixēs

Ulixēs,[1] dux Graecus quī in bellō Trōiānō pugnāverat, post bellum ad Ithacam, in quā īnsulā habitāverat, properāvit. Sed multa dūra mala miser sustinuit. Decem annōs in multīs terrīs ēgit. Ventīs semper ab aliō[2] locō ad alium āctus est. Semper salūtem petīvit neque invēnit.

Ā Trōiā cum multīs sociīs Ulixēs nāvigāvit. Ad terrās Lōtophagōrum accessit. Paucī mīlitēs Graecī lōtum ēdērunt[3] et amāvērunt; patriam sociōsque nōn iam memoriā tenuērunt. Sed Ulixēs mīlitēs ad nāvēs redūxit.

[1] *Ulysses.* [2] *from one place to another.* [3] *ate.*

Tum ad Siciliam ventīs āctus est. In Siciliā habitābant Cyclōpēs, hominēs altī et dūrī quī singulōs oculōs[1] habēbant. Ulixēs cum paucīs hominibus in hōc[2] locō frūmentum petīvit. Magnam spēluncam invēnit in quā multum frūmentum fuit. Tum vēnit Cyclōps quī appellātus est Polyphēmus. Ovēs in spēluncam ēgit. Polyphēmus Graecōs vīdit et dīxit: "Ā quō locō venītis? Quī estis? Quid petītis?" Ulixēs respondit: "Nōs Graecī sumus. Ego Nēmō[3] appellor. Auxilium tuum petimus."

Polyphēmus duōs hominēs cēpit et ēdit. Graecī territī sunt. Tum Polyphēmus somnum cēpit. Graecī sude[4] oculum Polyphēmī perfōdērunt, quī clāmāvit et sociōs convocāvit. "Quid est?" rogant. "Quis tē vulnerāvit?" Polyphēmus respondet: "Nēmō mē vulnerāvit." Itaque reliquī Cyclōpēs discessērunt. Polyphēmus Graecōs petīvit sed nōn invēnit quod sub ovibus[5] ligātī ex spēluncā excessērunt. Ad nāvēs properāvērunt et salūtem invēnērunt.

Read Sabin, pp. 307–312; Gayley, pp. 318–323; Bulfinch, pp. 290–294; Guerber, pp. 337–345; Colum, pp. 156–167; Harding (*Greek Gods*), pp. 119–123.

---

[1] *one eye apiece.* [2] *this.* [3] *No-man.* [4] *with a stake.*
[5] Ablative plural.

LESSON LI

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

363. Vocabulary

pēs, pe′dis, m., *foot;* **pe′dibus,** *on foot, afoot* (pedal)
expe′diō, –ī′re, –pedī′vī, –pedī′tus, (lit., *make the foot free*), *set free*
impedīmen′tum, –ī, n., *hindrance;* plur., *baggage*
impe′diō, –ī′re, –pedī′vī, –pedī′tus, (lit., *entangle the feet*), *hinder*
rēx, rē′gis, m., *king* (regal)
ver′tō, –ere, ver′tī, ver′sus, *turn* (version)

364. Latin and English Word Studies

Latin words should not be memorized individually but in groups — by *families,* so to speak. This is much easier, much more useful, and much more interesting. For example, there is the word **pēs,** the father of its family. From it are derived many other words in Latin and in English. **Im-pediō** means to *entangle the feet.* An "impediment" is a *tangle,* something in the way. Transportation is still a big problem with an army; it is no wonder that the Romans, without railroads or motor trucks, called the baggage train of the army **impedīmenta. Ex-pediō** means to get the *foot out* of the tangle; therefore in English an "expedient" is a means of solving a difficulty. To "expedite" matters is to hurry them along by removing obstacles in the way.

You have already become acquainted with several other "families" of words (**218**). Other words which

should be grouped together are **regō, rēgnum,** and **rēx; dō** and **dōnō; dūcō** and **dux; ager** and **agricola; cōnsulō** and **cōnsilium.**

365. Ablative Absolute: The Participle Used Independently with a Noun

(*a*) In English, we occasionally say, *This meeting with your approval, I shall act accordingly.* Inasmuch as such phrases are used loosely and have no direct connection with either the subject or the predicate of the sentence, they are said to be in the **nominative absolute,** *i.e.* they are *absolutely free* in a grammatical sense from the rest of the sentence. The phrase quoted above is equivalent to an adverbial clause: *Since this meets with your approval,* etc.

In Latin, this loose construction is very common, with this difference: the *ablative* is used instead of the nominative. This independent use of the participial phrase is known as the **ablative absolute.** The perfect participle is most frequently used in this construction.[1] Translate the participle *literally* before attempting to expand it into a subordinate clause of *time, cause, condition,* etc. (see **344**).

1. ***Servō accūsātō*** (lit., *the slave having been accused*) **dominus discessit,** *After accusing the slave, the master departed.*

2. ***Litterīs nōn missīs*** (lit., *a letter not having been sent*) **puer pecūniam nōn accēpit,** *Because he did not send a letter, the boy did not receive the money.*

3. ***Oppidīs nostrīs captīs*** (lit., *our towns captured*) **bellum gerēmus,** *If our towns are captured, we shall wage war.*

---

[1] Occasionally a noun, adjective, or present participle (to be studied later) is used.

(*b*) In English, there is an active and a passive past participle: *having sent* (act.), *sent* or *having been sent* (pass.). *In Latin, there is only a passive perfect participle.* If, therefore, in English the active past participle is used with an object, the phrase must be recast so as to become passive in the same tense before it is translated into Latin:

English: *having given the signal* (active)
the signal having been given (passive)
Latin: **signō datō.**

Caution. — The ablative absolute cannot be used when the noun or pronoun with which the participle agrees forms any part of the main sentence (subject or predicate). Compare the following sentence with those above (**365,** *a*) and note that the ablative absolute construction cannot be used because the participle in this case must agree with the subject:

Servus accūsātus territus est, *The slave, having been accused, was terrified.*

366. Rule. — *A noun in the ablative case used with a participle, adjective, or other noun and having no grammatical connection with the subject or the predicate is called an ablative absolute.*

367. Exercises

Oral. 1. Dux Gallōrum, signō datō, cōpiās proelium committere iussit. 2. Captīvī miserī, trāctī ad pedēs rēgis, pācem timidē petēbant. 3. Duce captō, nostrī pācem nōn petēbant. 4. Impedīmentīs in oppidō relīctīs, mīlitēs salūtem fugā iam petīverant. 5. Hominēs, praedā armīsque impedītī, properāre nōn poterant. 6. Rōmānī, castrīs mūnītīs, Gallōs in fugam vertērunt. 7. Castrīs positīs, Gallī auxilia exspectāvērunt. 8. Expedītī ex perīculō Deō grātiam habēre dēbēmus.

Written. 1. Although called a friend, Marcus was my enemy. 2. By fortifying five towns the Gauls were able to hinder the king's soldiers. 3. Hindered by bad roads, we have not been able to come on foot. 4. After sending a messenger, the king came to the town with a few friends. 5. Though the signal had been given, the men did not advance. 6. If the town is captured, the Gauls will make peace or seek safety by flight.

368. Circē

Tum Ulixēs ad rēgnum Aeolī, dominī ventōrum, nāvigāvit, quī Ulixī[1] ventōs malōs in saccō ligātōs dedit et dīxit:

"Sī malōs ventōs in saccō continēbis, nōn iam ventīs impediēris et ad patriam tuam veniēs."

Itaque Ulixēs grātō animō rēgem Aeolum relīquit. Multōs diēs[2] Graecī nāvigāvērunt, ūnō bonō ventō āctī, reliquīs ligātīs. Iam Ithacam clārē cernunt. Sed nautae dē saccō cūrā affectī sunt quod dē ventīs quī in saccō erant nihil audīverant. "Praemia et pecūnia in saccō sunt," nauta dīxit. "Ulixēs nautīs quī mala sustinuērunt pecūniam dare dēbet." Itaque saccum aperuērunt. Ventī līberātī tempestātem incitāvērunt quā Graecī ad rēgnum Aeolī redāctī sunt. Sed nunc Aeolus auxilium nōn dat. Ūnam nāvem Graecī nunc habent, reliquīs āmissīs.

Nunc ad īnsulam veniunt quam Circē pulchra regēbat. Ulixēs xx hominēs ad rēgīnam mīsit. Hī[3] pācem auxiliumque petīvērunt. Ab Eurylochō duce per silvam ad rēgīnam ductī sunt, quae eōs[4] in animālia[5] vertit. Eury-

[1] Dative. [2] Accusative plural. [3] *these.* [4] *them.* [5] Accusative plural: *animals.*

lochus sōlus in animal nōn versus ad nāvem fūgit et Ulixī omnia[1] nūntiāvit. Ulixēs commōtus cum reliquīs auxilium sociīs dare mātūrāvit. In viā Mercurium deum vīsum cōnsuluit. Mercurius eum[2] monuit et herbam eī[3] dedit. "Hāc[4] herbā," inquit, "vītam tuam servāre et sociōs tuōs līberāre poteris." Ulixēs prōcessit. Ubi ad rēgīnam accessit, iussit eam sociōs in hominēs vertere. Circē Ulixis[5] verbīs et factīs territa animālia in hominēs vertit. Magnam Ulixī grātiam habuērunt. Circē, quae nōn iam inimīca fuit, magnam et bonam cēnam parāvit. Annum ibi Ulixēs mānsit et vītam grātam ēgit. Tum ā sociīs adductus discessit.

Read Sabin, pp. 313–315; Gayley, pp. 324–327; Guerber, pp. 347–349; Colum, pp. 169–173.

FIG. 108. CIRCĒ HOMINĒS IN AN̓IMĀLIA VERTIT
From a painting by Burne-Jones.

[1] *everything.* [2] *him.* [3] *to him.* [4] (*with*) *this.* [5] Genitive.

LESSON LII

THIRD DECLENSION: NEUTER NOUNS

369. Vocabulary

ca′put, ca′pitis, n., *head*	(capital)
cor′pus, cor′poris, n., *body*	(corporation)
flū′men, flū′minis, n., *river*	(fluid)
iūs, iū′ris, n., *right, justice*	(jury)
nō′men, nō′minis, n., *name*	(nominate)

370. Third Declension: Neuter Nouns

	Endings		corpus, *body* (base, corpŏr–)	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	—	**–a**	cor′pus	cor′pora
Gen.	**–is**	**–um**	cor′poris	cor′porum
Dat.	**–ī**	**–ibus**	cor′porī	corpo′ribus
Acc.	—	**–a**	cor′pus	cor′pora
Abl.	**–e**	**–ibus**	cor′pore	corpo′ribus

Observe that the nominative and accusative singular of neuter nouns are alike, and that the nominative and accusative plural both end in **–a.**

371. Drill. — Decline **nōmen clārum, homō bonus, flūmen longum.**

372. Exercises

Oral. 1. Dominō vīsō, servus malus fūgit. 2. Ob impedīmenta multōs mīlitēs ad flūmen relīquimus. 3. Corporibus nostrīs patriam dēfendēmus. 4. Litterae quās fīlia mea scrīpsit nec caput nec pedem habent. 5. Iūs et lēgēs bonōs hominēs certē nōn impediunt sed

malōs terrent. 6. Quae nōmina flūminum Galliae cognōvistis? 7. Iūra līberōrum populōrum America semper dēfendet. 8. Germānī, pressī ā multīs Gallīs, fugient.

Written. 1. The river which you see is deep. 2. The men were deeply-moved by the distinguished leader's words. 3. Horses have large bodies but small heads. 4. The body of a man was found in the river by soldiers.

373. English Word Studies

Many English words preserve the original Latin forms of the third declension, either in the singular or in the singular and plural. Examples of the masculine and feminine types are:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
apex	**apexes** or **apices**	**index**	**indexes** or **indices**[1]
appendix	**appendixes** or **appendices**	**vertex**	**vertexes** or **vertices**
calyx	**calyxes** or **calyces**		

Nouns with their plurals in **–s** are **consul, ratio,** and a large number of nouns in **–or: actor, doctor, factor, labor, victor,** etc.

Examples of neuter nouns are:

Singular	Plural	Plural
genus	**genera**	**viscera** (singular rare)
stamen	**stamina** or **stamens**[1]	

Nouns with plurals in **–s** are: **omen, specimen,** etc.

The genitive case is preserved in ***jurisdiction, jurisprudence, legislator.***

[1] With difference of meaning

374. Sīrēnēs et Calypsō

Tum ad Sīrēnēs Ulixēs cum sociīs vēnit. Sīrēnēs corpora avium[1] et capita puellārum habuērunt. Sīrēnēs carmina pulchra canēbant quibus nautae affectī nāvēs ad saxa vertēbant. Hōc[2] modō vītam āmittēbant. Sed Ulixēs, quī dē Sīrēnibus ā Circē[3] monitus erat, perīculum prōvīdit. In auribus[4] sociōrum cēram posuit, sed nōn in suīs. Iussit manūs[5] pedēsque suōs ad nāvem ligārī. Hōc modō carmina Sīrēnum clārē audīvit neque vītam āmīsit.

Tum ad Siciliam accessērunt, ubi erat magnum perīculum, quod inter Scyllam et Charybdim nāvigāvērunt. Fugere mātūrāvērunt, sed Scylla sex hominēs cēpit.

Ubi ad Siciliam vēnērunt, vaccās sacrās Sōlis, quī deus etiam Apollō appellātus est, vīdērunt. Sociī vaccās gladiīs occīdere parant, sed Ulixēs eōs[6] monet: "Vaccae sunt sacrae. Quī vaccās occīdit ā deō occīdētur." Sed sociī, quī multa mala sustinuerant, vaccās occīdērunt et ēdērunt.[7] Sōlus Ulixēs nōn ēdit. Tum reliquī Graecī occīsī sunt et Ulixēs sōlus ad īnsulam āctus est in quā habitābat rēgīna pulchra cui[8] nōmen erat Calypsō. Ulixī[9] auxilium dedit, quī magnam grātiam ob beneficium habuit. Calypsō Ulixem amāre incipit neque dīmittit. Ulixēs discēdere nōn potuit quod nāvem nōn habuit. Itaque ibi octō annōs remānsit. Sed tum Iuppiter mīsit Mercurium ad rēgīnam et iussit eam[10] Ulixī nāvem parāre et auxilium dare. Hōc[3] factō, Ulixēs īnsulam relīquit.

Read Sabin, pp. 316–318; Gayley, pp. 328–331; Guerber, pp. 350–353; Colum, pp. 174–177.

[1] *of birds.* [2] *this.* [3] Ablative. [4] *ears.* [5] *hands.* [6] *them.* [7] *ate.* [8] *whose name.* [9] Dative. [10] *her.*

Courtesy of Willy Pogany

FIG. 109. ULIXĒS ET SĪRĒNĒS

LESSON LIII

SUMMARY OF ABLATIVE USES

375. Vocabulary

auc'tor, auctō'ris, m., *maker, author*	(authorize)
clau'dō, –ere, clau'sī, clau'sus, *close*	(clause)
ōr'dō, ōr'dinis, m., *order, rank*	(ordinary)
tem'pus, tem'poris, n., *time*	(temporal)
vul'nus, vul'neris, n., *wound*	(vulnerable)

376. Latin Phrases in English

Tempus fugit, *Time flies.*

per capita, *by heads* or *individuals.*

prō tem. (**prō tempore**), *for the time, temporarily.*

Fāta viam invenient, *The Fates will find a way.*

dē jūre, *according to right,* as a **dē jūre** government; cf. **dē factō** (**334**).

mē iūdice, *in my judgment* (lit., *me being judge*).

377. Summary of Ablative Uses

The uses of the ablative may be grouped under three heads:

I. The **true** or **"from" ablative** (**ab,** *from,* and **lātus,** *carried*), used with the prepositions **ab, dē,** or **ex** — if any preposition is used. The ablative of agent (with **ab**) belongs here.

II. The **associative** or **"with" ablative,** used with the preposition **cum** — if any preposition is used. The ablatives of means, accompaniment, and manner belong here.

III. The **place** or **"in" ablative,** used with the prepositions **in** or **sub** — if any preposition is used.

Every ablative construction may be put into one of these groups. Sometimes the use is literal, as, *I am going* ***with*** *you.* Sometimes it is figurative, as, *I shall buy a book* ***with*** *the money.*

FIG. 110. ROMAN AMPHITHEATER AT NÎMES, FRANCE

This amphitheater, in accord with its past, is used to-day for bullfights. It is one of the best preserved in existence.

378. Exercises

Oral. 1. Auctōris nōmen fāmam oppidī augēbit in quō habitat. 2. Studiō et dīligentiā prīmum locum certē obtinēbis. 3. Nōn iam impedītī vulneribus properāre poterimus. 4. Pāce factā, ōrdō in Eurōpā nōn reductus est. 5. Ob tempus annī frūmentum trānsportāre nōn poterāmus. 6. Rēx, victōriā barbarōrum territus, cōpiās trāns flūmen trādūxit. 7. Librō etiam clausō, auctōris verba memoriā tenēre possum.

Written. 1. I know the author whose books you have read. 2. (There) were many wounds made with a sword on the sailor's body. 3. The boys, having been warned by the teacher, will depart one at a time in order. 4. Since the river is closed, grain can no longer be transported. 5. The author had earned fame by (his) many books.

379. Phaeācia

Neptūnī, rēgis undārum, magna fuit īra ob iniūriam Polyphēmī, quī erat fīlius rēgis undārum. Itaque tempestās magna ā Neptūnō incitāta est quā nāvis Ulixis frācta est. Sed auxiliō quod dea Leucothea dedit Ulixēs ad īnsulam Phaeāciam vēnit. Vulneribus impedītus miser vix potuit sē[1] in silvam fīnitimam trahere, ubi somnum cēpit.

Interim Minerva ad Nausicaam, rēgis Phaeāciae fīliam, vēnit et iussit eam[2] ad flūmen prōcēdere et vestēs lavāre; nam tempus mātrimōnī aderat. Itaque Nausicaa cum aliīs puellīs carrō ad flūmen prōcessit. Ubi vestēs in flūmine lāvērunt, labōre intermissō, pilā[3] lūdēbant. Clāmōrēs puellārum ab Ulixe audītī sunt, quī pilam ex aquā servāvit. Puellae timidae fugere incipiunt, quod Ulixēs ob mala quae sustinuerat nōn pulcher erat. Sed Nausicaa nōn territa ante Ulixem stat et eī[4] grātiās agit. Ulixēs vestem petīvit. Nausicaa permōta eum[5] iussit ad oppidum prōcēdere. Nausicaa cum puellīs antecessit et Ulixī viam mōnstrāvit. Ulixēs ab rēge Alcinoō acceptus est, cui factīs clārīs nōtus fuit. Paucōs diēs Ulixēs in Phaeāciā mānsit. Tum Alcinous

[1] *himself.* [2] *her.* [3] *with a ball.* [4] *to him.* [5] *him.*

Ulixī praemia dedit et in nāvī[1] ad Ithacam mīsit. Itaque post xx annōs Ulixēs sōlus sine sociīs ad patriam vēnit.

Ulixe in Ithacā vīsō, Neptūnus, auctor malōrum Ulixis, īram continēre nōn potuit. Nāvem in quā Ulixēs trānsportātus erat ante portum Phaeāciae in saxum vertit. Hōc[2] modō portus īnsulae clausus est neque posteā Alcinous et hominēs īnsulae nāvigāre potuērunt.

Read Sabin, pp. 319–320; Guerber, pp. 355–357; Colum, pp. 135–156.

FIG. 111. THE SHIP OF THE PHAEACIANS

According to tradition, this rocky island near Corfu in the Adriatic Sea was once the ship in which Ulysses was brought back to Ithaca.

[1] Ablative singular. [2] *this.*

LESSON LIV

THIRD DECLENSION: *I*-STEM NOUNS (Genitive Plural in *-ium*) OF ALL GENDERS

380. Vocabulary

* **cī′vis, cī′vis,**[1] **cī′vium,** m., *citizen*	(civic)
* **hos′tis, hos′tis, hos′tium,** m., *enemy,*[2] usually plur.	(hostile)
* **ma′re, ma′ris, ma′rium,** n., *sea*	(marine)
* **mōns, mon′tis, mon′tium,** m., *mountain*	(mount)
* **nā′vis, nā′vis,**[3] **nā′vium,** f., *ship*	(navy)

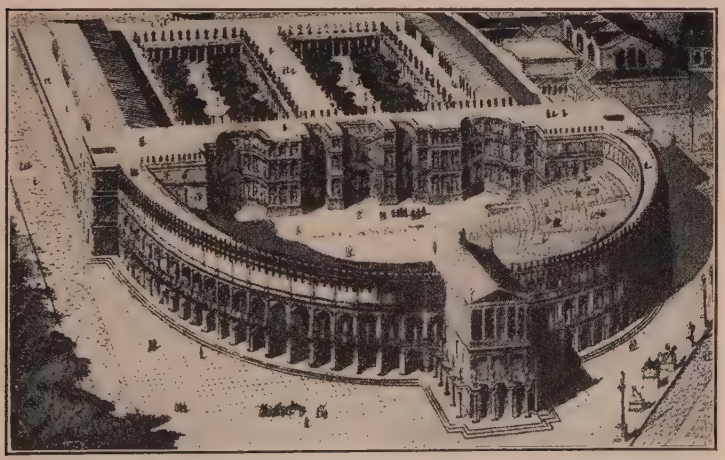


FIG. 112. THEATER OF POMPEY, ROME

As some of the Romans had a prejudice against theaters, Pompey built a temple of Venus and a theater together, so arranged that the seats of the theater served as steps leading to the temple. Both have now disappeared.

---

[1] Nouns marked with an asterisk (*) are **i**-stem nouns. The genitive plural of such nouns is always given in these vocabularies.

[2] *National enemy,* differing from **inimīcus,** *personal enemy.*

[3] The ablative singular ends in **-ī.**

381. Third Declension: *I*-Stem Nouns

The important group of nouns which have **–ium** instead of **–um** in the genitive plural are called ***i*–stem nouns.** In addition, neuters ending in **–e, –al,** and **–ar** have **–ī** instead of **–e** in the ablative singular, and **–ia** in the nominative and accusative plural. The classes of **i**–stem nouns are:

I. *Masculines and Feminines*

1. Nouns ending in **–is** having no more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative: **cīvis.**
2. Nouns of one syllable whose base ends in two consonants: **pars** (gen. **part–is**), **nox** (gen. **noct–is**).

II. *Neuters*

1. Nouns ending in **–e, –al, –ar : mare, animal, calcar.**

cīvis, *citizen* (base, **cīv–**)			**mare,** *sea* (base, **mar–**)	
Nom.	cī′vis	cī′vēs	ma′re	ma′ria
Gen.	cī′vis	cī′vium	ma′ris	ma′rium
Dat.	cī′vī	cī′vibus	ma′rī	ma′ribus
Acc.	cī′vem	cī′vēs[1]	ma′re	ma′ria
Abl.	cī′ve	cī′vibus	ma′rī	ma′ribus

382. Drill. — Decline **nāvis bona, mōns altus, mare pulchrum.**

383. Exercises

Oral. 1. Parvā nāvī colōnī trāns mare lātum ad Americam sine pecūniā migrāvērunt. 2. Ob numerum hostium quī in montibus erant Gallī in castrīs remānsērunt. 3. Bonī cīvēs officia pūblica suscipere nōn dubitant. 4. Altōs montēs et flūmina alta in Eurōpā vīdī. 5. Multōs librōs, scrīptōs ā clārīs auctōribus, līberī

[1] Occasionally **–īs** is used in the accusative plural of nouns of this type.

legere cupiunt. 6. Nāvibus hostium captīs, trāns mare frūmentum trānsportāre ad Sociōs nostrōs poterāmus. 7. Lūcī, iubē cīvēs frūmentum comparāre.

Written. 1. I saw a large number of ships on the sea. 2. If[1] the sea is closed, the enemy's ships will not be able to transport reinforcements. 3. I have ordered the citizens to close the gates of the town. 4. The enemy were seen by us on the mountain.

384. English Word Studies

Many Latin **i**–stem nouns ending in **–is** are preserved in their original form in English. The original plural in **–es** is pronounced like "ease":

axis	**axes**
basis	**bases**
finis	———

Distinguish **axes** from *axes* (plural of *ax*), **bases** from *bases* (plural of *base*). **Finis** has no plural in English.

Neuter **i**–stems in English (with plurals in **–s**) are **animal, exemplar, tribunal.**

385. Rōmulus et Remus

Silvius Proca, rēx Albānōrum, Numitōrem et Amūlium fīliōs habuit. Numitōrī rēgnum relīquit, sed Amūlius, pulsō[2] Numitōre, rēxit. Rhēa Silvia, fīlia Numitōris, geminōs[3] fīliōs, Rōmulum et Remum, habuit. Amūlius puerōs in Tiberī flūmine pōnī iussit. Sed aqua geminōs in siccō[4] relīquit. Lupa accessit et puerōs aluit. Posteā[5] Faustulus, pāstor rēgis, puerōs invēnit et ēducāvit. Post multōs annōs Rōmulō et Remō

[1] Use ablative absolute. [2] From **pellō.** [3] *twin.* [4] *on dry ground.* [5] *afterwards*

dīxit: "Numitor est avus vester." Adductī pāstōris verbīs, geminī Amūlium gladiō interfēcērunt et Numitōrī avō rēgnum dedērunt. Posteā oppidum mūnīvērunt in locō in quō ēducātī erant, quod dē nōmine Rōmulī Rōmam appellāvērunt.

Read Harding, pp. 13–18; Sabin, pp. 100–103; Guerber (*Story*), pp. 22–27; Haaren and Poland, pp. 9–17; Morris (*Roman*), pp. 7–13.

Fig. 113. Rōmulus et Remus
From a painting by Rubens.

LESSON LV

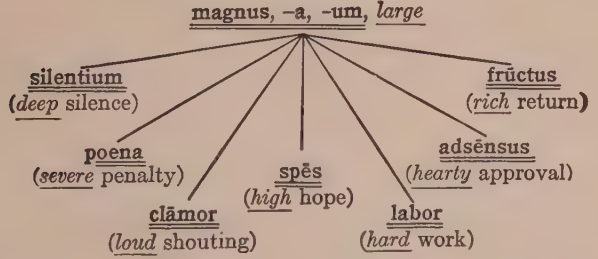
CHOICE OF WORDS

386. Vocabulary

* **fī′nis, fī′nis, fī′nium,** m., *end, limit;* plur., *borders, territory* (final)
i′ter, itī′neris, n., *journey, road, march* (itinerary)
post, prep. with acc., *behind* (of place); *after* (of time)
post′eā, adv., *afterwards*
ten′dō, –ere, teten′dī, ten′tus, *stretch* (tendon)

387. The Right Word in the Right Place

We have observed from a study of **agō** (**291**) that a Latin word may have many shades of meaning, which are suggested by the context. In translating, therefore, do not confine yourself to the "vocabulary" meaning of the word but select the particular meaning demanded by English usage. Observe the varying translation of **magnus, –a, –um** when used with the following nouns:



Exercise. — (*a*) Combine **magnus, –a, –um** with each of the following nouns already studied and translate freely and naturally: **perīculum, studium, cōpiae, pretium.**

(*b*) How does **altus, –a, –um** differ when applied to rivers and mountains?

(*c*) Translate **puella pulchra** and **homō pulcher.**

388. Gender of Third Declension Nouns

1. Nouns ending in **–or** are almost all masculine: **auctor, labor.**
2. Nouns ending in **–dō** and **–gō** are feminine: **magnitūdō, imāgō.**
3. Nouns ending in **–tās** and **–tūs** are feminine: **cīvitās, virtūs.**

389. Exercises

Oral. 1. Flūmina Italiae ex montibus ad mare tendunt. 2. Ego aut viam inveniam aut faciam. 3. Post castra nostra erat mōns altus, in quō paucī mīlitēs hostium ā nōbīs vidēbantur. 4. Poteruntne hostēs, montibus occupātīs, posteā iter facere per fīnēs nostrōs? 5. Nōnne grātum erat vidēre mīlitēs nostrōs post fīnem bellī? 6. Dēbēmusne, pāce factā, numerum nostrōrum mīlitum et nāvium augēre?

Written. 1. The enemy were afterwards put to flight by the Romans. 2. After a long journey my friend is approaching (**ad**) the end of life. 3. Our soldiers were not frightened by the dangers of the journey. 4. The road stretches through the mountains to the territory of the Gauls.

390. English Word Studies

The suffix **–tās** is usually found in nouns formed from adjectives and indicates condition. Its English form is **–ty,** which is to be carefully distinguished from **–y** (**251**).

What must be the Latin words from which are derived *commodity, integrity, liberty, publicity, timidity,*

variety? Note that the letter preceding the ending is usually **–i–**.

Latin Phrases in English

ad fin. (**ad fīnem**), *near the end* (of the page).
P.S. (**post scrīptum**), *written after* (at the end of a letter).

Fig. 114. Pēnelopē

391. Pēnelopē

Ad fīnem itineris sed nōn labōrum Ulixēs vēnerat. Prīmus Eumaeus pāstor, quī ad mare habitāvit, Ulixem vīdit sed nōn cognōvit. Ab Eumaeō Ulixēs multa dē uxōre Pēnelopē et fīliō Tēlemachō audīvit. Tēlemachus ab īnsulā tum aberat, quod Pēnelopē eum[1] ad rēgna cīvitātēsque Graeciae mīserat, in quibus locīs Ulixem petēbat. Per multōs annōs nūllam fāmam dē Ulixe Pēnelopē accēperat. Interim multī ducēs rēgēsque

[1] *him.*

cupiditāte rēgnī Ulixis adductī ē fīnitimīs īnsulīs convēnerant et rēgīnam in mātrimōnium petēbant, quod crēdidērunt rēgem Ulixem nōn iam vīvum esse. Pēnelopē eōs[1] ē fīnibus Ithacae sine auxiliō expellere nōn poterat. Itaque eōs verbīs dēcēpit:

"Ubi vestem quam faciō cōnfēcerō, nōn iam dubitābō in mātrimōnium darī."

Itaque exspectāvērunt. Sed cōnsilium Pēnelopae fuit tempus trahere. Itaque nocte retexēbat[2] vestem quam multā dīligentiā texuerat. Post trēs annōs hominēs cōnsilium Pēnelopae cognōvērunt, et Pēnelopē accūsāta vestem cōnficere coācta est.

Hōc[3] tempore Ulixēs ad īnsulam vēnit. Eōdem[4] tempore Tēlemachus ā Minervā monitus ad Ithacam properāvit. Ibi ad mare ab Ulixe vīsus et cognitus est. Ulixēs Tēlemachum ad oppidum antecēdere iussit. Ab Ulixe monitus Tēlemachus neque mātrī neque aliīs adventum patris nūntiāvit.

Posteā Ulixēs ad oppidum tardē prōcessit.

Read Sabin, pp. 320–322; Guerber, pp. 357–359; Colum, pp. 186–187; Bulfinch, 309–310.

---

[1] *them.* [2] *unwove.* [3] *this.* [4] *same.*

LESSON LVI

THIRD DECLENSION: ADJECTIVES

392. Vocabulary

cī′vitās, cīvitā′tis, f., *citizenship, state*	[***cīvis***]
fa′cilis, fa′cile, (lit., "do-able"), *easy*	[***faciō***]
for′tis, for′te, *strong, brave*	(fort)
līber′tās, lībertā′tis, f., *freedom*	[***līber***]
om′nis, om′ne, *all, every*	(omniscient)
pār, gen. **pa′ris,** *equal* (with dat.)	(parity)

393. Adjectives of the Third Declension

The adjectives thus far studied, such as **magnus, –a, –um** and **sacer, –cra, –crum,** have been declined like nouns of the first and second declensions. Many adjectives, however, are declined like **i**–stem nouns and are therefore called **adjectives of the third declension.** With the exception of one important class, which will be studied later, practically all adjectives of the third declension are **i**–stems. They are divided into classes according to the number of forms which are used in the nominative singular to denote gender, as follows:

1. **Two endings**[1] — masculine and feminine in **–is,** neuter in **–e**: **fortis, forte.**
2. **One ending** — one form for all genders: **pār.**

Adjectives of the third declension have **–ī** in the ablative singular, **–ium** in the genitive plural, and **–ia**

[1] A few adjectives in **–er** have *three endings* in the nominative singular, one for each gender: **celer, celeris, celere.**

in the neuter nominative and accusative plural. Note particularly that the ablative singular, unlike that of most i-stem *nouns*, ends in **-ī**.

	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	for'tis	for'te	pār	pār
Gen.	for'tis	for'tis	pa'ris	pa'ris
Dat.	for'tī	for'tī	pa'rī	pa'rī
Acc.	for'tem	for'te	pa'rem	pār
Abl.	for'tī	for'tī	pa'rī	pa'rī
Nom.	for'tēs	for'tia	pa'rēs	pa'ria
Gen.	for'tium	for'tium	pa'rium	pa'rium
Dat.	for'tibus	for'tibus	pa'ribus	pa'ribus
Acc.	for'tēs[1]	for'tia	pa'rēs[1]	pa'ria
Abl.	for'tibus	for'tibus	pa'ribus	pa'ribus

394. Drill. — Decline **cīvitās pār, puer fortis, iter facile, oppidum omne.**

395. Exercises

Oral. 1. Vir fortibus factīs cīvitātem obtinuit. 2. Post bellum lībertās omnibus captīvīs aequē data est. 3. Nōvistīne, amīce bone, nōmen hominis quem in nāvī vīdimus? 4. Terminus agrōrum nostrōrum est via longa et pulchra. 5. In nostrā patriā omnēs cīvēs sunt līberī et parēs. 6. Facilī itinere inventō, dux fortis omnēs cōpiās dē montibus dūcere mātūrāvit.

Written. 1. All free men love liberty and peace. 2. Nature has given us many beautiful (things). 3. Citizens, we shall defend the freedom of our coun-

[1] Occasionally **-īs** is preferred to **-ēs** (**381**, footnote 1).

try on the sea. 4. We ought not to undertake a long journey now, because the time of the year is not suitable. 5. After pitching camp, the Romans led-forth fresh troops to battle.

396. English Word Studies

A number of English nouns and adjectives preserve the nominative singular and a few, the nominative plural of Latin adjectives of the third declension: **par, pauper, simplex, duplex,** etc.; **September,** etc.; **amanuensis.** Neuter forms occur in **simile, facsimile, insignia** (singular rare), **regalia** (singular rare), **forte** (singular only). The dative plural is preserved in **omnibus** (a vehicle *for all*) and the ablative singular in **velocipede** (a vehicle *with swift foot*). Note that this word shows that in the third declension most *adjectives* have **–ī** in the ablative, while most *nouns* have **–e.**

397. Fīnis Labōrum

Ulixēs, rēx Ithacae, ad portās oppidī quod rēxerat stābat, ā multīs hominibus vīsus, sed nōn cognitus, quod vestēs sordidās gerēbat. In oppidum prōcessit. Multōs servōs vīdit ā quibus nōn cognitus est. Canis tamen Ulixis dominum cognōvit et statim ē vītā excessit. Adventū[1] Ulixis nūntiātō, Pēnelopē iussit eum ad sē[2] addūcī. Ubi Ulixēs accessit, omnēs procī eum hostem appellāvērunt et discēdere iussērunt. Sed Pēnelopē, quae eum nōn cognōverat, vestibus sordidīs permōta eum manēre iussit et cibum eī[3] dedit.

Pēnelopē vestem cōnfēcerat et nunc tempus aderat

[1] Ablative. [2] *herself.* [3] *to him.*

quō necessārium erat marītum dēligere. Iussit magnum arcum[1] pōnī ante procōs quem Ulixēs clārus ante xx annōs gesserat. Tum nūntiāvit:

"Homō quī arcum Ulixis fortis tendere poterit marītus meus erit; marītus novus pār Ulixī esse dēbet."

Itaque singulī in ōrdine arcum cēpērunt sed tendere nōn potuērunt. Tum Ulixēs arcum petīvit. Omnēs rīsērunt,[2] sed Pēnelopē iussit arcum Ulixī darī. Id[3] quod reliquī nōn facere poterant — arcum tendere — Ulixī facile erat. Tum in procōs arcum tendit, quōs in fugam dedit. Tēlemachus et Eumaeus auxilium dedērunt. Ulixēs omnēs portās oppidī claudī iusserat, ob quam causam procī ex oppidō fugere nōn potuērunt. Salūte petītā, nōn inventā, omnēs interfectī sunt. Hōc[4] modō rēgnum et uxōrem Ulixēs recēpit et in pāce ōtiōque vītam ēgit.

Read Sabin, pp. 322–323; Guerber, p. 359; Colum, pp. 187–254.

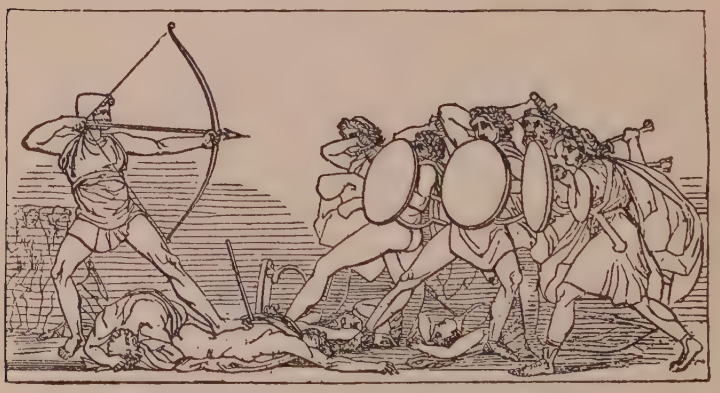


Fig. 115. Ulixēs in Procōs Arcum Tendit

[1] *bow.* [2] From **rīdeō.** [3] *that.* [4] *this.*

LESSON LVII

ABLATIVE OF RESPECT

398. Vocabulary

auctō′ritās, auctōritā′tis, f., *authority, influence* [***auctor***]
ce′ler, ce′leris, ce′lere, *swift* (celerity)
cele′ritās, celeritā′tis, f., *swiftness*
cōnfir′mō, –ā′re, –ā′vī, –ā′tus, *make firm, encourage, establish* [***firmus***]
pel′lō, –ere, pe′pulī, pul′sus, *drive, defeat* (repulsive)
su′perō, –ā′re, –ā′vī, –ā′tus, *overcome, excel* (insuperable)

399. Latin Phrases in English

Dominus prōvidēbit, *The Lord will provide.*
ex tempore, *without preparation* (lit., *according to the time*).
in omnia parātus, *prepared for all things.*
Fortēs Fortūna adiuvat, *Fortune aids the brave.*
Arma nōn servant modum, *Arms* (*war*) *do not preserve restraint.*
Vānitās vānitātum et omnia vānitās, *Vanity of vanities, and all* (*is*) *vanity* (from the Vulgate, or Latin translation of the Bible, *Ecclesiastes, I,* 2).

400. Ablative of Respect

1. **Equī et hominēs nōn sunt parēs celeritāte,** *Horses and men are not equal in swiftness.*
2. **Puer erat vir factīs,** *The boy was a man in deeds.*
3. **Superāmur numerō, nōn animō,** *We are surpassed in number, not in courage.*

Observe the following points:

(*a*) The ablative limits the application respectively of an adjective, a noun, and a verb.

(*b*) No preposition is used in Latin, though in English we use the preposition *in*.

401. Rule. — *The ablative of respect (or specification) tells in what respect something is true.*

402. Exercises

Oral. 1. Puer erat celer pede sed studiīs ab omnibus superābātur. 2. Mīlitēs nostrī cum magnā celeritāte sine impedīmentīs ad flūmen prōcessērunt. 3. Homō erat magnus auctōritāte. 4. Erāmus parēs hostibus neque mīlitibus neque nāvibus. 5. Omnēs hostēs ē nostrīs fīnibus certē pellēmus. 6. Pāx et amīcitia cum fīnitimīs cīvitātibus ā Rōmānīs cōnfirmātae sunt. 7. Colōnī ex patriā migrant et in variīs terrīs cīvitātem petunt.

Written. 1. We cannot all be swift of foot. 2. He was king in name, but he had not the authority of a king. 3. Does a horse excel a boy in swiftness? 4. Inasmuch as we have been carefully taught,[1] we ought to remember new words. 5. (Now that) peace has been established,[1] free citizens will maintain the freedom of the state.

403. Cīneās et Pyrrhus

Pyrrhus erat rēx Ēpīrī. Cīneās, quī erat lēgātus in Pyrrhī castrīs et reliquōs lēgātōs auctōritāte superābat, cōnsilia Pyrrhī nōn semper probābat. Quondam Pyrrhus dīxit: "In Italiam prōcēdere et Rōmam superāre parō."

Cīneās, "Superātīs Rōmānīs," inquit, "quid est tibi in animō[2] facere, rēx fortis?"

---

[1] See **365.** [2] **quid . . . animō,** *what do you intend?*

"Italiae fīnitima est īnsula Sicilia," inquit rēx, "quam facile erit armīs occupāre."

Tum Cīneās, "Occupātā Siciliā," inquit, "quid posteā faciēs?"

Pyrrhus respondit: "Posteā trāns mare in Āfricam mīlitēs meōs trānsportābō et hostēs, quī celeritāte mīlitibus meīs nōn parēs sunt, pellam."

Cīneās, "Pulsīs hostibus," inquit, "quid tum faciēs?"

"Tum, Cīneā,"[1] inquit Pyrrhus, "vītam in pāce ōtiōque agam."

Magnā celeritāte Cīneās respondit: "Cūr nōn in pāce ōtiōque etiam nunc vītam agis?"

FIG. 116. PYRRHUS

[1] Vocative.

FIG. 117. MAGNĀ CELERITĀTE ITER FACIT

The emperor Hadrian leaves his villa near Tivoli. From a painting by Forti.

SIXTH REVIEW (LESSONS L–LVII)

404. Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. auctor
2. auctōritās
3. caput
4. celeritās
5. cīvis
6. cīvitās
7. corpus
8. dux
9. fīnis
10. flūmen
11. homō
12. hostis
13. impedīmentum
14. iter
15. iūs
16. lēx
17. lībertās
18. mare
19. mīles
20. mōns
21. nāvis
22. nōmen
23. ōrdō
24. pāx
25. pēs
26. rēx
27. salūs
28. tempus
29. vulnus

Adjectives

30. celer
31. facilis
32. fortis
33. omnis
34. pār

Verbs

35. claudō
36. cōnfirmō
37. expediō
38. impediō
39. pellō
40. premō
41. superō
42. tendō
43. vertō

Adverb

44. posteā

Preposition

45. post

405 Vocabulary Review

NOUNS

1. *author*
2. *authority*
3. *head*
4. *swiftness*
5. *citizen*
6. *state*
7. *body*
8. *leader*
9. *end*
10. *river*
11. *man*
12. *enemy*
13. *hindrance*
14. *journey*
15. *right*
16. *law*
17. *freedom*
18. *sea*
19. *soldier*
20. *mountain*
21. *ship*
22. *name*
23. *order*
24. *peace*
25. *foot*
26. *king*
27. *health, safety*
28. *time*
29. *wound*

ADJECTIVES

30. *swift*
31. *easy*
32. *strong*
33. *all*
34. *equal*

VERBS

35. *close*
36. *make firm*
37. *set free*
38. *hinder*
39. *drive*
40. *press*
41. *overcome*
42. *stretch*
43. *turn*

ADVERB

44. *afterwards*

PREPOSITION

45. *behind*

406. Review of the Third Declension

(1) Decline **dux fortis, lībertās nostra, omnis mīles, rēx magnus, nāvis pulchra.**

(2) Give the following in Latin:

(*a*) *small authority* in the nom., sing. and plur.
(*b*) *an easy journey* in the gen., sing. and plur.
(*c*) *a good citizen* in the dat., sing. and plur.
(*d*) *a brave enemy* in the acc., sing. and plur.
(*e*) *the deep sea* in the abl., sing. and plur.

(3) Review the **classes of *i*-stem nouns,** with one example of each, giving (*a*) genitive singular, (*b*) ablative singular, (*c*) genitive plural, (*d*) accusative plural.

407. Review of Verbs

Give the synopsis of **impediō,** 3rd plur., act.; **premō,** 1st plur., pass.; **superō,** 3rd sing., act.; **videō,** 2nd plur., pass.; **fugiō,** 2nd sing., act.

408. How to Learn Words

Repetition is the first law of memory, or, as the Romans said, **Repetītiō est māter studiōrum.** New words must be repeated often enough to fix them in your mind for future use. You will find the following device helpful:

After studying the new vocabulary, noting carefully the genitive singular and gender of every noun, the principal parts of each verb, etc., close the book and write on a narrow slip of paper the English meanings (not the Latin) of as many of the Latin words as you can recall. Then open your book and check up your list, filling in any blanks. Close the book again and, on the other side of the slip, write the full Latin form of each English word, and afterwards check mistakes by referring to the book. Close the book once more. With the slip in your hand, give the English meanings from the Latin list. After mastering the Latin words so that you do not need to turn the slip for the meaning of a single word, take the English side and proceed in the same way until you can give the Latin for every English word, without turning the paper. Another way is to write a Latin word on one side of a slip of paper or a small card and the English meaning on the other side. When you find that you know a word thoroughly, put the slip to one side.

Association is the second law of memory. In order to make use of this important principle in mastering new words, try at once to give an English derivative for every new Latin word.[1] Wherever possible, recall the *primitive* or simple word from which the new word has been formed; *e.g.* **amīcus, inimīcus, amīcitia** — all from **amō,** *I love.*

[1] Classes using the *vocabulary notebook* method will find nothing new in this suggestion.

409. English Word Studies

(*a*) Give the Latin noun suggested by each of the following: *civil, finish, submarine, navigate, author, corpulent, legislate, nominal, decapitate.*

(*b*) Give the Latin verb suggested by each of the following: *expedite, press, verse, attention, repellent.*

(*c*) Give the Latin adjective suggested by each of the following: *omnipresent, celerity, facilitate, disparity, fortitude.*

(*d*) Find and use in sentences as many English derivatives as possible from **parō, teneō, agō,** and **scrībō.**

Enter the derivatives in your notebook, using a separate page for each Latin word.

LESSON LVIII

410. THE STORY OF LUCIUS (*Cont.*)

Deī

Rōmānī multōs deōs habuērunt. Deōs in omnibus locīs vīdērunt — in terrā, in agrīs, in frūmentō, in montibus, in silvīs, in undīs maris, in aquā flūminum, in omnī nātūrā. Erant magnī deī et parvī deī, deī deaeque. Inter magnōs deōs prīmus erat Iuppiter, rēx deōrum hominumque, quī in caelō habitābat et fulmine malōs terrēbat. Iūnō erat uxor Iovis[1] et rēgīna deōrum. Venus erat pulchra dea amōris. Mārs, deus bellī, arma pugnāsque amābat. Mercurius erat celer nūntius deōrum. Neptūnus erat deus maris, quī equōs in undīs regēbat. Reliquī magnī deī erant Cerēs, dea frūmentī, Minerva, dea sapientiae, Diāna, dea silvārum, Vulcānus, deus ignis, Apollō, deus ōrāculōrum, Bacchus, deus vīnī.

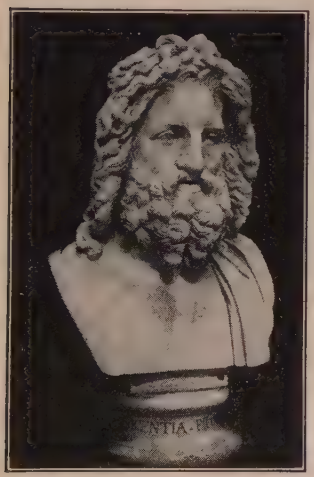


FIG. 118. IUPPITER

STRANGE GODS

Lūcius noster nōmina omnium magnōrum et multōrum parvōrum deōrum cognōverat — quod nōn facile erat; nam magnus erat numerus deōrum deārumque.

[1] Genitive singular of **Iuppiter.**

Etiam "terminus agrōrum" deus erat. Concordiam, Victōriam, Salūtem, Pācem, Fortūnam Rōmānī deās vocāvērunt, quod sacrae erant et ā Rōmānīs amābantur. Etiam pecūnia ā Rōmānīs amābātur, sed tamen (ut scrībit auctor Rōmānus, Iuvenālis) nōn dea fuit neque in templō habitāvit.

Fig. 119. Iūnō

Gods of the Home

Erant etiam deī familiae, prīmī quōs Lūcius cognōverat. Lār erat deus quī familiam cōnservābat. Penātēs erant deī quī cibum servābant. Vesta erat dea focī, in quō cibus parābātur. Ad focum erant parvae fōrmae deōrum. Ibi, omnibus līberīs convocātīs, pater Lūcī deīs grātiās agēbat et cibum dōnābat. Quondam nōn multus cibus erat, sed tamen pater deīs dōnābat. Lūcius ā patre petit: "Cūr cibus deīs ā tē datur? Nōn multum habēmus." Pater respondit: "Cibō datō, deī hominibus magna beneficia et longam vītam dabunt."

GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE

411. Roman Religion

In the oldest form of the Roman religion there was a god or spirit for almost everything — even for the hinges of the door. Essentially this was a religion of

the family. The worship came to center about the household god known as the Lar (plural, Lares). Other household gods of importance were Vesta, goddess of the hearth, the Penates, gods of the food supply, and the Genius, or guardian spirit of the head of the house. This family worship remained the most vital part of Roman religion.

FIG. 120. SHRINE
From a house in Pompeii.

There were many other gods. In course of time, as Greek influence increased, some of these were identified with the chief Greek gods: Jupiter with Zeus, Mars with Ares, etc. These gods all had their special functions: Neptune was god of the sea, Ceres was the goddess of grain, etc.

The identification of the Greek and Roman gods illustrates a common practice among the Romans, that of borrowing gods from other people. First they borrowed from their neighbors, later from people farther away. So in the course of time various religions were introduced from Egypt, Asia Minor, and Persia.

Among the Romans religion was the business of the state. Temples were built and restored by the government, and the priests, including the **pontifex maximus,** or chief priest, were government officials.

One important phase of the official religion was the

attempt to determine the will of the gods in various ways. The augurs were a group of priests whose business it was to determine whether a certain important act (such as a military expedition) would be successful. This they did by watching the flight of birds. Certain movements were supposed to indicate success; others, failure. Many intelligent Romans lost faith in this practice but kept it up in order to influence the more ignorant classes. Another practice, borrowed from the Etruscans, was to examine the entrails of animals for light as to the will of the gods. These two methods were official and were used before important matters were undertaken. Private persons also resorted to numerous unofficial fortune tellers, such as astrologers.

With so many gods to worship, the Romans naturally had very many holidays. Some of these were celebrated with amusements as well as religious observances, as is true of our holidays to-day. The amusements about which you have read (**356**) developed in this way.

Read McDaniel, pp. 101–105; Tappan, pp. 65–67; Botsford, pp. 27–29.

FIG. 121. ANIMALS FOR SACRIFICE
From a relief in the Forum at Rome.

LESSON LIX

THE DEMONSTRATIVES *HIC* AND *ILLE*

412. Vocabulary

cur′rō, –ere, cucur′rī, cur′sus, *run*	(current)
mā′ter, mā′tris, f., *mother*	(maternal)
pa′ter, pa′tris, m., *father*	(paternal)
prae′ceps, gen. **praeci′pitis,** *headlong, steep*	(precipice)

413. English Word Study: Importance of the Third Declension

The third declension is very important in Latin on account of the number of words which belong to it. Hence more English words are derived from nouns and adjectives of this declension than from any other declension. The English word is usually derived from the base, and not from the nominative. It is therefore doubly important to memorize the genitive, from which the base is obtained. It would be difficult to see that *itinerary* is derived from **iter** if one did not know that the genitive is **itineris.** Examine the words of the third declension studied thus far, and see how many have derivatives from the base. Note the help given for English spelling: *tempo̲ral, corpo̲ral, mili̲tary, mari̲time, nomi̲nal,* etc.

On the other hand, the English derivative will help you determine the genitive. In the following list of words, a derivative is placed after each; give the genitive: **religiō** (*religion*), **sermō** (*sermon*), **latus** (*lateral*), **rādīx** (*radical*), **orīgō** (*original*), **ēruptiō** (*eruption*), **custōs** (*custody*), **dēns** (*dental*), **mōs** (*moral*).

414. The Demonstratives *Hic* and *Ille* (*Study* 611, *d.*)

In English, *this* and *that* are used to point out persons or objects and are therefore called **demonstratives.** They may be used as adjectives or pronouns; as, ***This** man did not write **that.***

In Latin, **hic** means *this* (*near* the speaker in place or thought), while **ille** means *that* (*more distant* from the speaker). From such expressions as *this man, that woman,* etc., the demonstrative adjectives **hic** and **ille** came to be used as substitutes for a third person pronoun *he, she, it.* The personal pronoun, however, is usually not required in Latin.

hic, *this*

	Singular			Plural		
Nom.	**hic**	**haec**	**hoc**	**hī**	**hae**	**haec**
Gen.	**hu′ius**	**hu′ius**	**hu′ius**	**hō′rum**	**hā′rum**	**hō′rum**
Dat.	**huic**	**huic**	**huic**	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**
Acc.	**hunc**	**hanc**	**hoc**	**hōs**	**hās**	**haec**
Abl.	**hōc**	**hāc**	**hōc**	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**

ille, *that*

	Singular			Plural		
Nom.	**il′le**	**il′la**	**il′lud**	**il′lī**	**il′lae**	**il′la**
Gen.	**illī′us**	**illī′us**	**illī′us**	**illō′rum**	**illā′rum**	**illō′rum**
Dat.	**il′lī**	**il′lī**	**il′lī**	**il′līs**	**il′līs**	**il′līs**
Acc.	**il′lum**	**il′lam**	**il′lud**	**il′lōs**	**il′lās**	**il′la**
Abl.	**il′lō**	**il′lā**	**il′lō**	**il′līs**	**il′līs**	**il′līs**

Observe that both **hic** and **ille** in the plural are declined regularly, like **bonus, –a, –um,** with the exception of the nominative and accusative plural neuter of **hic** (**haec**). Note that **hic** and **ille** resemble **quī** in the genitive singular.

415. Position of Demonstratives

Demonstrative adjectives regularly precede their nouns in Latin and English: *this boy*, **hic puer**; *that girl*, **illa puella**. Therefore, when *that* precedes its noun, it is a demonstrative adjective (**ille**); when it follows, it is a relative pronoun (**quī**), equivalent to *who* or *which: The man **that** I saw was famous*, **Vir *quem*** (not **illum**) **vīdī clārus erat.**

416. Exercises

Oral. 1. Haec est mea patria; nam ego cīvis Americānus sum. 2. Hī hominēs sunt patris meī amīcī; illī sunt inimīcī. 3. Hunc cognōvī sed illum ante hoc tempus nōn vīdī. 4. Ille erat dux ducum. 5. Praeceps in illum virum cucurrī, quod illum nōn vīdī. 6. Māter mea huic hominī magnam grātiam habet, quod hic patrem meum ex undīs servāvit.

Written. 1. My father and mother are expecting me. 2. This is my money; that is yours. 3. This boy excels that (one) in (his) studies. 4. This road is steep; that is easy. 5. Our soldiers defeated the enemy's forces by capturing that town.[1]

417. Sāturnus et Iuppiter

Prīmus rēx deōrum Ūranus erat. Hunc fīlius Sāturnus ex rēgnō expulit. Ūranus hīs verbīs Sāturnum monuit: "Tempus auctōritātis tuae nōn longum erit; nam tū ā fīliō tuō expellēris." Hīs verbīs territus Sāturnus omnēs fīliōs dēvorābat. Sed māter ūnum quem

[1] Use ablative absolute.

ante[1] reliquōs amābat callidō cōnsiliō servāvit. Hic fuit Iuppiter. Post paucōs annōs hic patrem expulit et rēgnum illīus occupāvit. Sāturnus reliquōs fīliōs reddere coāctus est. Rēgiam in monte Olympō Iuppiter posuit, ex quō in omnēs partēs spectāre poterat. Frātrēs convocāvit. Neptūnō maris rēgnum, Plūtōnī rēgnum Īnferōrum[2] dedit.

Sed posteā Gigantēs,[3] fīliī Terrae, cum deīs bellum gessērunt. Ad Olympum praecipitēs cucurrērunt[4] sed ā deīs superātī poenīs dūrīs affectī sunt.

Read Sabin, pp. 90–91; Gayley, p. 59; Guerber, pp. 18–20.

Fig. 122. "Gigantēs cum Deīs Bellum Gessērunt"

Athena (Minerva) is defeating the Giants. On the right, Victory is approaching her. From a relief once on an altar in Pergamum. The relief is now in Berlin.

[1] *more than.* [2] *of the shades* (in Hades). [3] *the Giants.* [4] From **currō.**

418. A LATIN PLAY

VICTŌRIA MĀTRIS

Persōnae

Gāia, *Rōmāna* — **Pyrrhus,** *rēx Graecōrum*
Mārcus, *parvus fīlius Gāiae* — **Mīlitēs Graecī**

LOCUS: in castrīs relictīs in Campāniā. TEMPUS: annō CCLXXV ante Christum.

Gāia. Iuppiter, tē vocāmus! Nōbīs et Rōmae auxilium dā!

Mārcus. Māter! Quid dīcis? Cūr pater nōn venit?

Gāia. Pater longē abest. Nōn veniet.

Mār. Sed cūr nōn cum patre sumus?

Gāia. Cum duce Dentātō pugnat — magnum est perīculum Rōmae nostrae! Graecī nunc per Campāniam veniunt!

Mār. Per Campāniam?

Gāia. Sed ad haec castra relicta fūgimus. In hōc locō nōs nōn invenient.

Mār. Nōn timeō. Cum Graecīs pugnābō!

Gāia. Mātrēs et puerī patriae auxilium dare nōn possunt; pugnāre est virōrum officium.

Mār. Vir sum. Possum pugnāre. Nōnne vidēs? (*Gladium relīctum capit.*)

Gāia. Āh, meus puer erit fortis mīles — sed quid est? Pedēs equōrum audiō.

Vōx Mīlitis Graecī. Castra relicta sunt; nēmo adest.

Mār. Cūr territa es, māter? Cūr mē tenēs?

Gāia. Graecī sunt! Iuppiter, tē vocāmus! (*Per portam veniunt Pyrrhus et mīlitēs Graecī.*)

Pyrrhus. Ho! Quis adest?

Mīles Graecus. Puer et eius[1] māter!

Gāia. Cūr ad hunc locum vēnistis, Graecī? Haec terra, haec castra sunt Rōmāna!

Mīles. Sunt Rōmāna — sed erunt Graeca!

Mār. Nōn erunt Graeca! Virī Rōmānī sunt fortēs!

Pyr. Oho! Etiam puer fortis esse vidētur. Fortem puerum petō. Potesne litterās ad castra Graecōrum portāre?

Gāia. Nōn portābit; Rōmānus est!

Pyr. Nōnne omnēs viās cognōvistī, puer? Vidēsne hanc pecūniam? Tua erit —

Gāia. Graecī pecūniam capiunt et patriam relinquunt; nōs sumus Rōmānī!

Pyr. Pyrrhus sum, rēx Graecōrum. Hunc puerum interficere possum. Properāre dēbēmus. Puer litterās portābit. (*Mīlitēs ad Gāiam et Mārcum accēdunt. Gāia gladium relīctum capit et tenet, sed Pyrrhus eum nōn videt.*)

Gāia. Meus fīlius servus Graecōrum nōn erit!

Mīles. Quid faciētis? Fugere nōn potestis, pugnāre nōn potestis!

Gāia. Sed hoc facere possum — prō patriā meā!

Mār. Māter! (*Gāia gladiō Mārcum interficit, tum sē.*)[2]

Mīlitēs. Oh! (*Pyrrhus Gāiam et Mārcum spectat.*)

Pyr. Ita mātrēs Rōmānae pugnant! Quid virī facient?

(*Exeunt tardē*)

---

[1] *his.* [2] *herself.*

LESSON LX

ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN

419. Vocabulary

aes′tās, aestā′tis, f., *summer*
cor, cor′dis, n., *heart* (cordial)
hi′ems, hi′emis, f., *winter*
ni′hil (indeclinable), *nothing* (nihilist)
ti′meō, –ē′re, ti′muī, ——, *fear, be afraid* (timid)

420. Latin Phrases in English

Alma Māter, *fostering mother*, applied to an educational institution.

A.D. (**annō Dominī**), *in the year of our Lord.*

aut Caesar aut nihil, *either Caesar or nothing.*

iūstitia omnibus, *justice for all* (motto of the District of Columbia).

Pater Noster, *Our Father, i.e.* the Lord's Prayer, which begins with these words.

prīmus inter parēs, *first among his equals.*

Stābat Māter, *The mother was standing* — a thirteenth-century Latin hymn which begins with these words.

421. Ablative of Time When

In English, adverbial phrases with or without the prepositions *in, on,* etc. are used to express time: *last summer, in winter.*

In Latin, time when is expressed by the ablative, *usually without a preposition.*

1. **Illō annō hostēs nōn timuimus,** *That year we did not fear the enemy.*

2. **Aestāte agrī semper sunt pulchrī,** *In summer the fields are always beautiful.*

Note. — Compare with the ablative of place where (**95,** *a*). Observe that when *at*, *in*, or *on* denotes *time* instead of *place*, no preposition is used in Latin.

422. Exercises

Oral. 1. Prō Deō et patriā! Haec clāra verba corda virōrum semper incitāvērunt. 2. Hōc annō nihil timēmus, quod cōpiam frūmentī habēmus. 3. Cūr cīvitās huic cīvī pecūniam dedit? Quod patriam annō Bellī Magnī servāvit. 4. Prōvinciā occupātā, mīlitēs nostrī, paucī numerō sed corde fortēs, auxilia exspectābant. 5. Hic puer et aestāte et hieme labōrat, quod pater māterque pecūniam nōn habent. 6. Quīntā hōrā omnēs servī, lībertāte obtentā, ad flūmen cum magnā celeritāte fūgērunt.

Written. 1. Good citizens fear God and love (their) country. 2. If[1] Marcus is our leader, we shall not be defeated by the enemy this winter. 3. In summer the fields are beautiful. 4. In a few years America will have many ships on every sea.

423. Caedicius Fortis

Prīmō bellō Pūnicō hostēs locum nātūrā mūnītum occupāverant, et perīculum mīlitum Rōmānōrum magnum erat. Tribūnus mīlitum Rōmānus, cui[2] nōmen Caedicius erat, ad ducem vēnit et dīxit, locō quōdam[3] mōnstrātō:

"Cōpiās tuās servāre poteris sī ad illum locum cccc mīlitēs prōcēdere iubēbis. Hostēs, ubi hōs mīlitēs vīderint, proelium committent et hōs omnēs interficient.

[1] Use ablative absolute. [2] *whose name.* [3] *certain.*

Dum haec faciunt, facile erit reliquōs mīlitēs ex hōc locō ēdūcere. Haec est sōla via salūtis."

"Bonum tuum cōnsilium probō," inquit dux, "sed quis illōs in mortem certam dūcet?"

"Cūr mē nōn mittis?" respondit tribūnus.

Itaque dux tribūnō grātiās ēgit et hunc cum cccc mīlitibus contrā hostēs mīsit. Fortēs Rōmānī nihil timuērunt. Neque cessērunt neque fūgērunt sed magnīs cōpiīs hostium superātī sunt. Omnēs aut vītam āmīsērunt aut vulnera accēpērunt. Interim reliquī mīlitēs Rōmānī integrī salūtem petīvērunt.

Deī praemium tribūnō ob ēgregium exemplum dōnāvērunt; nam vītam nōn āmīsit. Vulnera multa accēpit sed neque in capite neque in corde.

Fig. 123. Caedicius Dīxit: "Haec Est Sōla Via Salūtis"

LESSON LXI

THE DEMONSTRATIVE *IS*

424. Vocabulary

commū′nis, –e, *common* (communistic)
dum, conj., *while*
incer′tus, –a, –um, *uncertain* [***cernō***]
* **pars, par′tis, par′tium,** f., *part* (partition)
remit′tō, –ere, remī′sī, remis′sus, (lit., *let back*), *relax, send back* [***mittō***]
spē′rō, –ā′re, –ā′vī, –ā′tus, *hope* (*for*) (despair)
spī′rō, –ā′re, –ā′vī, –ā′tus, *breathe* (inspiration)

425. The Demonstrative *Is*

is, *this, that; he, she, it*					
	SINGULAR			PLURAL	
Nom.	**is**	**e′a**	**id**	**e′ī (i′ī)**	**e′ae**	**e′a**
Gen.	**e′ius**	**e′ius**	**e′ius**	**eō′rum**	**eā′rum**	**eō′rum**
Dat.	**e′ī**	**e′ī**	**e′ī**	**e′īs (i′īs)**	**e′īs (i′īs)**	**e′īs (i′īs)**
Acc.	**e′um**	**e′am**	**id**	**e′ōs**	**e′ās**	**e′a**
Abl.	**e′ō**	**e′ā**	**e′ō**	**e′īs (i′īs)**	**e′īs (i′īs)**	**e′īs (i′īs)**

426. How *Is* Is Used. — Instead of pointing, in a forceful way, to a definite person or thing, as **hic** and **ille** do, **is** usually refers to somebody or something just mentioned. When used without a noun, it is commonly translated as a personal pronoun, *he*, *she*, or *it;* accordingly, the genitive **eius** may be translated *his*, *her*, *its*, while **eōrum** (m. and n.) and **eārum** (f.) mean *their*. **Is** often serves as the antecedent of a relative clause; as, **Is quī videt probat,** *He who sees approves.*

427. Exercises

Oral. 1. Dum spīrō spērō. 2. Commūne perīculum concordiam facit. 3. Certa āmittimus dum incerta petimus. 4. Is cui librōs dedī eōs nōn remīsit. 5. Magna pars eius viae ā Rōmānīs mūnīta est. 6. Puellās et eārum mātrem in oppidō vīdī. 7. Hostibus pulsīs, vigiliam nostram nōn remittēmus. 8. Eī puerī quōs aestāte vīdimus erant eius discipulī.

Written. 1. This man is my teacher; that man is her father. 2. We saw him and his mother on the street. 3. Soldiers, to whom have you given a part of the booty? 4. We shall see her and her father this summer.

428. English Word Studies: The Names of the Months

In early Roman times the year began March 1, and February was the last month. We still use the ancient Roman names of the months. **March** was named after Mars. **April** was the *opening* month (**aperiō**), when the earth seems to open up. **May** is the month when things become *bigger* (**maior**). **June** is Juno's month. **July** was originally called **Quīnctīlis,** the *fifth* month, but was renamed in honor of Julius Caesar after he had the calendar reformed. Similarly **August** was originally **Sextīlis,** the *sixth* month, but was renamed after the Emperor Augustus. **September** was originally the *seventh* month and kept its name even after it later became the ninth; similarly, **October, November, December. January** was named after **Janus,** the god of beginnings. **February** was the time of purification (**fēbrua**), like the Christian Lent.

429. Cīvitās Rōmāna

Rōma ā Trōiānīs et Latīnīs cōnstitūta est. Hae duae partēs cīvitātis Rōmānae contrā perīcula commūnia pugnāvērunt. Ubi cīvitās concordiā aucta est, rēgēs populīque fīnitimī praedae cupiditāte adductī cum Rōmānīs bella gerēbant. Paucī ex amīcīs[1] auxilium Rōmānīs dabant, quod perīculīs territī sunt. Sed Rōmānī properābant, parābant, cum hostibus proelia committēbant, lībertātem patriamque armīs dēfendēbant. Posteā, ubi hostēs virtūte pepulērunt, sociīs et amīcīs auxilium ferēbant. Hōc modō novae amīcitiae ab eīs parābantur.

Fig. 124. The Small Theater at Pompeii as It Is

[1] ex amīcīs = amīcōrum.

Eī Rōmānī quōrum corpora ob annōs nōn firma erant sed quī bonō cōnsiliō valēbant dē rē pūblicā[1] cōnsulēbantur et ob aetātem patrēs vel senātōrēs appellābantur.

Prīmō rēgēs erant, quī lībertātem cōnservābant et rem pūblicam augēbant, sed posteā, quod hī superbī fuērunt, Rōmānī creāvērunt cōnsulēs.

Eō tempore omnēs Rōmānī glōriam cupīvērunt. Virī fortēs bella amābant, in castrīs labōrābant, nihil timēbant: virtūs omnia superāverat. Itaque populus Rōmānus magnās hostium cōpiās paucīs mīlitibus in fugam dabat, oppida nātūrā mūnīta pugnīs capiēbat. Hostibus superātīs, Rōmānī aequē regēbant. Iūra bellī pācisque cōnservābant. Hōc modō auctōritātem cōnfirmābant. Post Pūnica bella Rōmānī fuērunt dominī omnium terrārum mariumque.

FIG. 125. THE SMALL THEATER AT POMPEII AS IT WAS

Sed tum fortūna Rōmānōs superāvit. Hī pecūniam imperiumque, nōn iam glōriam spērāvērunt. Superbī, nōn iam aequī fuērunt. Iūra lēgēsque nōn iam cōnservāvērunt.

[1] Translate by the English derivative of this compound noun.

LESSON LXII

THE DEMONSTRATIVE *ĪDEM*

430. Vocabulary

expug′nō, –ā′re, –ā′vī, –ā′tus, (lit., *fight it out*), *capture by assault* [***pugnō***]

ge′nus, ge′neris, n., *birth, race, kind* (generation)

interci′piō, –ere, –cē′pī, –cep′tus, *intercept* [***capiō***]

nō′bilis, –e, (lit., "know-able"), *distinguished, noble* [***nōscō***]

suppli′cium, suppli′cī, n., *punishment* [***plicō***]

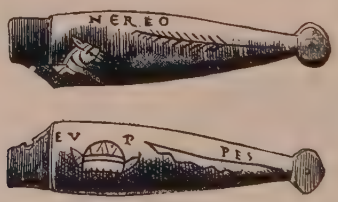


FIG. 126. HANDLE OF A ROMAN POCKETKNIFE

On one side is the name of a race horse; on the other, that of a driver.

431. Latin Phrases in English

Homō prōpōnit, sed Deus dispōnit, *Man proposes, but God disposes.*

i.e. (**id est**), *that is.*

id. (**idem**), *the same* (*i.e.* as mentioned above).

ibid. (**ibīdem**), *in the same place.*

quid prō quō, *something for something* ("tit for tat").

semper īdem, *always the same.*

432. The Demonstrative *Īdem*

The demonstrative **īdem** is a compound of **is** and **–dem,** with slight changes for ease of pronunciation:

īdem, *same*

		SINGULAR	
Nom.	ī′dem	e′ădem	ĭ′dem
Gen.	eius′dem	eius′dem	eius′dem
Dat.	eī′dem	eī′dem	eī′dem
Acc.	eun′dem	ean′dem	ĭ′dem
Abl.	eō′dem	eā′dem	eō′dem
		PLURAL	
Nom.	eī′dem (ī′dem)	eae′dem	e′ădem
Gen.	eōrun′dem	eārun′dem	eōrun′dem
Dat.	eīs′dem (īs′dem)	eīs′dem (īs′dem)	eīs′dem (īs′dem)
Acc.	eōs′dem	eās′dem	e′ădem
Abl.	eīs′dem (īs′dem)	eīs′dem (īs′dem)	eīs′dem (īs′dem)

433. Exercises

Oral. 1. Eōdem annō lībertās servīs data est. 2. Īdem dux eum ad supplicium trahī iussit. 3. Dum omnia timēmus, victōriam spērāre nōn possumus. 4. Is eōdem tempore bellum in fīnibus Germānōrum gerēbat. 5. Omnēs hominēs līberī parēsque esse dēbent, quod omnēs eundem Deum habent. 6. Hic homō nōbilī genere et auctōritāte sed nōn magnīs factīs antecēdit. 7. Oppidō expugnātō, Caesaris cōpiae impedīmenta hostium intercēpērunt. 8. Temporibus magnī perīculī quem aut quid timēbimus? Dominus prōvidēbit.

Written. 1. His punishment terrified the rest. 2. Their towns were taken-by-assault. 3. He will not send back the same book. 4. When I heard that, I was no longer afraid. 5. I shall not see the same boys this summer.

434. Midās

Midās, rēx Phrygiae, Sīlēnō, magistrō deī Bacchī, auxilium dederat. Ob hanc causam ēgregiō praemiō ā deō dōnātus est: deus parātus fuit eī dare id quod cupīvit. Midās dīxit: "Sī omnia quae corpore meō tetigerō[1] in aurum mūtābuntur, mihi grātum erit."

Hōc factō, omnia quae rēx tangēbat in aurum mūtābantur. Terram tangit: nōn iam terra est sed aurum. Aquam tangit: eōdem modō in aurum mūtātur. Tum grātiās Bacchō prō magnō praemiō ēgit.

Tum cēnam ēgregiam et magnam parārī iussit et omnia genera cibōrum in mēnsā pōnī. Haec mēnsa ab eō tācta erat et mūtāta in aurum. Dum magnā celeritāte servī cēnam parant, Midās amīcōs nōbilēs convocāvit. Grātō animō bonam cēnam quae parāta erat spectāvit. Tum cibum cēpit — et cibus in aurum mūtātus est. Vīnum in mēnsā pōnī iussit. Hoc tangit et nōn iam idem est sed in aurum mūtātur. Omnibus amīcīs ēgregia cēna grāta fuit sed nōn rēgī. Inter multōs cibōs edere[2] nōn potuit.

Tandem ad Bacchum, auctōrem malōrum, rēx miser prōcessit et fīnem supplicī petīvit — nam supplicium, nōn iam praemium erat id quod ā deō accēperat. Bacchus iussit eum in flūmine Pactōlō sē[3] lavāre. Praeceps rēx ad flūmen cucurrit, ubi sē lāvit. Arēna[4] flūminis in aurum mūtāta est, et etiam nunc in hōc flūmine aurum est.

Read Sabin, pp. 19–21; Gayley, pp. 157–158; Guerber, pp. 177–179; Hawthorne, pp. 46–68.

---

[1] From **tangō**. [2] *eat*. [3] *himself*. [4] *sand*.

Fig.. 127. Pompeii, A.D. 79

LESSON LXIII

THE INTENSIVE *IPSE*

435. Vocabulary

co'lō, –ere, co'luī, cul'tus, *till, dwell in, worship*	(cultivate)
frā'ter, frā'tris, m., *brother*	(fraternal)
se'deō, –ē're, sē'dī, ses'sus, *sit*	(session)
so'ror, sorō'ris, f., *sister*	(sorority)

436. English Word Studies: The Norman-French Influence

We saw in earlier lessons (**337, 343**) how Latin words were introduced into English at its very beginning. A very important period of influence was after the Norman conquest of England (1066). The language of the Normans was an old form of French, itself descended from Latin. In the course of a few centuries, the English language underwent striking changes and adopted many French (Latin) words. These sometimes show considerable changes in the original spelling. Especially common is the addition of a vowel (cf. **558**).

Exercise. — Look up the Latin originals of *captain, vizor, homage, duke, peer, treason.* See Scott's *Ivanhoe,* Chap. I, for *pork, beef,* etc.

437. The Intensive in English and Latin

In English, compound pronouns are formed by joining *-self* to *my, your, him, her, it,* and the plural *-selves* to *our, your, them.* These compounds may be used in an intensive or emphatic sense; as, *I saw the man myself.*

In Latin, the pronoun **ipse** is a compound of **is** (**425**) and the intensive particle **-pse,** and therefore has purely intensive force: **Ipse hominem vīdī,** *I saw the man myself.* Note that **ipse** may be used alone in the nominative to emphasize an omitted subject. It is declined like **ille,** except in the neuter nominative and accusative singular.

ipse, *self*

	Singular			Plural		
Nom.	ip′se	ip′sa	ip′sum	ip′sī	ip′sae	ip′sa
Gen.	ipsī′us	ipsī′us	ipsī′us	ipsō′rum	ipsā′rum	ipsō′rum
Dat.	ip′sī	ip′sī	ip′sī	ip′sīs	ip′sīs	ip′sīs
Acc.	ip′sum	ip′sam	ip′sum	ip′sōs	ip′sās	ip′sa
Abl.	ip′sō	ip′sā	ip′sō	ip′sīs	ip′sīs	ip′sīs

438. Exercises

Oral. 1. Nōnne idem ipsī vīdistis, puerī? 2. Frātrēs et sorōrēs eiusdem familiae paria iūra habēre dēbent. 3. Quis est puer quī cum meā sorōre sedet? 4. Eō tempore ducem ipsum cum omnibus eius cōpiīs vīdī. 5. Quae officia soror tua ipsa suscipiet? 6. Colōnī agrōs in prōvinciā novā colunt et ibi remanent. 7. Ille homō "agricola" appellātur quod agrōs colit. 8. Rōmānī deōs multōs habēbant quōs colēbant.

Written. 1. These (men) are standing; those are sitting. 2. The same winter they saw and heard him themselves. 3. These letters were written by the king himself. 4. We ourselves shall get much money together in a few years. 5. My brother was in that battle.

439. Horātius

Tarquiniī,[1] ā Rōmānīs pulsī, ā Porsenā, rēge Etrūscōrum, auxilium petīvērunt. Itaque Porsena cum magnīs cōpiīs Rōmam[2] vēnit. Rōmānī territī sunt, quod magna erat potestās Etrūscōrum magnumque Porsenae nōmen. Rōmānī ex agrīs in oppidum migrant; oppidum ipsum praesidiīs dēfendunt. Pars urbis mūrīs, pars Tiberī flūmine mūnīta est. Pōns sublicius[3] iter hostibus dabat, sed ēgregius vir prohibuit, Horātius Coclēs, illō cognōmine appellātus quod in proeliō oculum āmīserat. Is, extrēmā pontis parte occupātā, cōpiās hostium sōlus sine auxiliō sustinuit et Rōmānōs quī fugiēbant pontem gladiīs rumpere iussit. Ipsa audācia hostēs terruit. Ponte ruptō,[4] armātus in Tiberim dēsiluit et per multa tēla incolumis[5] ad Rōmānōs trānāvit. Grāta ob factum clārum eius cīvitās fuit. Multī agrī eī pūblicē datī sunt et statua eius in Comitiō posita est.

Read Haaren and Poland, pp. 58–60; Guerber (*Story*), pp. 73–74; Harding, pp. 25–39; Macaulay's *Lays of Ancient Rome*, "Horatius," 26–67.

A Latin Pun

Equus in stabulō est sed nōn ēst, The horse *is* in the stable but does not *eat* (**est** means *is;* **ēst** means *eat*).

---

[1] The Etruscan kings who ruled Rome in the sixth century, B.C.
[2] Supply *to*. [3] *made of piles*. [4] Cf. **rumpō**. [5] *unharmed*.

LESSON LXIV

DECLENSION OF *ŪNUS*

440. Vocabulary

a′lius, a′lia, a′liud,[1] *other, another* (alias)
(**a′lius . . . a′lius,** *one . . . another;* **a′lii . . . a′lii,** *some . . . others*)
al′ter, al′tera, al′terum,[2] *the other* (of two) (alternate)
(**al′ter . . . al′ter,** *the one . . . the other*)
neu′ter, neu′tra, neu′trum, *neither* (of two) (neutral)
nūl′lus, nūl′la, nūl′lum, *no, none* (nullify)
sō′lus, sō′la, sō′lum, *alone, sole, only* (solitary)
tō′tus, tō′ta, tō′tum, *whole* (total)
ūl′lus, ūl′la, ūl′lum, *any*
ū′nus, ū′na, ū′num,[3] *one* (unit)

441. Declension of *Ūnus*

The numeral **ūnus** and the other words in the vocabulary of this lesson are irregular only in the genitive and dative singular of all genders. In these cases they are declined like **ipse** (**437**), in all others like **magnus.**

	Singular		
Nom.	ū′nus	ū′na	ū′num
Gen.	ūnī′us	ūnī′us	ūnī′us
Dat.	ū′nī	ū′nī	ū′nī
Acc.	ū′num	ū′nam	ū′num
Abl.	ū′nō	ū′nā	ū′nō

[1] Note that the neuter nominative and accusative singular end in **–d,** not **–m** (cf. **ille**).

[2] The genitive singular of **alter** ends in **–ĭus.**

[3] **Uter,** *which* (of two), and **uterque,** *each, both,* are likewise irregular and belong to this group but are comparatively unimportant.

Note. — Like **hic, ille,** and **is,** these adjectives are emphatic and accordingly precede their nouns.

442. Drill. — Decline in the singular **alius frāter, neutra soror,** and **tōtum oppidum.**

443. Words Often Confused

I

alius = *another,* implying a group of *three or more.*
alter = *the other,* i.e. *of two* and no more.

II

tōtus = *whole,* i.e. no part missing, not capable of being divided.
omnis = in singular *every,* as opposed to the adj. **nūllus,** *no;* in plural, **omnēs** = *all,* i.e. simply a collection of units or parts.

III

nūllus = *not any, no* — always an adjective.
nihil = *not a thing, nothing* — always an indeclinable noun.
nēmō[1] = *no man, no one* — always a noun.

444. Exercises

Oral. 1. Hostēs agrōs oppidaque tōtīus īnsulae vāstāvērunt. 2. Rēx neutrī fīliō rēgnum committet. 3. Is homō ipse ab aliīs accūsātus est sed ab aliīs dēfēnsus est. 4. Cōnsilia alterius ducis nōn erant grāta alterī. 5. Tōtum praesidium ex oppidō remōtum ad mare prōcēdere mātūrat. 6. Omnēs amīcī eius iam discessērunt et is sōlus nunc manet. 7. Accēpistīne ipse ūlla praemia prō meritīs tuīs? (*See* **212.**) Nūlla accēpī neque ūlla exspectō.

[1] See **495.**

Written. 1. To one sister I shall give money, to the other this book. 2. My brother and father spent part of that same summer alone in the woods. 3. Have you seen my mother and sister? I have seen neither. 4. In the summer the farmer tills the fields, but what does he do in winter? 5. We have already dispatched reinforcements, but there is no danger now.

445. English Word Studies: Spelling

Latin words are often very helpful in fixing the spelling of English words. In this lesson we shall consider words in which a double consonant occurs.

If the Latin word has a double consonant, it is usually preserved in English, except at the end of a word: *terrestrial*, but *inter* (from **terra**); *carriage*, but *car* (**carrus**); *rebelled*, but *rebel* (**bellum**); *remitted*, but *remit* (**remittō**). *Letter* has two *t*'s and *literature* only one in the root because the spelling of Latin **littera** varied.

Many prefixes bring about the doubling of consonants by assimilation. The most important are **ad**–, **con**–, **in**–, **ob**–, **ex**–, and **sub**–. If you will analyze the English word, you can often tell whether the consonant is to be doubled: **con**– and **modus** form **commodus**; prefix **ad**– and you get the English derivative *ac-commodate* with two *c*'s and two *m*'s. Similarly *commend* has two *m*'s; *re-com-mend* has two *m*'s but only one *c* because **re**– is never assimilated. Other examples of doubling through assimilation are *im-material*, *accelerate*, *suf-ficient*, *ef-ficient* (but *de-ficient*, for **dē**– is not assimilated).

Exercise. — Find five more examples of doubling of consonants as a result of assimilation.

446. Cicerō et Tīrō

Cicerō, ōrātor clārus, Tīrōnem, servum quī dīligentiā sapientiāque studiīs Cicerōnis magnum auxilium dabat, maximē amābat. Cicerō cum Tīrōne in Graeciā fuerat. Ubi in Italiam revertit, Tīrō sōlus in Graeciā relīctus est quod aeger fuit. Cicerō ad eum trēs epistulās in itinere eōdem diē[1] scrīpsit. Inter alia haec scrīpsit:

"Variē litterīs tuīs affectus sum, prīmā pāginā territus, alterā cōnfirmātus. Hōc tempore tē[2] neque marī neque itinerī committere dēbēs. Medicus tuus bonus est, ut[3] scrībis et ego audiō; sed cūrātiōnēs eius nōn probō; nam iūs[4] nōn dēbet stomachō[5] aegrō darī. Ad illum et ad Lysōnem[6] scrīpsī. Lysōnis nostrī neglegentiam nōn probō, quī, litterīs ā mē acceptīs, ipse nūllās remīsit. Sed Lysō Graecus est et omnium Graecōrum magna est neglegentia. In nūllā rē[7] properāre dēbēs.

Curium[8] iussī omnem pecūniam tibi dare quam cupis. Sī medicō pecūniam dabis, dīligentia eius augēbitur. Magna sunt tua in mē officia;[9] omnia superāveris, sī, ut[3] spērō, salūtem tuam cōnfirmātam vīderō. Anteā, dum magnā dīligentiā mihi auxilium dās,[10] nōn salūtem tuam cōnfirmāre potuistī; nunc tē nihil impedit. Omnia dēpōne; salūs in animō tuō esse dēbet."

Nōnne dominī bonī illīs temporibus erant? Etiam malī erant. Omnī aetāte bonī et malī hominēs fuērunt et sunt et semper erunt.

---

[1] Ablative. [2] *yourself.* [3] *as.* [4] *soup.* [5] Use the English derivative. [6] Tiro was staying at Lyso's house. [7] *thing.* [8] A banker. [9] *services.* [10] With **dum = dabās.**

LESSON LXV

THE PARTICIPLE: PRESENT AND FUTURE ACTIVE

447. Vocabulary

aliē′nus, –a, –um, *another's, unfavorable* [*alius*]
conten′dō, –ere, –ten′dī, –ten′tus, *struggle, hasten* [*tendō*]
expel′lō, –ere, ex′pulī, –pul′sus, *drive out* [*pellō*]
gra′vis, –e, *heavy, serious, severe* (gravitation)
op′primō, –ere, –pres′sī, –pres′sus, *overwhelm, surprise* [*premō*]
ro′gō, –ā′re, –ā′vī, –ā′tus, *ask* (interrogative)
vōx, vō′cis, f., *voice, remark* [*vocō*]

FIG. 128. ROMAN THEATER IN TIMGAD, ALGERIA

The stage buildings are in the foreground. Important people had chairs in the semicircular orchestra (on the ground level); the rest sat in the tiers of stone seats at the right.

448. Latin Phrases in English

in locō parentis, *in place of a parent.*
inter alia, *among other things.*
ipsō factō, *by the fact itself, thereby.*
obiter dictum, (*something*) *said by the way* (**ob iter**), *incidentally.*
Timeō Danaōs et dōna ferentēs, *I fear the Greeks even when they bring gifts* (Virgil).
ūnā vōce, *with one voice, unanimously.*
Vōx populī vōx Deī, *The voice of the people* (*is*) *the voice of God.*

449. Present Participle (*Study* 631.)

In English, the **present participle** has both an active and a passive form: (*a*) *I have a brother* **fighting** *in France;* (*b*) *The battle now* **being fought** *will be decisive.* In both examples the present participle *modifies a noun.* It is likewise used in making the progressive verb form: *My brother* **is fighting.** Here "fighting" does not modify the noun but is a part of the verb and denotes progressive action (*see* **23,** *b*).

In Latin, the **present participle** has only the active form. It is used to modify nouns or pronouns and never combines with the verb **sum** to form verb phrases. *My brother is fighting* becomes in Latin simply **frāter meus pugnat.** The present participle, like the present infinitive, represents an act *as taking place at the time indicated by the main verb.*

450. Formation and Declension. — The present participle of the four conjugations is formed by adding **–ns** to the present stem. It is declined like a third declension adjective of one ending (**393**), with the base ending in **–nt–**, as follows:

	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
Nom.	pa'rāns	pa'rāns	paran'tēs	paran'tia
Gen.	paran'tis		paran'tium	
Dat.	paran'tī		paran'tibus	
Acc.	paran'tem	pa'rāns	paran'tēs(-īs)	paran'tia
Abl.	paran'te(-ī)		paran'tibus	

Note. — (*a*) The ablative singular ending is regularly **-e**, but **-ī** is used instead whenever the participle is used simply as an adjective. (*b*) In verbs of the fourth conjugation, and **-iō** verbs of the third, **-ie-** appears throughout, forming the base **-ient-**, as **audiēns, audientis; capiēns, capientis.** (*c*) **Sum** has no present participle; that of **possum** is **potēns.**

451. Future Active Participle

Latin, unlike English, has a **future active participle.** This is formed by dropping the **-us** of the perfect participle and adding **-ūrus, -a, -um: parātūrus, -a, -um,** *about to prepare, going to prepare;* **futūrus, -a, -um,** *going to be.* It is declined like **magnus, -a, -um.**

452. Drill. — Form and translate the participles of **rogō, opprimō,** and **expellō** in the present and future active.

453. Exercises

Oral. 1. Cūr in hōc locō sine patre tuō mānsūrus es? 2. Vōcēs amīcōrum rogantium auxilium ā nōbīs audītae sunt. 3. Paucīs annīs nūllōs mīlitēs per viās nostrās iter facientēs vidēbimus. 4. Rōmānīs prōcēdentibus, barbarī fūgērunt. 5. Multī mīlitēs pugnantēs captī sunt. 6. Vulneribus gravibus acceptīs, nostrī ē castrīs

hostēs expulērunt. 7. Oppressī in aliēnō locō, hostēs cum equīs impedīmentīsque ad montēs contentūrī sunt.

(*Instead of clauses, use participles wherever possible.*)

Written. 1. The number of (those) approaching is not large. 2. The swords given to the other soldiers are heavy but not long. 3. He was accused by you (while he was) defending the public cause. 4. Hearing many voices, the children were frightened. 5. He folded the letter which he had written and sent (it) to (his) friend.

454. Quīntus Cicerō et Pompōnia

Pompōnius Atticus erat firmus amīcus M. Cicerōnis. Pompōnia, soror Atticī, erat uxor Quīntī, frātris M. Cicerōnis. Inter Pompōniam Quīntumque nōn semper concordia erat. Ūna causa erat haec, quod auctōritās Stātī[1] apud[2] Quīntum valēbat. Aliae causae nōn nōtae sunt. Cicerō Pompōniam accūsāvit, Atticus Quīntum. Cicerō ad Atticum hōc modō scrīpsit:

"Frātrem meum vīdī. Multus sermō inter nōs dē tē et sorōre tuā fuit. Verba eius nōn inimīca fuērunt. Tum ad Pompōniam contendimus. Quīntus eī dīxit: 'Pompōnia, tū vocā mulierēs ad cēnam, ego puerōs (fīlium Cicerōnis et frātris eius) vocābō.' Sed illa, 'Ego sum,' inquit, 'in hōc locō hospita.' Hoc dīxit quod īdem Stātius, nōn ea ipsa, cēnam parārī iusserat. Tum Quīntus, 'Audīsne?' inquit mihi, 'haec semper sustinēre cōgor.' Dīcēs: 'Haec vōx nihil est.' Sed magnum[3] est; verbīs dūrīs eius oppressus et commōtus sum. Ad cēnam illa nōn adfuit; Quīntus ad eam cibum mīsit; illa re-

[1] A freedman of Quintus. [2] *with.* [3] *it is a serious thing.*

mīsit. Grave vulnus Quīntus accēpit neque ipse ūllam iniūriam fēcit. Sorōrem tuam monēre dēbēs. Ob amīcitiam nostram perpetuam hoc dīcō. Magnīs cūrīs afficior. Officium nostrum est inter sorōrem tuam et frātrem meum pācem efficere."

Art and Archaeology

FIG. 129. CĒNA

A dining room in Pompeii, with built-in table and couches (see **587,** *b*).

LESSON LXVI

THE PERFECT ACTIVE INFINITIVE

455. Vocabulary

cōnscrī′bō, –ere, –scrīp′sī, –scrīp′tus, *enlist, enroll*	[***scrībō***]
cōnsis′tō, –ere, cōn′stitī, cōn′stitus, *stand still, stop*	[***stō***]
dī′cō, –ere, dī′xī, dic′tus, *say, tell*	(diction)
ia′ciō, –ere, iē′cī, iac′tus, *throw, cast, hurl*	(projectile)
levis, –e, *light* (in weight)	(levity)
osten′dō, –ere, –ten′dī, –ten′tus, (*stretch out*), *show, display*	[***tendō***]
prohi′beō, –ē′re, –hi′buī, –hi′bitus, *prevent, keep from*	[***habeō***]
***vīs, —,**[1] f., *force, violence;* plur., **vī′rēs, vī′rium,** *strength*	(vim)

456. Latin and English Word Studies

The suffix **–or,** when added to the participial stem, indicates the doer of an action: **monitor** (*one who warns*), **scrīptor** (*one who writes*), **inventor** (*one who finds*). It is used in English in the same way.

When the suffix **–or** is added to the present base of a verb, it usually indicates a state of being or condition: **timor, amor, terror.** It is used in English.

Exercise. — Find five English words which are formed by adding the suffix **–or** to the stems of verbs that you have studied.

457. Perfect Active Infinitive

The **perfect active infinitive** is formed by adding **–isse** to the perfect stem: **parāvisse,** *to have prepared;* **habuisse,** etc.

458. Review infinitive used as subject and object, see **136, 137;** infinitive with subject in the accusative as in English, see **262.**

[1] Genitive and dative singular rarely found (see **641**).

459. Exercises

Oral. 1. Prohibēre vim et pācem cōnservāre est nōbile. 2. Ostendite omnibus bonum exemplum. 3. Mīlitēs cōnsistentēs arma levia cum magnā vī iēcisse dīcuntur. 4. Caesar captīvōs coāctōs cōnscrībī iubēbit. 5. Rēgis fīlia librum scrīpsisse sine auxiliō dīcitur. 6. Rōmānī paucās nāvēs ad Galliam mīsisse dīcuntur. 7. Dux iussit cōpiās cum magnā celeritāte ad oppidum prīmā hōrā prōcēdere et ibi cōnsistere.

Fig. 130. The Circus Race

The chariots are nearing the turn, where many accidents took place.

Written. 1. The king is said to have fortified the town. 2. We cannot breathe under water. 3. Are you preparing to come with your father and mother? 4. Those men are said to have sailed to a strange land. 5. For these reasons we ought to lead the men out of camp with great speed.

460. Cincinnātus

Hostēs Minucium, ducem Rōmānum, et cōpiās eius premēbant. Ubi id Rōmānīs nūntiātum est, cupīvērunt Cincinnātum dictātōrem facere, quod is sōlus cīvitātem ē perīculō servāre poterat. Ille trāns Tiberim eō tempore parvum agrum colēbat. Nūntiī missī eum in agrō labōrantem invēnērunt. Salūte[1] datā acceptāque, Cincinnātus togam parāre uxōrem iussit; nam nōn oportēbat[2] sine togā nūntiōs audīre.

Nūntiī eum dictātōrem appellant et dīcunt: "Cōpiae nostrae ab hostibus premuntur et cīvēs nostrī timent." Itaque Cincinnātus prōcessit et, Minuciō servātō, hostēs sub iugum[3] mīsit. Cōpiās redūxit et triumphāvit. Ductī sunt ante eum ducēs hostium, capta arma ostenta sunt; post eum mīlitēs vēnērunt praedam portantēs. Et haec omnia Cincinnātus magnā celeritāte gessit: dictātūrā in[4] sex mēnsēs acceptā, sextō decimō diē[5] ad agrōs discessit, nōn iam dictātor sed triumphāns agricola.

Read Harding, pp. 65–69; Haaren and Poland, pp. 76–81; Morris (*Roman*), pp. 68–74.

---

[1] *greeting.* [2] *it was not fitting.* [3] *under the yoke,* i.e. an arch of spears. This act signified unconditional surrender. [4] *for.* [5] *day.*

Fig 131. The Fountain Near the Colosseum as It Was

LESSON LXVII

PERFECT PASSIVE AND FUTURE ACTIVE INFINITIVE. INDIRECT STATEMENT

461. Vocabulary

iūs′tus, –a, –um, *just*	[*iūs*]
la′bor, labō′ris, m., *work, trouble*	[*labōrō*]
mū′nus, mū′neris, n., *duty, service, gift*	(munificent)
pu′tō, –ā′re, –ā′vī, –ā′tus, *think*	(reputation)
sci′ō, scī′re, scī′vī, scī′tus, *know*	(science)
secun′dus, –a, –um, *second*	(secondary)
sol′vō, –ere, sol′vī, solū′tus, *loose, pay*	(solution)
spa′tium, spa′tī, n., *space, time, distance*	(spacious)

462. English Word Study: Spelling

The base of the Latin present participle is **–ant, –ent,** or **–ient,** according to the conjugation (**450**). This is used as a suffix in English, with the same meaning as the participial ending *–ing*.

A common mistake in the spelling of English words is due to the confusion of **–ant** and **–ent.** Reference to the Latin partly solves the difficulty:

(*a*) All English words derived from the first conjugation follow the Latin spelling with an **–a–**: *expectant, emigrant.*

(*b*) All adjectives and most nouns derived from the other conjugations follow the Latin spelling with an **–e–**: *continent, regent, agent, efficient.*

(*c*) But some *nouns* have an **–a–**: *tenant, defendant.*

Exercise. — Give eight English words with suffix **–ant** or **–ent** derived from Latin words previously studied.

463. Perfect Passive and Future Active Infinitive

(*a*) The **perfect passive infinitive** is a compound tense, formed by using the perfect participle with the present infinitive **esse**: **parātus, –a, –um esse,** *to have been prepared;* **habitus, –a, –um esse,** etc. (cf. perfect passive indicative: **parātus sum**).

(*b*) The **future active infinitive** is a compound tense, formed by using the future active participle with the present infinitive **esse**: **parātūrus, –a, –um esse,** *to be going to prepare;* **habitūrus, –a, –um esse,** etc.

There was no future passive infinitive in common use in Latin.

(*c*) **Learn** the infinitives, active and passive, of the model verbs (**655–659**) and **sum** (**660**).

464. Drill. — Form and translate the infinitives, active and passive, of **iaciō, ostendō,** and **prohibeō.**

465. Infinitive with Verbs of Saying, etc.

In English, we use a "that" clause after verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing, hearing,* and the like: *He says (that*[1]*) the boys are coming.* But sometimes we use the infinitive: *The boys are said to be coming; I know him to be a good man; I heard him say this.*

In Latin, the infinitive is *always* used after such words: **Dīcit puerōs venīre.** Note that **puerōs** is in the accusative because it is the subject of an infinitive (**263**). The word *that* is not translated.

[1] *That* is occasionally omitted.

466. Direct and Indirect Statement

1. **Dīcit, "Puerī veniunt."** *He says, "The boys are coming."*
2. **Dīcit puerōs venīre,** *He says that the boys are coming.*

In the first sentence the exact words of the speaker are given, as shown by the use of quotation marks. Such a sentence is called a **direct statement.** In the second sentence the exact words are not given. Such a sentence is called an **indirect statement.**

467. Rule. — *Statements that convey indirectly the thoughts or words of another, used as the objects of verbs of* ***saying, thinking, knowing, hearing, perceiving,*** *or the like, require subjects in the accusative and verbs in the infinitive.*

468. Who or Whom? — Explain how a knowledge of indirect statement in Latin will enable one to use *who* and *whom* correctly, as follows: (*a*) *Mr. Smith is a man* ***who,*** *I believe,* ***is*** *honest;* (*b*) *Mr. Smith is a man* ***whom*** *I believe* ***to be*** *honest.*

469. Exercises

Oral. 1. Dīcunt, "Cīvis iūstus lībertātem amat." 2. Cīvis iūstus lībertātem amāre dīcitur. 3. Dīcunt cīvem iūstum lībertātem amāre. 4. Putāmus nostra mūnera futūra esse levia. 5. Nōs omnēs scīmus in spatiō vītae esse cūrās et labōrēs. 6. Ille homō erit prīmus aut secundus ōrdine. 7. Putāsne, Mārce,

Fig. 132. Roman Acrobats

hunc hominem pecūniam dēbitam solvisse aut solūtūrum esse? 8. Putō pecūniam ab illō nōn solūtam esse.

Written. 1. Galba said, "My father is a soldier." 2. We all know that his father is brave. 3. I hear that Galba's brother was a sailor and was not terrified by the sea. 4. I think that Galba himself will be a soldier. 5. He himself said, "I am going to be a soldier, for my father is a soldier."

470. Bella

Quae sunt causae bellī? Putō multās esse causās. Vidēmus multa bella ob iniūriās gerī. Haec bella iūsta sunt. Multī populī pugnant quod putant imperium auctōritātemque vī bellōque augērī posse. Hī sī superantur omnia saepe āmittunt; sī superant, aliēnās terrās occupant. Putāsne bella huius generis iūsta esse? Multī dīcunt omnia bella iūsta esse, aliī putant nūlla esse iūsta. Quid dē hōc putās? Alia bella prō lībertāte, alia prō glōriā geruntur. Quae fuērunt causae bellōrum Americānōrum?

Horātius,[1] poēta Rōmānus, scrībit dulce esse prō patriā vītam āmittere. Nōnne nōs omnēs putāmus hoc vērum esse? Sī patria in perīculō est, nōnne putās officium nostrum esse eam dēfendere? Scīmus gravēs esse labōrēs mīlitum, gravia eōs accipere vulnera, multōs eōrum vītam āmittere; scīmus etiam eōs nōn dubitāre omnia haec prō patriā grātō animō suscipere et sustinēre. Prō hīs mūneribus praemia aequa eīs dare nōn possumus. Sed praemia nōn exspectant; spērant

[1] *Horace.* The exact words of his famous phrase are: **Dulce et decōrum est prō patriā morī.**

cīvēs facta sua memoriā tentūrōs esse et aliōs semper parātōs futūrōs esse patriam dēfendere.

Ēgregia exempla virtūtis in omnibus bellīs vidērī possunt. Legimus dē multīs clārīs factīs in librīs Graecīs et Latīnīs et Anglicīs.[1] Omnēs populī putant et semper putāvērunt sacrum officium esse patriam cōnservāre.

Sed spērāmus nōn semper bella futūra esse; spērāmus omnēs hominēs aliōrum iūra cōnservātūrōs esse. Tum bella nōn iam necessāria erunt, et sine bellīs pāx perpetua erit.

By Ewing Galloway, N. Y.

FIG. 133. INSCRIPTION AT ARLINGTON CEMETERY

Horace's immortal line is a prominent feature of the fine entrance gate to Arlington National Cemetery at Arlington, Va., near Washington, D. C., where many of the nation's famous military and naval heroes are buried.

[1] *English.*

LESSON LXVIII

INDIRECT STATEMENT (*Cont.*)

471. Vocabulary

ā′cer, ācris, ācre,[1] *sharp, keen* (acrid)
clā′mō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *cry out, shout* (clamor)
hae′reō, –ēre, hae′sī, hae′sus, *stick* (adhesive)
īn′stō, –āre, īn′stitī, ——, *press on, threaten* [*stō*]
perve′niō, –īre, –vē′nī, –ven′tus, (*come through*), *arrive* [*veniō*]
sen′tiō, –īre, sēn′sī, sēn′sus, *feel, realize* (sense)
sī, conj., *if*
tan′gō, –ere, te′tigī, tāc′tus, *touch* (tangent)

472. English Word Studies

By addition of the suffix **–ia** (**251**) to the base of the present participle, a suffix **–antia** or **–entia** is formed which becomes **–ance, –ence, –ancy,** or **–ency** in English (cf. the change of **–tia** to **–ce** (**265**): **scientia,** *science*). The difficulty in spelling is again removed by reference to the Latin (cf. **462**).

Exercise. — Give eight English nouns with this suffix derived from Latin words previously studied.

473. How Indicative and Infinitive Differ in Tense

1. *It was thought that he was present.*
2. *He was thought to be present.*

In the first sentence, the verb in the subordinate clause is in the past indicative. In the second sentence, the infinitive *to be* refers to the same time but is in the

[1] Cf. **393,** footnote 1.

present tense. The tenses of the **indicative** are determined by their *relation to present time,* but the tenses of the **infinitive** are determined by their *relation to the verbs on which they depend.* This is true in Latin as in English and should be remembered in translating a Latin infinitive into an English "that" clause.

474. How the Tenses of the Infinitive Differ

1. The present infinitive represents time or action as *going on,* from the standpoint of the introductory verb:

Dīcit / **Dīxit** **eōs pugnāre,** *He* {*says* / *said*} *(that) they* {*are* / *were*} *fighting.*

2. The future infinitive represents an act that will occur *later,* from the standpoint of the introductory verb:

Dīcit / **Dīxit** **eōs pugnātūrōs esse,** *He* {*says* / *said*} *(that) they* {*will* / *would*} *fight.*

3. The perfect infinitive represents time or action as *completed before* that of the introductory verb:

Dīcit / **Dīxit** **eōs pugnāvisse,** *He* {*says* / *said*} *(that) they* {*have* / *had*} *fought.*

475. *a.* **Note** that the participle in the compound forms of the infinitive must agree with its subject (see 2 above).

b. **A Helpful Hint.** — In translating indirect statements into Latin, use the tense of the infinitive corresponding to the indicative tense which would have been used in a direct statement.

476. Exercises

Oral. 1. (*a*) Omnēs scīmus Americānōs mīlitēs esse ācrēs et fortēs. (*b*) *Substitute* scīvimus *for* scīmus *in* (*a*) *and translate.* 2. Rōmānī dīcēbant Caesarem esse for-

tem ducem nec superātum esse. 3. Sī meum frātrem tangēs, eum dēfendam. 4. Servī spērāvērunt labōrem futūrum esse facilem. 5. Omnēs sēnsimus perīculum īnstāre. 6. Omnēs puerī certē sciunt Columbum ab Eurōpā nāvēs solvisse[1] et ad Americam pervēnisse. 7. Puer, perīculō īnstantī territus, nōn clāmāre potuit, quod vōx haesit. 8. Quis dīxit amīcum meum sine frātre pervēnisse?

Written. 1. Who said that we would not fight? 2. The boy thought that (his) father had been saved by a sailor. 3. My mother wrote that the islands were beautiful. 4. We can prove that our cause is just. 5. The general says that the soldiers of the provinces were brave and keen.

477. Scīpiō Āfricānus

M. Naevius accūsāvit Scīpiōnem ad populum, dīxitque eum accēpisse ā rēge Antiochō pecūniam. Dīxit Antiochum pecūniam prō levibus condiciōnibus pācis dedisse. Scīpiō respondit hōc diē[2] sē[3] Hannibalem, imperī Rōmānōrum inimīcum, magnō proeliō in terrā Āfricā vīcisse pācemque et victōriam clāram obtinuisse. Etiam dīxit omnēs ad templa prōcēdere dēbēre et deīs grātiās agere et stupidum Naevium relinquere. Hōc dictō, ad Capitōlium prōcēdere incipit. Tum omnēs verbīs eius permōtī, relictō Naeviō, cum Scīpiōne in Capitōlium prōcessērunt.

---

[1] Use the English idiom. [2] Ablative. [3] *he.*

SEVENTH REVIEW (LESSON LIX–LXVIII)

478. Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. aestās
2. cor
3. frāter
4. genus
5. hiems
6. labor
7. māter
8. mūnus
9. pars
10. pater
11. soror
12. spatium
13. supplicium
14. vīs
15. vōx

Adjectives

16. ācer
17. aliēnus
18. alius
19. alter
20. commūnis
21. gravis
22. iūstus
23. incertus
24. levis
25. neuter
26. nōbilis
27. nūllus
28. praeceps
29. secundus
30. sōlus
31. tōtus
32. ūllus
33. ūnus

Pronouns

34. hic
35. īdem
36. ille
37. ipse

Verbs

38. clāmō
39. colō
40. cōnscrībō
41. cōnsistō
42. contendō
43. currō
44. dīcō
45. expellō
46. expugnō
47. haereō
48. iaciō
49. īnstō
50. intercipiō
51. opprimō
52. ostendō
53. perveniō
54. prohibeō
55. putō
56. remittō
57. rogō
58. sciō
59. sedeō
60. sentiō
61. solvō
62. spērō
63. spīrō
64. tangō
65. timeō

Adverb

66. nihil

Conjunctions

67. dum
68. sī

479. Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. *summer*
2. *heart*
3. *brother*
4. *birth, kind*
5. *winter*
6. *work*
7. *mother*
8. *duty, service*
9. *part*
10. *father*
11. *sister*
12. *space*
13. *punishment*
14. *force*
15. *voice*

Adjectives

16. *sharp, keen*
17. *unfavorable*
18. *other, another*
19. *the other*
20. *common*
21. *heavy, serious*
22. *just*
23. *uncertain*
24. *light*
25. *neither*
26. *noble*
27. *no, none*
28. *steep*
29. *second*
30. *alone*
31. *whole*
32. *any*
33. *one*

Pronouns

34. *this*
35. *the same*
36. *that*
37. *-self*

Verbs

38. *cry out*
39. *till, worship*
40. *enlist*
41. *stop*
42. *struggle, hasten*
43. *run*
44. *say, tell*
45. *drive out*
46. *capture by assault*
47. *stick*
48. *throw*
49. *press on, threaten*
50. *intercept*
51. *overwhelm*
52. *show*
53. *arrive*
54. *prevent*
55. *think*
56. *relax, send back*
57. *ask*
58. *know*
59. *sit*
60. *feel, realize*
61. *loose, pay*
62. *hope*
63. *breathe*
64. *touch*
65. *fear*

Adverb

66. *nothing*

Conjunctions

67. *while*
68. *if*

480. Review of Participles

We have seen that the Latin participle furnishes a convenient means for conveying various ideas expressed by dependent clauses in English. Review **344.**

481. Noun and Adjective Review

(*a*) Decline **haec pars, idem supplicium, pater ipse, ea aestās, hoc genus, nūlla vōx, sōlus frāter.**

(*b*) Give the genitive and dative singular of **nūllus pater, ūlla māter, altera soror, sōlum flūmen, neutrum iter.**

482. Verb Review

(*a*) Give a synopsis of **timeō** in the 3rd plural active; of **remittō** in the 3rd singular passive.

(*b*) Form the participles, active and passive, of **dīcō, iaciō, sciō,** and **rogō.**

(*c*) Form the infinitives, active and passive, of **sentiō, intercipiō, currō,** and **expugnō.**

(*d*) Conjugate **sum** and **possum.**

483. English Word Studies: A Review

(*a*) Give the Latin nouns suggested by the derivatives: *cordial, partial, generation, fraternity, sorority, vocal, maternal.*

(*b*) Give the Latin verbs suggested by the derivatives: *sedentary, cursive, remiss, inspiration, cult, expulsive, oppressive, diction, ostensible, prohibit.*

(*c*) Find and use in sentences as many English derivatives as possible from **dīcō, putō, trahō, audiō,** and **premō.**

Enter the derivatives in your notebook, using a separate page for each Latin word.

484. Vocabulary Matches (*To the Teacher*)

Latin word contests, especially between two divisions of the same class, excite keen rivalry and lead to a ready mastery of words. After every member of the class has faithfully prepared all the vocabularies of a given number of lessons, have two leaders choose sides, as in an old-fashioned spelling bee. The teacher dictates the English word, and the students in turn give the Latin word in full (*i.e.* principal parts, if a verb; genitive singular and gender, if a noun). When a student misses a word or one of its parts, he takes his seat. Better yet, allow all pupils to remain in the contest and score one minus point for each word missed. The side having the fewest minus points wins. Much interest is added if a descriptive name is given to the contesting sides, such as "Altī *vs.* Brevēs," "Puerī *vs.* Puellās," etc.

Fig. 134. The Theater of Marcellus

A restored view, at the left, of one of the finest theaters of Rome in ancient times. Its imposing ruins are still visible.

LESSON LXIX

485. THE STORY OF LUCIUS (*Cont.*)

Virginēs Vestālēs

Etiam cīvitās focum Vestae habuit. Templum Vestae in Forō Rōmānō stābat. Ibi sex puellae, Virginēs Vestālēs appellātae, ignem sacrum Vestae semper

FIG. 135. THE CHIEF VESTAL PASSES
Omnēs dē viā dēcessērunt.

servābant. Magna erat glōria Vestālium, et maximē ā populō Rōmānō amābantur. Eīs in viīs vīsīs, omnēs dē viā dēcessērunt. Facile erat eās cognōscere, quod omnēs semper candidās vestēs gessērunt, neque ūlla alia fēmina vestem eiusdem generis gessit. In Circō loca ēgregia eīs dabantur. Sed dūrum fuit supplicium Vestālis quae mala fuit: ea vīva sub terrā posita est.

Exacting Duties

Iūlia, soror Lūcī, Vestālis erat et multa dē vītā Vestālium nārrābat. Cum reliquīs Vestālibus in Ātriō Vestae ad templum habitāvit sed saepe patrem et mātrem et frātrēs vidēbat. Dīxit vītam Vestālium fēlīcem esse sed labōrem nōn facilem esse: eās omnia magnā cūrā dīligentiāque facere cōgī. Dīxit Vestālēs ligna in focō eōdem modō semper pōnere et omnia certīs hōrīs facere. Itaque spatium disciplīnae longum erat. Puellae sex annōrum, ā patribus mātribusque Vestae datae, prīmōs decem annōs discipulae ēgērunt, tum decem annōs in officiīs ēgērunt et posteā parvās puellās docuērunt. Post trīgintā annōs lībertās eīs data est et eae ad amīcōs familiāsque redīre[1] potuērunt, sed multae in Ātriō Vestae permānsērunt. Sex sōlae Vestālēs in Ātriō ūnō tempore habitāvērunt.

Fig. 136. Vestālis

The costume suggests one reason why the Vestals have been called the first nuns. Statues of some of the chief Vestal Virgins are still in place in the old home of the Vestals near the temple of Vesta in the Forum (Fig. 1).

[1] Infinitive of red-eō, *go back*.

Misfortune

Quondam Iūlia, aquam sacram dē fonte portāns, vīdit aliam Vestālem ante portam sedentem flentemque et ad eam cucurrit. Causā dolōris petītā, audīvit alteram sīvisse[1] ignem sacrum exstinguī; vigiliā cōnfecta somnō oppressa erat. Iūlia, malā fortūnā amīcae permōta, tamen illī nūllum cōnsilium dare potuit. Itaque illa pontificī omnia nārrāvit, et hic eam verberāvit—nihil aliud facere potuit, quod ita lēgēs iussērunt.

Fig. 137. Vestālis Somnō Oppressa Est

Right or Wrong

Hōc audītō, Lūcius dīxit illam miseram nōn merēre ob lassitūdinem poenā afficī et ōtium habēre dēbēre, sed eius soror, Iūlia, aliam sententiam habuit: "Etiam amīca mea ipsa quae verberāta est sentit supplicium aequum fuisse. Mūnera nostra gravia sunt. Sī dīligentiam nōn adhibēbimus, salūs cīvitātis in perīculō erit. Itaque poena neglegentiae gravis esse dēbet. Sī ego ignem exstinguī sinam (quod spērō numquam futūrum esse) gravī poenā afficī dēbēbō."

[1] From sinō.

FIG. 138. INTERIOR OF A HOUSE IN POMPEII

Looking from the atrium, with its cistern, through the tablinum into the peristyle.

486. GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE

The House and Its Furniture

The Roman town house was different from ours and more like that of southern Europe to-day. As glass was expensive, there were few windows on the street. The typical house, as found in numerous examples at Pompeii, consisted of two parts, front and rear. The front consisted of a large room, called the atrium, surrounded by small bedrooms. The atrium had an opening in the roof for light and air. The roof sloped down to the opening. Below the opening there was a basin into which the rain fell. This cistern, as we may call

it, furnished the soft water for washing, so necessary in a country where most of the water is hard. At the corners of the basin there were often columns extending to the roof (Fig. 170).

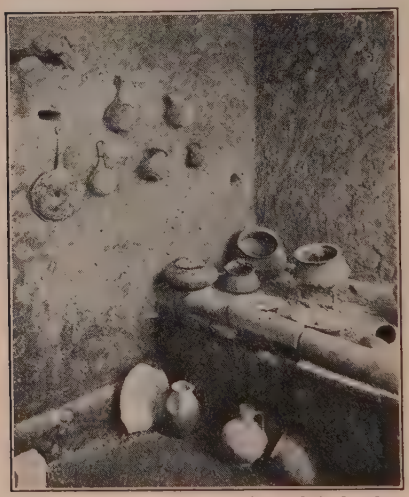
As the house was built directly on the street, it had no front yard. The heavy front door opened into a hall leading into the atrium. On one side of the hall there might be a small shop, usually rented out to people who did not live in the house. On the other side there was the room of the doorkeeper (**iānitor**). Very often there was a place for a watchdog. Sometimes a fierce dog was painted on the wall or depicted in mosaic on the floor of the hall.

Opposite the entrance was the study or office (**tablīnum**) of the master of the house, placed so that he could keep an eye on what was going on. Here he kept his safe. Often there were also upstairs rooms (Fig. 150).

The rear of the house surrounded a garden. Because of the columns which ran all around the garden this part was called the peristyle. It was often very pretty. Charming fountains and statuary were usually to be seen in the garden. Kitchen, bathroom, dining rooms, were in this part of the house. There were often two dining rooms, one on the shady side for summer, the other on the sunny side for winter.

The walls were covered with elaborate paintings (Fig. 65). Rugs and draperies were in common use. The floors were usually covered with stone flags or mosaic, as in Italy to-day, instead of wood. There was not much furniture. Chairs were few, and many of them were without backs. On the other hand, there were many couches, used like easy-chairs, not only for read-

ing and resting but also at the dinner table. There were many kinds of tables and stands, often very beautiful. Three-legged stands were especially common. Many small lamps of bronze or clay (Fig. 31) were placed everywhere, some on stands, some on large, elaborate candelabra. Olive oil was burned in such lamps. Glass chimneys were unknown. The light was so poor that people went to bed early and got up early. Candles were also used.



Art and Archaeology

FIG. 139. A KITCHEN IN POMPEII

Pots and pans are still in place on the stove.

Kitchen utensils and dishes were made of bronze, silver, or earthenware. Those made of earthenware were chiefly red in color and were decorated with engraved lines.

Besides the town houses just described, there were country homes (**vīllae**) which were more elaborate. In Rome there were also apartment houses, called **īnsulae** because they were "islands" surrounded by streets. These were often rather tall. Many were flimsily built for speculation. As a result they were an easy prey for fires.

Read McDaniel, pp. 5–13; Preston and Dodge, pp. 28–36, 39–42; Johnston, Chap. VI; Botsford, pp. 339–341.

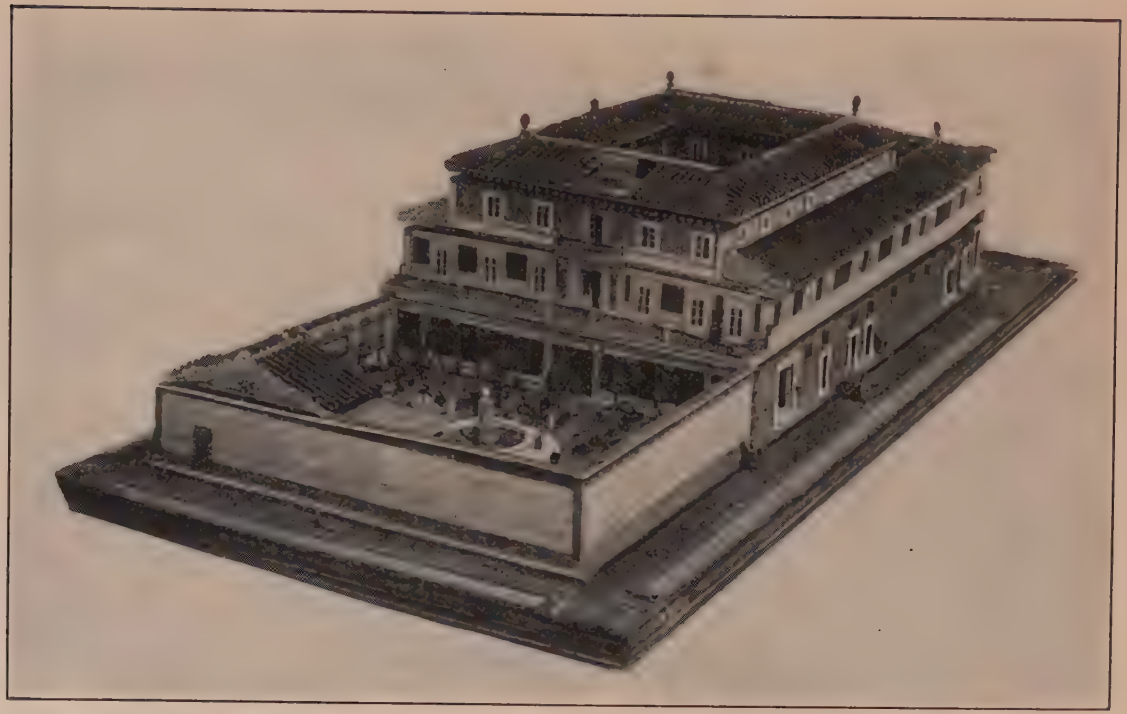


FIG. 140. MODEL OF A POMPEIAN HOUSE IN THE METROPOLITAN MUSEUM, NEW YORK

LESSON LXX

COMPARISON OF REGULAR ADJECTIVES. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

487. Vocabulary

condi′ciō, condiciō′nis, f., *condition, terms* (conditional)
li′gō, –ā′re, –ā′vī, –ā′tus, *tie, bind* (ligament)
quam, conj., *than*
ra′piō, –ere, ra′puī, rap′tus, *seize, carry off* (rapture)
respon′deō, –ē′re, respon′dī, respōn′sus, *answer* (response)
sta′tuō, –ere, sta′tuī, statū′tus, (*make stand*), *place, establish, determine* [*stō*]
ū′tilis, –e, *useful* (utility)
vin′cō, –ere, vī′cī, vic′tus, *conquer* (invincible)

FIG. 141. ROMAN TOOLS

These tools and many others were found in a Roman fort in Germany.

488. Comparison of Adjectives

Adjectives are inflected to show degree. This is called **comparison.** There are three degrees: **positive,**

comparative, superlative. The positive is the simple form of the adjective; the others indicate a greater degree.

In English, the comparative is formed by adding **–er** (**–r**) to the positive: *high–**er**, brave–**r**.* The superlative is formed by adding **–est** (**–st**) to the positive: *high–**est**, brave–**st**.* But adjectives of more than one syllable are often compared by the use of *more* and *most: more skillful, most skillful.*

In Latin, adjectives regularly add to the base of the positive the endings **–ior** (m. and f.), **–ius** (n.), to form the comparative, and **–issimus, –a, –um** to form the superlative:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
altus, –a, –um, *high* (base **alt–**)	**altior, altius,** *higher*	**altissimus, –a, –um,** *highest*
fortis, –e, *brave* (base, **fort–**)	**fortior, fortius,** *braver*	**fortissimus, –a, –um,** *bravest*

Hints for Translating. — The comparative may often be translated *more, too, rather;* the superlative, *most, very, exceedingly.*

489. Declension of the Comparative

Adjectives are declined as follows in the comparative:

	M. and F	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	al′tior	al′tius	altiō′rēs	altiō′ra
Gen.	altiō′ris	altiō′ris	altiō′rum	altiō′rum
Dat.	altiō′rī	altiō′rī	altiō′ribus	altiō′ribus
Acc.	altiō′rem	al′tius	altiō′rēs	altiō′ra
Abl.	altiō′re	altiō′re	altiō′ribus	altiō′ribus

Observe that, while comparatives are declined like adjectives of the third declension, they do not have **–ī** in the abl. sing., **–ium** in the gen. plur., or **–ia** in the nom. and acc. plur. neuter.

490. Drill. — (*a*) Compare **grātus, –a, –um; nōbilis, –e; clārus, –a, –um; levis, –e; longus, –a, –um.** (*b*) Decline **tardus, –a, –um** in the comparative.

491. Remember that in Latin the same case is used after **quam** as before it, but in English the nominative is often used after *than:* **Fortiōrem virum quam illum nōn vīdī,** *A braver man than he I have not seen.*

Fig. 142. A Roman Wedding
From a copy of an ancient wall painting.

492. Exercises

Oral. 1. Captīvus, nōn ligātus, gladium rapuit et fūgit. 2. Quid est ūtilius et nōbilius quam prō patriā pugnāre? 3. Novissimum librum, ab eōdem auctōre scrīptum, ad frātrem meum mittere statuī. 4. Gallī vīribus corporis Rōmānōs superābant sed nōn erant fortiōrēs virī. 5. Hominem dē viīs rogāvī; is respondit

hanc esse plāniōrem quam illam. 6. Ostendimus duo itinera per Galliam — alterum facile, alterum longius et incertius. 7. Condiciōnēs pācis dūrissimae et gravissimae ab hostibus victīs semper esse habentur.

Written. 1. Why are not the rivers of Italy very long? 2. Even more severe peace-terms[1] will be determined (upon) than these. 3. I know that that river is swift but not very wide. 4. Nothing is more useful than water. 5. Peace has nobler and truer victories than war.

493. English Word Studies

It is important to distinguish different words from the same stem. "Plain" and "plane" both come from **plānus,** *level.* A "plain" is a *level* field; a "plain" person is not above the average *level* in appearance, etc. A "plane" is a *level* surface (hence "plane" geometry); it is also a tool which makes surfaces *level.* "Plane" is therefore used in a more literal, "plain," in a less literal, sense.

A "corpse" is a dead *body* (from **corpus**); a "corps" (pronounced "core") is a *body* of men forming part of an army. The former is literal, the latter, figurative. A "corporation" is a *body* of men united for commercial or other purposes. A "corpuscle" is a little *body* in the blood. "Corporal" punishment is punishment inflicted upon the *body, i.e.* a whipping. Anything "corporeal" has a *body, i.e.* it is not imaginary. Similarly, a "principal" is the *leading* person in a school; a "principle" is a *leading* rule.

---

[1] Cf. Oral 7.

FIG. 143. LABOR OMNIA VINCIT

494. Quattuor Aetātēs

Prīma aetās erat aurea. Sāturnus erat rēx deōrum hominumque. Illō tempore poena lēgēsque aberant, sed omnēs hominēs iūstī erant. Nāvēs in marī nōn erant, nec trāns mare lātum hominēs nāvigābant. Bellum nōn erat nec mīlitēs et arma. In ōtiō et pāce vītam hominēs agēbant. Hominēs in agrīs nōn labōrābant; terra nōn culta ipsa frūmentum dabat. Neque hiems neque aestās erat: semper erat vēr. Flūmina lactis[1] et vīnī erant. Quod omnēs agrī commūnēs erant, terminī agrōrum nōn erant.

Sāturnō expulsō, Iuppiter rēx erat. Nunc incipit secunda aetās, quae ex argentō est, dūrior quam prīma,

[1] *of milk.*

grātior quam tertia. Tum aestās et hiems esse incipiunt; quattuor sunt spatia annī. Tum prīmum in agrīs labōrāre hominēs incipiunt.

Tertia aetās ex aere[1] erat. Dūrior erat quam secunda.

Quārta aetās, quae ex ferrō est, dūrissima omnium est. Poenae gravissimae sunt, sed hominēs interficiunt et rapiunt. Nautae in omnī marī nāvigant. Hominēs semper bella gerunt et praedam petunt. Hominēs in agrīs labōrant; nam labor omnia vincit.

Haec dīcunt auctōrēs clārissimī Rōmānī dē quattuor aetātibus. Vergilius[2] putābat iterum aetātem auream futūram esse. Etiam nunc putāmus vītam semper grātiōrem futūram esse. Putātisne condiciōnem fortūnamque populī Rōmānī meliōrem[3] fuisse quam fortūnam nostram? Cūr haec sententia vestra est? Quae erit condiciō hominum post mīlle annōs? Aliī dīcunt: "Tempora mūtantur, et nōs mūtāmur in illīs." Aliī dīcunt hominēs semper eōsdem fuisse et futūrōs esse. Quae est sententia vestra? Possuntne ambae sententiae vērae esse?

A Punning Epitaph

It is said that on the tombstone of a certain Roman lady, Victoria, who outlived her "man," one may read this triumphant statement:

VICTŌRIA VIRUM VĪCIT

---

[1] *of bronze.* [2] *Virgil.* [3] *better.*

LESSON LXXI

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF REGULAR ADVERBS

495. Vocabulary

ap′tus, –a, –um, *fit, suitable* (adapt)
* **gēns, gen′tis, gen′tium,** f., *tribe, people, nation* [***genus***]
īn′struō, –ere, –strū′xī, –strūc′tus, *arrange, provide* [***struō,*** arrange]
iū′dicō, –ā′re, –ā′vī, –ā′tus, *judge, decide* (judicial)
nē′mō, dat. **nē′minī,** acc. **nē′minem** (no other forms), *no one* [***homō***]
ōrā′tiō, ōrātiō′nis, f., *speech* (orator)
re′giō, regiō′nis, f., *district, region* [***regō***]
repel′lō, –ere, rep′pulī, repul′sus, *drive back, repulse* [***pellō***]

496. English Word Study: The Suffix *–iō*

In Latin, the suffix **–iō** is added to verb stems, usually to the participial stem As this generally ends in **–t** or **–s,** words of this origin generally end in **–tiō** or **–siō.** The suffix indicates an act or the state which results from an act: **ōrātiō** is the act of speaking, or the result, *i.e.* a speech. Nouns with this suffix have **–iōnis** in the genitive. Accordingly, the base ends in **–n.** Hence the English form of the suffix, which is very common, is **–ion** (**–tion, –sion**): *region, oration, session.* It often has the force of the suffix *–ing.*

Exercise. — Give and define ten English words with the suffix **–ion** derived from Latin verbs which you have studied.

497. Formation of Adverbs

(*a*) For adverbs formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions, see **188.**

(*b*) Adverbs are formed from adjectives of the third

declension, as a rule, by adding **-iter** to the base; as, adj., **fortis,** adv., **fortiter;** adj., **ācer,** adv., **ācriter.**

498. The **comparison of adverbs** is similar to that of adjectives:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
al'tē	**al'tius**	**altis'simē**
for'titer	**for'tius**	**fortis'simē**

Note that the comparative adverb has the same form as the neuter accusative singular of the comparative adjective.

499. Drill. — Form and compare adverbs from the following adjectives already studied:

longus, ūtilis, levis, clārus, firmus, gravis, vērus

500. Exercises

Oral. 1. Sciō hoc flūmen esse longius quam illud. 2. Gentēs Galliae celerius vincī poterant, quod nātūrā locī continēbantur. 3. Nostrī fortissimē pugnāvērunt sed ab hostibus repulsī sunt. 4. Pater meus omnia iūstē et celeriter iūdicat; nam nēmō est iūstior quam ille. 5. Hī mīlitēs, ē castrīs ēductī, ad proelium ā duce īnstruuntur. 6. Cūr hae gentēs aliās regiōnēs partēsque Galliae petunt? 7. Puerī magistrō librum dedērunt, et ille ōrātiōne aptā respondit.

Written. 1. We certainly hope that peace has been established among all nations. 2. We shall drive the enemy back, because our men fight more bravely. 3. No one approves a very long speech. 4. The battle was sharply fought, but few men received severe wounds.

501. Baucis et Philēmōn

Iuppiter et Mercurius per Phrygiam, quae in Asiā est, iter fēcērunt, sed nēmō eōs cognōvit. Omnēs eōs iūdicāvērunt esse humilēs hominēs. Ad mīlle domōs accessērunt; nam locum somnō aptum petīvērunt. Sed omnēs, hīs vīsīs, domōs celeriter clausērunt. In tōtā regiōne repulsī sunt. Tamen ūna domus eōs recēpit, parva et humilis. Ibi Baucis et Philēmōn multōs annōs longae vītae fēliciter ēgerant. Magnam pecūniam nōn habuērunt sed pauper-tātem aequō animō tulērunt. Duo tōta domus[1] fuērunt, et dominī et servī ipsī; nam servōs nōn habuērunt.

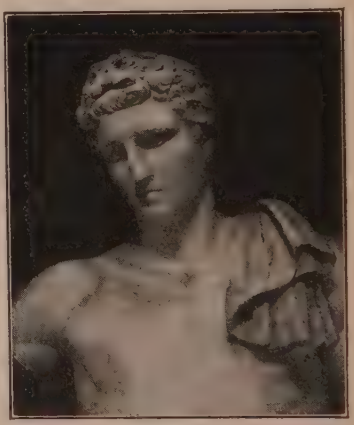


Fig. 144. Mercurius

Cēnam humilem Baucis magnā dīligentiā et celeritāte parāvit, ad quam tum deōs vocāvit. Multī cibī nōn fuērunt, sed bonī. Vīnum bibērunt, sed semper crātēr plēnus erat. Tum Philēmōn et Baucis sēnsērunt deōs adesse. Ūnus ānser erat quem deīs interficere parābant. Sed aetāte tardī eum capere nōn poterant. Hic ad pedēs deōrum ipsōrum fūgit. Tum Iuppiter, "Deī sumus," inquit, "tōtam hanc regiōnem poenā afficiēmus, quod nēmō nōbīs auxilium dedit, sed vestra vīta servābitur. Ad montem prōcēdēmus."

[1] *household* (predicate nominative).

Itaque ad montem tardē prōcessērunt. Ibi Baucis et Philēmōn cōnstitērunt et vīdērunt tōtam regiōnem aquā tēctam esse, domum suam sōlam manēre. Dum spectant, domus eōrum in pulchrum templum vertitur.

Tum Iuppiter, "Quid cupitis?" inquit; "id quod petitis dōnābō." Philēmōn, uxōre cōnsultā, respondit: "Cupimus esse sacerdōtēs[1] illīus templī et ē vītā eōdem tempore excēdere, quod in concordiā multōs annōs ēgimus." Hoc mūnus accēpērunt.

Post multōs annōs, aetāte gravēs ante sacrum templum stābant. Corpora eōrum in arborēs tardē vertuntur. Multōs annōs hae duae arborēs ante templum stābant.

Read Sabin, pp. 83–84; Gayley, pp. 77–80; Guerber, pp. 43–44; Bulfinch, pp. 61–64.

FIG. 145. A ROMAN AND HIS WIFE

[1] *priests.*

LESSON LXXII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES ENDING IN *-ER* AND *-LIS*. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

502. Vocabulary

ca′dō, –ere, ce′cidī, cā′sus, *fall* (casualty)
ac′cidō, –ere, ac′cidī, ——, *fall to, befall, happen* (with dat.)
diffi′cilis, –e, *difficult* [***facilis***]
ex′plicō, –ā′re, –ā′vī, –ā′tus, *unfold, spread out, explain* [***plicō***]
hu′milis, –e, *low, humble* (humility)
pro′prius, –a, –um, *one's own, fitting* (propriety)
si′milis, –e, *like* (similarity)
dissi′milis, –e, *unlike*

© *International*

FIG. 146. POMPEII FROM AN AIRPLANE

The large open space is the Forum.

503. Comparison of *-er* Adjectives

All adjectives ending in **-er** form the superlative by adding **-rimus, -a, -um** to the nominative singular masculine of the positive:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
crē′ber, crē′bra, crē′brum	**crē′brior, crē′brius**	**crēber′rimus, -a, -um**
lī′ber, lī′bera, lī′berum	**lībe′rior, lībe′rius**	**līber′rimus, -a, -um**
ā′cer, ā′cris, ā′cre	**ā′crior, ā′crius**	**ācer′rimus, -a, -um**

Note. — The corresponding adverbs end in **-ē** in the superlative: **crēberrimē.**

504. Drill. — Compare **sacer, celer, miser, pulcher, firmus, altus.**

505. Five Adjectives with Superlative in *-limus*

The superlative of five adjectives ending in **-lis** is formed by adding **-limus, -a, -um** to the base of the positive:

fa′cilis, -e	**faci′lior, faci′lius**	**facil′limus, -a, -um**
diffi′cilis, -e	**diffici′lior, diffici′lius**	**difficil′limus, -a, -um**
si′milis, -e	**simi′lior, simi′lius**	**simil′limus, -a, -um**
dissi′milis, -e	**dissimi′lior, dissimi′lius**	**dissimil′limus, -a, -um**
hu′milis, -e	**humi′lior, humi′lius**	**humil′limus, -a, -um**

Note. — Other **-lis** adjectives, such as **nōbilis, -e, ūtilis, -e,** etc., form the superlative regularly — *i.e.* by adding **-issimus, -a, -um** to the base of the positive: **nōbil-is′simus, -a, -um.**

The corresponding adverbs end in **-ē** in the superlative: **facillimē.**

506. Dative with Adjectives

1. **Hic liber est similis illī,** *This book is similar to that.*
2. **Ille homō est frātrī meō inimīcus,** *That man is unfriendly to my brother.*

Observe that the dative is often used with Latin adjectives whose English equivalents are followed by *to*. The following have already been studied: **amīcus, inimīcus, similis, dissimilis, aptus, grātus.**

507. Exercises

Oral. 1. Nihil est nōbīs ūtilius quam bonus liber; nam est nōbilissimus amīcōrum, semper firmus et vērus. 2. Humilis homō nec altē cadere nec graviter potest. 3. Rōmānōrum deī dissimillimī nostrō Deō erant. 4. Hic equus similior meō est quam ille. 5. Frāter, cūr capis id quod nōn tuum proprium est? 6. Mīlitēs iussī sunt explicāre ōrdinēs, sed id erat difficillimum ob parvum spatium. 7. Cornēlī, quid sorōrī tuae accidit? Cūr nōn vēnit cum reliquīs?

FIG. 147. AN OFFICER

Caricature made with chalk by a Roman soldier on a barracks wall in Pompeii.

Written. 1. Not all the neighboring nations were friendly to the Romans. 2. The teacher in a very beautiful speech unfolded the life of Caesar. 3. As our men approached, the enemy fought more bravely. 4. The places in which our soldiers fell are the most sacred in Gaul. 5. This region is fit for (to) some men, but not for others.

508. Legal Phrases in English

Lawyers use so many Latin phrases daily that they must be familiar with Latin. A few such phrases are:

subpoenā, a summons to court *under penalty* for failure to attend.

ex post factō, *resulting after the fact; e.g.* a law which makes punishable acts committed before its passage.

in fōrmā pauperis, *in the form* (or *manner*) *of a poor man;* to sue as a poor man and so avoid the costs of the suit.

in propriā persōnā, *in one's own person* (not through some one else).

Exercise. — Look through the court records and legal items in the newspapers for other Latin phrases.

509. Daedalus et Īcarus

In īnsulā Crētā Mīnōs fuit rēx. Daedalus cum fīliō parvō Īcarō ibi captīvus fuit. Crētam nōn amāvit. Fugere nōn potuit quod mare prohibuit. "Neque per terram," inquit, "neque per mare fugere possum, sed caelum certē nōn clausum est. Illā viā difficillimā prō- cēdēmus." Itaque ālās parāvit, simillimās ālīs vērīs avium.[1] Partēs ālārum cērā ligāvit. Īcarus ad patrem stābat, ālās levissimās tangēbat, opus patris impediēbat. Tandem fīnis labōris aderat; ālae parātae erant. Tum Daedalus fīlium hīs verbīs monuit:

"In mediō caelō prōcēdēmus; nam, sī humilius volābimus,[2] undae ālās graviōrēs facient; sī altius volābimus, ignis ālās ūret."

Tum omnēs partēs ālārum fīliō ostendit et omnia in ōrdine explicāvit. Omnia parāta erant, et Daedalus

[1] *of birds.* [2] *fly.*

ipse ālās mōvit. Perīculum esse sēnsit et fīliō timuit. Antecessit et fīlium iussit post volāre.

Agricolae territī ex agrīs eōs vīdērunt; multī putāvērunt eōs deōs esse. Celerrimē pater fīliusque aera[1] ālīs pepulērunt.[2] Multās terrās relīquērunt. Tum puer nōn iam timidus patrem ducem relīquit. Verba patris memoriā nōn tenuit et altius volāvit. Celeriter sōl cēram solvit; nōn iam ālae haesērunt. Praeceps puer miser in mare cecidit; frūstrā nōmen patris clāmāvit. Ab illō posteā hoc mare nōmen[3] accēpit.

Fig. 148. Daedalus et Īcarus

Interim pater, nōn iam pater, in omnibus regiōnibus fīlium petīvit, nōmen fīlī clāmāvit. Tandem ālās Īcarī in undīs vīdit.

Tum ipse ad Siciliam pervēnit et ibi multōs annōs ēgit. Sed aliī scrībunt eum in Italiam volāvisse et ibi in templō ālās posuisse. Hōc modō deīs prō salūte grātiās ēgit.

Prīmus omnium hominum Daedalus per caelum lātum volāvit, sī auctōrēs Graecī et Rōmānī vērum dīxērunt. Nunc multī hominēs volant, sed nōn ālīs.

Read Sabin, pp. 260–261; Gayley, pp. 246–247; Guerber, pp. 253–255; Bulfinch, pp. 190–192.

---

[1] Accusative singular: *air*. [2] From **pellō**: *beat*. [3] The Icarian Sea.

LESSON LXXIII

COMPARISON OF IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

510. Vocabulary

extrē'mus, –a, –um, *farthest, last, end of* (extremist)
īnfe'rior, īnfe'rius, *lower* (inferiority)
pro'ximus, –a, –um, *nearest, next* (with dat.) (proximity)
sum'mus, –a, –um, *highest, top of* (summit)
ulte'rior, ulte'rius, *farther;* **ul'timus, –a, –um,** *farthest* (ultimate)

511. Irregular Adjectives Compared

In English, certain adjectives in common use are compared irregularly, such as *good, better, best; bad, worse, worst.*

In Latin, the following adjectives, among others, are compared irregularly and should be memorized:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus, –a, –um (*good*)	**melior, melius** (*better*)	**optimus, –a, –um** (*best*)
malus, –a, –um (*bad*)	**peior, peius** (*worse*)	**pessimus, –a, –um** (*worst*)
magnus, –a, –um (*large*)	**maior, maius** (*larger*)	**maximus, –a, –um** (*largest*)
parvus, –a, –um (*small*)	**minor, minus** (*smaller*)	**minimus, –a, –um** (*smallest*)
multus, –a, –um (*much*)	——, **plūs**[1] (*more*)	**plūrimus, –a, –um** (*most*)

Exercise. — Find English derivatives of the above words.

[1] Gen. **plūris**; there is no masculine and feminine singular, and no dative in any gender; the plural is **plūrēs, plūra,** gen. **plūrium,** etc. See **647.**

512. Irregular Adverbs Compared

Adverbs formed from the above adjectives are compared, in general, according to the rule (**498**); irregularities not explained by reference to the corresponding adjective forms are underscored and should be noted carefully:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bĕnĕ (*well*)	**melius** (*better*)	**optimē** (*best*)
malĕ (*badly*)	**peius** (*worse*)	**pessimē** (*worst*)
——	**magis** (*more*)	**maximē** (*most*)
——	**minus** (*less*)	**minimē** (*least*)
multum (*much*)	**plūs** (*more*)	**plūrimum** (*most*)

Note. — Certain other irregular adjectives and adverbs occur less frequently in the comparative and superlative forms and have accordingly been omitted from the list to be memorized. A few will be introduced as vocabulary words in the form in which they most frequently occur.

513. *Extrēmus* and *Summus*. — In English, it is necessary to employ nouns to translate adjectives like **extrēmus** and **summus: in extrēmā ōrātiōne,** *at the end of the speech;* **summus mōns,** *top of the mountain* (cf. **reliquī mīlitēs,** *rest of the soldiers;* **in mediō flūmine,** *in the middle of the river*). When thus used the adjective commonly precedes its noun.

514. Exercises

Oral. 1. Nōnne spērās proximam hiemem nōn futūram esse dūriōrem quam hanc? 2. Optimī cīvēs patriam semper fortissimē dēfendent. 3. Pessimī hominēs in ultimās regiōnēs mittī dēbent. 4. Rōmānī ad īnferiō-

rem partem flūminis ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus iter facient. 5. Summus mōns ā nōbīs facillimē occupātus est. 6. Hostēs magis territī sunt quod Rōmānōs cum maximā celeritāte ad castra prōcessūrōs esse putāvērunt. 7. Rōmānī cum maiōre salūte pugnābant quod plūrimī eōrum meliōra arma quam Gallī habēbant.

Fig. 149. Puer Rōmānus

Written. 1. He said that boys and girls ought to read the best books. 2. Can a horse run more swiftly than a man? 3. We shall do this very quickly and well without your help. 4. Our men fought more bravely than the enemy. 5. The smallest boy is not the worst.

515. English Word Studies

A number of English words preserve the forms of the comparative and superlative of Latin irregular adjectives: *major* (cf. *mayor*), *maximum*, *minor*, *minus*, *minimum*, *plus*, *nonplus*, *inferior*, *superior*, *ulterior*, *prior*, *anterior*, *posterior*, *interior*, *exterior*, *junior*, *senior*.

516. Pyrrhus et Eius Victōria

Pyrrhus, rēx Ēpīrī, ā Tarentīnīs in Italiam vocātus est, quī eō tempore cum Rōmānīs pugnābant. Is ad Italiam vēnit et elephantōrum auxiliō vīcit, quod Rō-

mānī elephantōs nōn anteā vīsōs timuērunt. Sed plūrimī Pyrrhī mīlitēs interfectī sunt. Pyrrhus, ubi omnia corpora Rōmānōrum interfectōrum vulnera in fronte habēre vīdit, haec verba fēcit: "Cum tālibus[1] mīlitibus tōtum orbem[2] vincere possum!" Amīcīs dē victōriā agentibus dīxit: "Sī iterum eōdem modō vīcerō, nūllōs mīlitēs in Ēpīrum redūcam."[3]

Read Harding, pp. 115–119; Guerber (*Story*), pp. 115–118.

Fig. 150. A House in Pompeii

The interesting thing in this picture is the upper story. In most Pompeian houses the upper portions have disappeared.

[1] *such.* [2] *earth.* [3] Hence the phrase "a Pyrrhic victory," used of a victory which is really a defeat.

LESSON LXXIV

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

517. Vocabulary

cae′dō, –ere, cecī′dī, cae′sus, *cut, kill* (incision)
cōnspi′ciō, –ere, –spe′xī, –spec′tus, *catch sight of, see* [***speciō,*** *look*]
con′trā, adv. and prep. with acc., *against*
crē′dō, –ere, crē′didī, –crē′ditus, *believe, intrust* (with dat.) (credit)
fal′lō, –ere, fefel′lī, fal′sus, *deceive* (fallacy)
flu′ō, –ere, flū′xī, flū′xus, *flow* (fluency)
in′cidō, –ere, in′cidī, ——, *fall into* or *upon, happen* [***cadō***]
num′quam, adv., *never*
sū′mō, –ere, sūmp′sī, sūmp′tus, *take, assume* (assumption)
tri′buō, –ere, tri′buī, tribū′tus, *bestow, grant* (contribute)

518. Reflexive Pronouns

In English, the pronouns *myself, ourselves,* etc., may be used in apposition with a noun or pronoun for emphasis, like Latin **ipse** (**437**): *I saw him* ***myself, Ipse*** **eum vīdī.** They are also used alone as objects of verbs or of prepositions to refer to the subject of the verb; they are then called **reflexive pronouns:** *I saw* ***myself.***

In Latin, the personal pronouns of the first and second persons may be used reflexively, but in the third person Latin has a special reflexive pronoun, **suī,** declined alike in the singular and plural:

Gen. **su′ī,**	*of himself, herself, itself, themselves*
Dat. **si′bi,**	*to* " " " "
Acc. **sē (sē′sē),**	" " " "
Abl. **sē (sē′sē),** *with* (*from,* etc.)	" " " "

Query. — Why is **suī** without a nominative?

519. How Reflexive Pronouns Are Used

(ego)	**mē rogō,** *I ask myself*	(nōs)	**nōs rogāmus,** *we ask ourselves*
(tū)	**tē rogās,** *you ask yourself*	(vōs)	**vōs rogātis,** *you ask yourselves*
(is)	**sē rogat,** *he asks himself*	(eī)	**sē rogant,** *they ask themselves*

520. Drill. — Give a synopsis of **līberō,** 1st sing.; **fallō,** 2nd plur.; **caedō,** 3rd sing., using the proper reflexive pronoun with each.

Fig. 151. A Food Shop in Pompeii as It Was

521. Reflexive Adjectives

Corresponding to **meus, tuus,** etc., derived from **ego, tū,** etc., there is the reflexive adjective **suus, –a, –um,** *his own,* etc., derived from **suī.**

Caution. — Remember that **suus, –a, –um** *always refers to the subject of the verb.* When *his, her,* etc., do not refer to the subject, **eius,** etc., must be used (**426**).

522. Exercises

Oral. 1. Captīvus sē suaque omnia mihi crēdidit. 2. Crēditisne Deum mare terramque prō sē aut prō nōbīs fēcisse? 3. Frāter eius gladiō sē cecīdit et mātrem suam terruit. 4. Arma sūmēmus et nōs fortiter dēfendēmus contrā pessimōs nostrōs hostēs. 5. Reliquī mīlitēs ācrius pugnāvērunt quod nostrās cōpiās in summō monte ante sē cōnspexerant. 6. Per illam terram fluunt decem flūmina quae in mare incidunt. 7. Tū tē ipsum fallere semper potuistī sed mē numquam fefellistī. 8. Mūnera pūblica optimīs, nōn pessimīs, hominibus tribuī dēbent.

Written. 1. We always praise ourselves and accuse others. 2. Do you believe that either he or I took your money? 3. He says that he himself has four brothers, but he cannot deceive me. 4. Intrust yourselves and all your (possessions) to us and we will never take arms against you. 5. The leader of the enemy, having caught sight of us, killed himself because he knew that his own forces were smaller.

523. English Word Studies

In the fourteenth century there began a great revival of interest in the ancient Latin and Greek authors. This revival is known as the **Renaissance,** or **Renascence** (**re-nāscor**). Beginning in Italy, it spread over western Europe and reached England in the sixteenth century. Ever since that time new words have been added to English from Latin and Greek in great numbers. As a result, over ninety per cent of the words in Caesar and Cicero have English derivatives. Words

of this last period are easily distinguished by their similarity to the Latin originals.

One result of the introduction of new words directly from the Latin was the formation of a number of **doublets,** words derived at different periods from the same Latin word and having different meanings. Note the following (the earlier form precedes): *conceit, conception* (**concipiō**); *sample, example* (**exemplum**); *feat, fact* (**factum**); *Mr., master* (**magister**); *loyal, legal* (**lēx**); *mayor, major* (**maior**); *treason, tradition* (**trādō**); *chance, cadence* (**cadō**).

Exercise. — Show how the above doublets got their meanings from the original Latin meaning.

524. Pyrrhus et Fabricius

Lēgātī Rōmānī ad Pyrrhum missī sunt et ab eō bene acceptī sunt. Ūnus ex lēgātīs Rōmānīs, Fabricius, Pyrrhō maximē grātus erat. Eī Pyrrhus sēcrētō dīxit: "Cūr nōn in Ēpīrō manēs? Quārtam rēgnī meī partem tibi tribuam." Sed Fabricius dīxit sē numquam partem rēgnī eius sūmptūrum esse. Proximō annō Fabricius cum Pyrrhō pugnāvit. Medicus rēgis nocte ad eum vēnit et prōmīsit sē prō praemiō Pyrrhum interfectūrum esse. Fabricius iussit hunc ligātum redūcī ad dominum et Pyrrhō omnia dīcī. Tum rēx maximē mōtus dīxit: "Ille est Fabricius quī nōn facilius ab honestāte quam sōl ā cursū[1] suō āvertī potest!"

Read Harding, pp. 121–122; Guerber (*Story*), pp. 119–121.

[1] Ablative.

FIG. 152. THE PERISTYLE OF A ROMAN HOUSE (From "Julius Caesar.")

LESSON LXXV

ORDINAL NUMERALS. DECLENSION OF *DUO*, *TRĒS*, AND *MILLE*

525. Vocabulary

cen′tum, indecl. adj., *hundred* (centennial)
cōnfi′ciō, –ere, –fē′cī, –fec′tus, (*do thoroughly*), *complete, exhaust* (cf. "do up") [***faciō***]
e′mō, –ere, ē′mī, ēmp′tus, *get, buy* (redemption)
fran′gō, –ere, frē′gī, frāc′tus, *break* (fraction)
interfi′ciō, –ere, –fē′cī, –fec′tus, *kill* (cf. "done for") [***faciō***]
o′pus, o′peris, n., *work* (operate)
perfi′ciō, –ere, –fē′cī, –fec′tus, *finish* [***faciō***]
trā′dō, –ere, trā′didī, trā′ditus, *give* or *hand over, deliver* [***dō***]

526. Ordinal Numerals

You have already learned the **cardinal** numbers used in counting from 1–10 (**339**). To show order or succession other numbers, called **ordinals** (*first, second,* etc.), are used. The Latin ordinals are declined like **magnus, –a, –um.** Memorize the first ten ordinals as follows[1]:

prī′mus, –a, –um, *first*	**sex′tus, –a, –um,** *sixth*
secun′dus, –a, –um, *second*	**sep′timus, –a, –um,** *seventh*
ter′tius, –a, –um, *third*	**octā′vus, –a, –um,** *eighth*
quār′tus, –a, –um, *fourth*	**nō′nus, –a, –um,** *ninth*
quīn′tus, –a, –um, *fifth*	**de′cimus, –a, –um,** *tenth*

Drill. — Suggest and define one English derivative from as many of these ordinals as possible.

[1] For complete list of cardinals and ordinals, see **649.**

527. Declension of *Duo* and *Trēs*

The cardinal numbers from 4 to 100 are indeclinable. You have learned the declension of **ūnus, –a, –um** (**441**). **Duo,** *two,* and **trēs,** *three,* are declined as follows:

	M.	F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
Nom.	du′o	du′ae	du′o	trēs	tri′a
Gen.	duō′rum	duā′rum	duō′rum	tri′um	tri′um
Dat.	duō′bus	duā′bus	duō′bus	tri′bus	tri′bus
Acc.	du′ōs	du′ās	du′o	trēs	tri′a
Abl.	duō′bus	duā′bus	duō′bus	tri′bus	tri′bus

528. Declension and Use of *Mīlle*

Mīlle, when used to denote one thousand, is usually an indeclinable adjective (like **centum**): **mīlle hominēs.** When used of two or more thousands, it is a neuter plural **i**–stem noun (cf. **mare, 381**). The word used with the plural forms of **mīlle** must be in the genitive: **duo mīlia hominum** (lit., *two thousands* ***of*** *men*), *two thousand men.*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	mīl′le	mī′lia
Gen.	mīl′le	mī′lium
Dat.	mīl′le	mī′libus
Acc.	mīl′le	mī′lia
Abl.	mīl′le	mī′libus

529. Exercises

Oral. 1. Nāvī frāctā, omnēs certē interficientur. 2. Duōs optimōs librōs ēmī quōs hāc aestāte legam. 3. Sī plūrimī puerī aut absunt aut tardī sunt, disciplīnam accipere nōn possunt; certō tempore adesse dēbent. 4. Mīlle nautās et trēs firmās nāvēs cum tribus ducibus contrā hostēs mīsimus. 5. Post septimam pugnam nōn iam vim nostram hostēs cōnfectī sustinēre poterant et nōbīs sē trādidērunt. 6. Properābāmus condiciōnēs pācis prōpōnere, sed hostēs centum mīlia mīlitum iam ēdūxerant. 7. Hoc opus quārtā hōrā inceptum octāvā aut nōnā hōrā perficiēmus.

Written. 1. Anna was third in rank, but her brother was tenth. 2. The boundaries of two nations extend to the lower part of this river. 3. Three men were killed, and two received wounds in that battle. 4. Our men finished the march, although exhausted and pressed-hard by the enemy.

530. English Word Studies

Much difficulty is caused in English spelling by silent or weakly sounded letters. This difficulty is often solved by referring to the Latin original: *laboratory*, *repetition*, *library*, *separate*, *auxiliary*, *comparative*, *debt*, *reign*, *receipt*. The Latin original often helps in other difficulties: *consensus*, *annuity*, *deficit*, *accelerate*.

Exercise. — Define the above words and give their Latin originals.

Much confusion is caused in English by the combinations *ei* and *ie*. It will be helpful to remember that the derivatives of compounds of **capiō** have *ei*, as *receive*.

531. Rēgulus

Contrā Carthāginiēnsēs bellum[1] ā Rōmānīs susceptum est. Victī Carthāginiēnsēs pācem ā Rōmānīs petīvērunt. Quam[2] Rēgulus, dux Rōmānōrum, dīxit sē nōn datūrum esse nisi dūrissimīs condiciōnibus. Itaque Āfrī auxilium ā Lacedaemoniīs petīvērunt. Tum, Rōmānīs victīs, Rēgulus captus est. Sed Carthāginiēnsēs aliīs proeliīs superātī, Rēgulum Rōmam[3] mīsērunt. Eum iussērunt pācem ā Rōmānīs obtinēre et permūtātiōnem captīvōrum facere. Ille ductus in senātum Rōmānum dīxit sē esse captīvum, nōn iam Rōmānum. Itaque etiam uxōrem ā sē remōvit. Dīxit Carthāginiēnsēs, frāctōs multīs proeliīs, spem[4] nūllam nisi in pāce habēre; nōn esse ūtile multa mīlia captīvōrum propter sē ūnum, aetāte cōnfectum, reddī. Senātus verbīs eius permōtus nōn pācem cum hostibus fēcit. Itaque Rēgulus ad Africam nāvigāvit et sē Carthāginiēnsibus trādidit, ā quibus omnibus suppliciīs interfectus est.

Read Haaren and Poland, pp. 114–121; Morris (*Roman*), pp. 126–134; Guerber (*Story*), pp. 124–128.

---

[1] First Punic or Carthaginian War, 264–241 B.C. These wars were for the supremacy of the ancient world. Carthage was in northern Africa.

[2] In Latin, a relative is often used at the beginning of a sentence to connect with the preceding sentence. In English, a demonstrative is used instead. [3] *to Rome.* [4] *hope.*

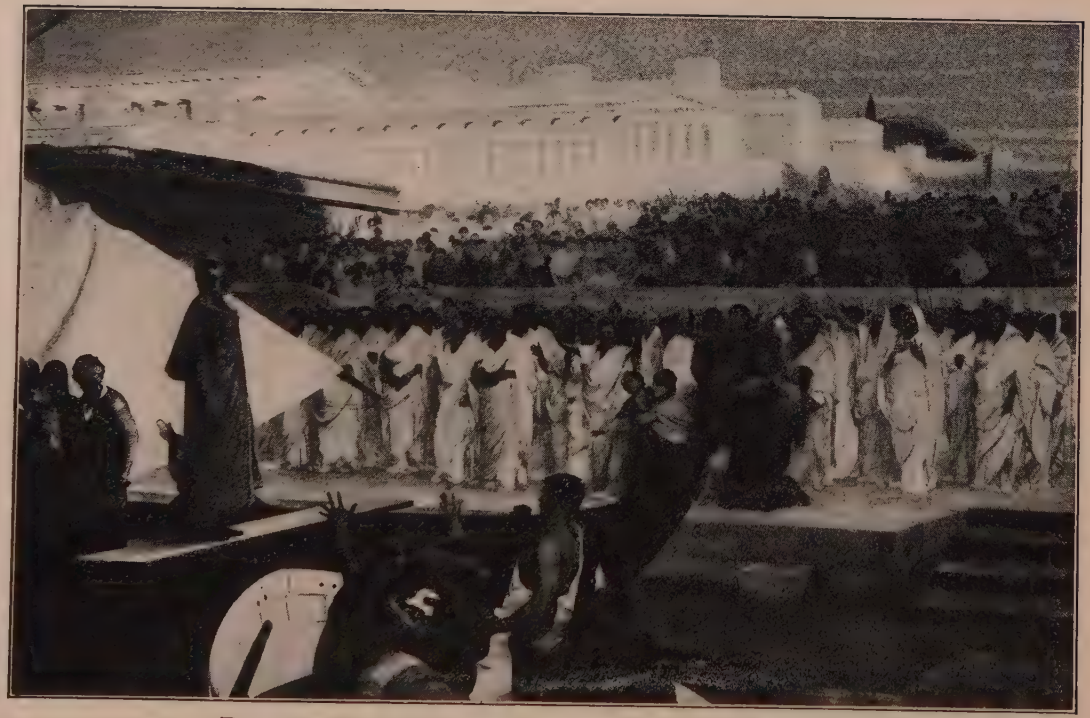


FIG. 153. REGULUS LEAVES ROME TO RETURN TO CARTHAGE
From a painting by Maccari in the modern senate house of Rome.

EIGHTH REVIEW (LESSONS LXX–LXXV)

532. Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. condiciō
2. gēns
3. nēmō
4. opus
5. ōrātiō
6. regiō

Adjectives

7. aptus
8. centum
9. decimus
10. difficilis
11. dissimilis
12. extrēmus
13. humilis
14. īnferior
15. nōnus
16. octāvus
17. quārtus
18. quīntus
19. prīmus
20. proprius
21. proximus
22. secundus
23. septimus
24. sextus
25. similis
26. summus
27. suus
28. tertius
29. ūtilis
30. ulterior

Pronoun

31. suī

Numerals

32. centum
33. duo
34. mīlle
35. trēs

Verbs

36. accidō
37. cadō
38. caedō
39. cōnficiō
40. cōnspiciō
41. crēdō
42. emō
43. explicō
44. fallō
45. fluō
46. frangō
47. incidō
48. īnstruō
49. interficiō
50. iūdicō
51. ligō
52. perficiō
53. rapiō
54. repellō
55. respondeō
56. statuō
57. sūmō
58. trādō
59. tribuō
60. vincō

Adverbs

61. bene
62. male
63. magis
64. minus
65. multum
66. numquam

Preposition

67. contrā

Conjunction

68. quam

533. Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. *condition*
2. *tribe, nation*
3. *no one*
4. *work*
5. *speech*
6. *region*

Adjectives

7. *suitable*
8. *hundred*
9. *tenth*
10. *difficult*
11. *unlike*
12. *farthest, end of*
13. *low, humble*
14. *lower*
15. *ninth*
16. *eighth*
17. *fourth*
18. *fifth*
19. *first*
20. *one's own*
21. *next*
22. *second*
23. *seventh*
24. *sixth*
25. *like*
26. *highest, top of*
27. *his own*
28. *third*
29. *useful*
30. *farther*

Pronoun

31. *himself*

Numerals

32. *hundred*
33. *two*
34. *thousand*
35. *three*

Verbs

36. *happen*
37. *fall*
38. *cut, kill*
39. *complete, exhaust*
40. *catch sight of*
41. *believe*
42. *buy*
43. *unfold*
44. *deceive*
45. *flow*
46. *break*
47. *fall into, happen*
48. *arrange, provide*
49. *kill*
50. *judge*
51. *tie*
52. *finish*
53. *seize, carry off*
54. *drive back*
55. *answer*
56. *place, determine*
57. *take*
58. *give over, deliver*
59. *bestow*
60. *conquer*

Adverbs

61. *well*
62. *badly*
63. *more*
64. *less*
65. *much*
66. *never*

Preposition

67. *against*

Conjunction

68. *than*

534. Indirect Statement: General Review

1. The following verbs, already studied, are used to introduce indirect statements. Review their meanings and quote the rule (see **467**):

iūdicō, nūntiō, putō, spērō; memoriā teneō, respondeō, videō; cognōscō, crēdō, dīcō, scrībō; audiō, inveniō, sciō, sentiō.

Summary

In Latin	*In English*
(*a*) No conjunction is used.	(*a*) "That" is regularly used.
(*b*) The subject is in the accusative.	(*b*) The subject is in the nominative.
(*c*) The verb is in the infinitive.	(*c*) The verb is in the indicative.

535. Noun and Adjective Review

Decline: **ūtilior liber; certior condiciō; melior regiō; aptissima ōrātiō; maxima gēns; optimus prīnceps.**

Remember that all third declension adjectives are **i**–stems, *i.e.* they have **–ī** in the ablative singular, **–ia** in the neuter nominative and accusative plural, and **–ium** in the genitive plural. *The only exceptions are comparatives, none of which are* **i**–*stems.* Present participles are **i**–stems but have **–e** in the ablative singular when used as verbs, not adjectives.

536. Rapid-Fire Drill. — *Give in Latin:*

(*a*) *more difficult* in the nom., sing. and plur.
(*b*) *most beautiful* in the gen., sing. and plur.
(*c*) *rather long* in the dat., sing. and plur.
(*d*) *very remarkable* in the acc., sing. and plur.
(*e*) *too easy* in the abl., sing. and plur.

537. Verb Review

1. Give the principal parts of **cōnficiō, īnstruō, cadō, crēdō, fluō, caedō, repellō, sūmō, frangō, perficiō, possum.**

2. Give a synopsis of the following verbs in the third plural, indicative active, doing all the verbs in one tense before proceeding to the next tense (*e.g.* **iūdicant, respondent,** etc.): **iūdicō, respondeō, emō, rapiō,** and **audiō.**

538. Rapid-Fire Drill

(*a*) State **tense, mood,** and **voice:** cōnficiēmus, interficiunt, sūmite, ligāns, respondēre, victus, raptūrus, iūdicāte, repelle, cecidisse, plicābō, tribuēbant, flūxit, cōnspiceris, perficientur, īnstrue.

(*b*) **Give in Latin:** to cut, to have caught sight of, to be going to drive back, to be broken, to have been finished.

539. Word Studies

(*a*) Give the Latin words suggested by the following English derivatives:

accident, appropriate, conditional, conspicuous, credible, fallacious, implicate, instructive, ligature, opera, proximity, rapture, regional, redemptive, repulsive, tribute, victor.

(*b*) From the following French numerals obtain the Latin cardinal numbers from which they are derived and rearrange in the proper sequence:

trois, sept, un, cinq, quatre, dix, huit, neuf, deux, six

(*c*) From the following English words derive the Latin ordinal numerals and arrange them in the proper sequence:

tertiary, quintessence, quartet, secondary, octavo, primary, decimate.

What three ordinal numbers are not represented? Add these to complete the series 1–10.

(*d*) Find and use in sentences as many English derivatives as possible from **nāvigō, doceō, vincō, sūmō.**

Enter the derivatives in your notebook, using a separate page for each Latin word.

FIG. 154. BATHS OF CARACALLA, ROME

Restored view of part of the interior of baths built in the third century A.D. Such baths were really magnificent clubhouses which served as community centers for the Romans. Besides the baths and swimming pools, there were gymnasiums, lecture rooms, reading rooms, etc.

540. THE STORY OF LUCIUS (*Cont.*)

Caesaris Triumphus

Quondam pater Lūcī ā Forō revertit et dīxit triumphum Caesaris futūrum esse et posteā magnōs lūdōs. C.[1] Iūlius Caesar tum erat maximus Rōmānōrum. Galliam, Alexandrīam, Pontum, Āfricam vīcerat. Decem annōs in Galliā ēgerat et, multīs mīlibus hostium pulsīs, illam terram in prōvinciam Rōmānam redēgerat. Pompeius, cum Caesare prō summā potestāte contendēns, in fugam datus erat. Tum Caesar in Aegyptum prōcesserat et, Alexandrīnīs pulsīs, Cleopātrae nōmen rēgīnae Aegyptiōrum dederat. In Asiā rēgem Pontī celeriter vīcerat et ex eius rēgnō nōtās illās litterās mīserat in quibus erant sōla verba, "Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī." Nunc futūrī erant quattuor triumphī, quod Caesar dē bellīs reverterat.

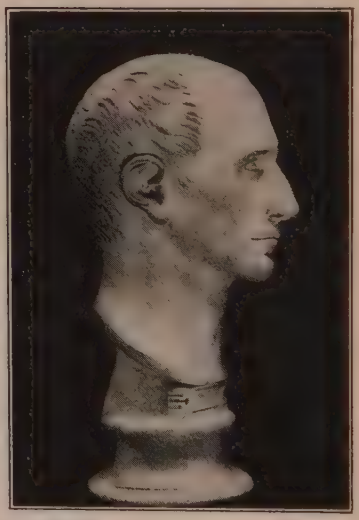


FIG. 155. C. IŪLIUS CAESAR

This is considered the finest likeness of Julius Caesar. It is now in the British Museum, London.

[1] C. = Gāius.

Waiting

Lūcius numquam triumphum vīderat et dē eō multa rogāvit. Pater eī dīxit triumphum esse similem pompae in Circō habitae et Caesarem per Circum et Sacram Viam ad Capitōlium prōcessūrum esse. Lūcius permōtus vix exspectāre poterat. Sed omnia ad eum quī exspectat veniunt; tempus triumphōrum aderat. Prīmus et clārissimus triumphus quem Caesar ēgit erat Gallicus. Pater Lūcī cognātus Caesaris erat et optima loca obtinuit. Ubi Caesar in Campō Mārtiō mīlitēs īnstrūxit et ex praedā eīs praemia tribuit, pompa tardē prōcēdere incipit.

"Here They Come!"

Post longum tempus (ut[1] Lūciō vīsum est) pompa aderat. Prīmī fuērunt cōnsulēs et senātōrēs, post quōs vēnērunt cornicinēs, quī Lūciō grātissimī fuērunt. Tum cōnspexit titulōs[2] ducum oppidōrumque captōrum cum fōrmīs exemplīsque[3] oppidōrum. Dē nōminibus nōn nōtīs multa rogāvit: "Quī sunt Aquītānī? Quī sunt Belgae?" Pater respondit: "Gallia est omnis dīvīsa[4] in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam eī quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae." "Quī sunt Helvētiī?" "Helvētiī cōnstituērunt per prōvinciam nostram iter facere quod maiōrēs fīnēs habēre cupīvērunt, sed ā Caesare prohibitī sunt." "Quis est Ariovistus?" "Ariovistus erat superbus rēx Germānōrum, ā Caesare ex Galliā expulsus." "Quī sunt Ger-

[1] *as.* [2] *Placards* (with names of towns, etc.). [3] *Models* (of wood, etc.). [4] From **dīvidō**. Use derivative.

mānī?" "Maxima pars Germānōrum trāns Rhēnum flūmen incolunt.[1] Etiam trāns Rhēnum Caesar mīlitēs suōs trādūxit et cum Germānīs contendit." "Quid est Britannia?" "Britannia est ultima īnsula, ā barbarīs culta, in quam Caesar cōpiās bis dūxit."

FIG. 156. TRIUMPHAL PROCESSION, ARCH OF TITUS, ROME
Note the famous seven-branched candlestick from the temple at Jerusalem, captured in 70 A.D.

HAIL! THE CONQUERING HERO COMES!

Posteā Lūcius cōnspexit arma captōrum prīncipum et prīncipēs ipsōs ligātōs, inter quōs erat Vercingetorīx. Nunc populus maximē clāmat. "Quis est ille?" rogat Lūcius. Pater respondet: "Ille est extrēmus dux Gallōrum, quī victōs Gallōs ad bellum permōvit. Pompā ad Capitōlium accēdente, interficiētur." Nunc clāmōrēs audiuntur: "Caesar adest! Caesar adest!" Currus im-

[1] In Latin a plural verb may be used when the subject is grammatically singular but refers to more than one.

perātōris, quattuor equīs trāctus, cernitur. Caesar ipse togam pictam[1] gerit et scēptrum tenet. In currū[2] stat servus corōnam super Caesaris caput tenēns. Sed subitō omnēs terrentur: axe frāctō, Caesar paene ē currū ēicitur. Hic sōlus nōn commōtus est. Dum novum currum exspectat, Lūcium cōnspicit et eum rogat: "Tū, quis es?" Lūcius respondet: "Ego sum Lūcius Iūlius, cognātus tuus. Mīles erō et multās gentēs vincam." Caesar rīdēns eius caput tetigit et dīxit: "Bene incipis. Putō tē imperātōrem futūrum esse." Pompa rūrsus prōcēdit, et nunc mīlitēs Caesaris accēdunt, clāmantēs, "Iō triumphe![3] Iō triumphe!" Etiam carmina canunt. Inter alia Lūcius haec audit:

Fig. 157. Triumphal Chariot
The emperor Marcus Aurelius (161–180 A.D.) entering Rome.

"Ecce Caesar nunc triumphat quī subēgit Galliās." Itaque omnēs discēdunt, Lūciō clāmante, "Iō triumphe! Iō triumphe!"

[1] *Embroidered* (with gold). [2] Ablative. [3] Exclamation: *Triumph!*

LESSON LXXVII

ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT. WORDS OFTEN CONFUSED

541. Vocabulary

ae′tās, aetā′tis, f., *age, time of life*	(eternal)
attin′gō, –ere, at′tigī, attāc′tus, *touch, reach*	[***tangō***]
exer′ceō, –ē′re, –er′cuī, –er′citus, *occupy, train*	(exercise)
exīs′timō, –ā′re, –ā′vī, –ā′tus, *think, consider*	[***aestimō,*** *estimate*]
in′colō, –ere, –co′luī, –cul′tus, *dwell, inhabit*	[***colō***]
intel′legō, –ere, –lē′xī, –lēc′tus, *understand*	(intellect)
iun′gō, –ere, iūn′xī, iūnc′tus, *join to* (with dat. indir. obj.)	(junction)
* **mēn′sis, mēn′sis, mēn′sium,** m., *month*	
vir′tūs, virtū′tis, f., *manliness, courage*	[***vir***]

FIG. 158. THE ALBAN LAKE NEAR ROME

This lake is in the crater of an extinct volcano. On its shores there once was the city of Alba Longa, whose inhabitants are said to have founded Rome.

542. Accusative of Extent

Duōs annōs remānsit, *He remained two years.*
Flūmen decem pedēs altum est, *The river is ten feet deep.*

Observe that

(*a*) **duōs annōs** answers the question, *How long?*
(*b*) **decem pedēs** answers the question, *How much?*
(*c*) both express *extent* by the accusative;
(*d*) the English and Latin constructions are identical and are not to be confused with the direct object.

543. Rule. — *Extent of time or space is expressed by the accusative.*

544. Stop! Look! Think!

The following words, which have already been used, closely resemble one another in form or sound and must be carefully discriminated. For difference in meaning, see the Latin-English Vocabulary at the end of the book:

aetās, aestās	**cīvis, cīvitās**	**ob, ab**
accēdō, accidō	**gēns, genus**	**pars, pār**
alius, alter, altus	**ibi, ubi**	**pōnō, possum**
caedō, cadō, cēdō	**liber, līber, līberī**	**vīs, vir**

545. Exercises

Oral. 1. Exīstimō hunc montem esse mīlle pedēs altum, illud flūmen duōs pedēs altum. 2. Nōnne intellegis virtūtem hōrum puerōrum maximam esse? 3. Illī hominēs multōs mēnsēs in bellō sē exercuērunt et nunc plūrimum valent. 4. Ille vir maximam aetātem attigit sed nōn iam vīrēs habet nec bene vidēre potest. 5. Multa mīlia Germānōrum, quī trāns flūmen Rhēnum incolu-

erant, pāce factā, Rōmānīs sēsē iūnxērunt. 6. Ego exīstimō nōs in illō locō duōs annōs remānsisse, sed frāter meus dīcit nōs ibi trēs annōs remānsisse.

Written. 1. My brother will arrive next year and remain with me[1] the whole summer. 2. The greater part of the winter we remain in town, but in summer we hasten to the fields. 3. We understand that you have been training yourselves for many months and years. 4. The longest months of our year are the first, the third, the fifth, the seventh, the eighth, the tenth, and the twelfth.[2]

546. English Word Studies

Most of the names of our states are Indian, but several of them are of Latin origin or form. Vermont means *green mountain* (**viridis mōns**), Pennsylvania is *Penn's woods* (**silva**), Virginia is the *maiden's* land (named after Queen Elizabeth, the virgin queen), Florida is the *flowery* land (**flōs, flōris**), Colorado is the land of the *colored* or *red* river, Montana is *mountainous* (**mōns**), Nevada is the land of *snow* (**nix, nivis**), and Rhode Island is said to be named after the Greek island of Rhodes, meaning *rose*. New Jersey means "New Caesarea," named after the island of Jersey, one of many places named in honor of one of the Caesars. The titles *Kaiser* and *Czar* also come from the name Caesar.

Names whose endings only are Latin are Carolina (Charles II), Georgia (George II), Louisiana (Louis XIV), and Indiana.

---

[1] See **254**, footnote 2. [2] **Duodecimus.**

547. Marius

C. Marius, vir humilis generis, ob maximam virtūtem cōnsul ā Rōmānīs factus est. Iugurthā, rēge Numidiae, victō, Marius bellum contrā Cimbrōs et Teutonēs suscēpit. Hī, quī extrēmōs fīnēs Germāniae incoluerant, Cimbrīs sē iūnxerant. Eō tempore hae duae gentēs novās sēdēs quaerēbant et prōvinciam Rōmānam oppugnābant. Tribus ducibus Rōmānīs ā barbarīs pulsīs, Marius mīlitēs trēs annōs exercuit et Teutonēs sub Alpibus proeliō superāvit.

Fig. 159. Marius

Cimbrī nihil dē victōriā Rōmānōrum audīvērunt et per lēgātōs agrōs sibi et Teutonibus petīvērunt. Marius rīdēns, "Illī quidem tenent," inquit, "semperque tenēbunt terram ā[1] nōbīs acceptam." Proximō annō contrā eōs pugnāvit. Nec minor erat pugna cum uxōribus eōrum quam cum virīs. Victae sē līberōsque suōs interfēcērunt.

Read Haaren and Poland, pp. 152–155; Guerber (*Story*), pp. 155–158.

[1] *from.*

LESSON LXXVIII

POST, POSTEĀ AND *POSTQUAM* DISTINGUISHED

548. Vocabulary

cir'cum, prep. with acc., *around*
*** mors, mor'tis, mor'tium,** f., *death* (mortal)
negō'tium, negō'tī, n., *business* [*ōtium*]
post'quam, conj., *after* [*post* + *quam*]
potes'tās, potestā'tis, f., *power, authority, chance* [*possum*]
prae, prep. with abl., *before, in front of*
praemit'tō, –ere, –mī'sī, –mis'sus, *send ahead* [*mittō*]
sa'tis, adv. and indecl. adj., *enough* (satisfaction)
su'per, prep. with acc., *over, above* [*superō*]
super'sum, –es'se, –fuī, –futū'rus, *be left over, survive* [*sum*]

549. Latin and English Word Formation

Ne– is sometimes used as a negative prefix in Latin: **nēmō** (**ne–homō**), **negōtium** (**ne–ōtium**), **neuter** (**ne–ūter**), **nūllus** (**ne–ūllus**).

Circum, contrā, prae, and **super** have their usual meanings when used as prefixes in Latin and English. In English **prae** becomes *pre–*, as *pre–pare, pre–fix;* **contrā** sometimes retains its form, sometimes becomes *counter–*, as *contra–dict, counter–act.* **Super–** sometimes takes the form *sur–* in English, in which case it must be distinguished from assimilated **sub–**: *surplus, sur–mount.*

Exercise. — Find ten English words with these prefixes, compounded with Latin words which you have studied.

550. *Post, Posteā* and *Postquam*

The conjunction **postquam,** meaning *after,* must be distinguished carefully from the adverb **posteā,** mean-

ing *afterwards*, and the preposition **post,**[1] meaning *after* (with acc.). Examine the following:

1. **Post illud bellum pāx cōnfirmāta est,** *After that war peace was established.*

2. **Cōnsidius posteā fuerat in Galliā,** *Considius had afterwards been in Gaul.*

3. **Caesar, postquam Gallōs fugere vīdit, cum omnibus cōpiīs secūtus est,** *After Caesar saw the Gauls fleeing, he followed with all his troops.*

Note that

(*a*) the addition of **quam** to **post** makes **postquam** a conjunction;

(*b*) **posteā** means literally *after that*, hence *afterwards;*

(*c*) the real difficulty is in the English use of *after*, as both a conjunction and a preposition.

551. Exercises

Oral. 1. Quis cōnspexit nautās nāvigantēs "plānīs" (in locō nāvium) super caput? 2. Post labōrēs bellī omnēs perpetuam pācem spērant. 3. Postquam mīlitēs servōs hostium cōnspexērunt eōs cēpērunt et circum viās ēgērunt. 4. Cui hoc difficile negōtium posteā mandātūrus sum, sī ego ipse hoc nunc nōn suscipiam? 5. Postquam hostēs ā mīlitibus praemissīs victī sunt, paucī superfuērunt. 6. Postquam decimum annum attigī, exīstimāvī mē nōn iam esse sub potestāte patris meī, sed mē fefellī. 7. Post mortem patris ego et frātrēs meī nōn iam in hōc locō satis commodē habitāre poterāmus.

Written. 1. After they fought for ten years, not many were left. 2. After the eighth year of the war we enlisted 100,000 men. 3. The first horse which I

[1] Sometimes used as an adverb like **posteā.**

bought was better than I expected, but the second was not good enough. 4. The Gauls, after their leader's death, joined themselves to the enemy.

552. Marius et Sulla

Postquam Sulla cōnsul contrā Mithridātem, rēgem Pontī, missus est, Marius cupīvit summam potestātem habēre. Posteā Sulla cum mīlitibus suīs ad urbem vēnit et eam armīs occupāvit. Marius in Āfricam fūgit. Sed postquam Sulla ad bellum discessit, Marius in Italiam ab amīcīs vocātus Rōmam vāstāvit. Omnēs nōbilēs variīs suppliciōrum generibus affēcit.

Fig. 160. Sulla

Post mortem Marī Sulla ad urbem vēnit et amīcōs eius superāvit. Dictātor factus, multa mīlia cīvium interficī iussit. Amīcus eum monuit: "Sī omnēs interficiēs, et nēmō supererit, quōrum cīvium dictātor eris?"

Read Haaren and Poland, pp. 162–170; Harding, pp. 170–172; Morris (*Roman*), pp. 191–197; Guerber (*Story*), pp. 158–164.

LESSON LXXIX

FOURTH DECLENSION

553. Vocabulary

cā′sus, –ūs, m., *fall, chance, accident* [***cadō***]
cruciā′tus, –ūs, m., *torture* [***crux,*** *cross*]
dē′serō, –ere, se′ruī, –ser′tus, *desert* [***serō,*** *weave, join*]
dēspi′ciō, –ere, –spe′xī, –spec′tus, *look down on, despise* [***speciō***]
do′mus, –ūs,[1] f., *house, home* (domestic)
exer′citus, –ūs. m., *(trained) army* [***exerceō***]
im′petus, –ūs, m., *attack* [***petō***]
iū′rō, –ā′re, –ā′vī, –ā′tus, *swear* [***iūs***]
ma′nus, –ūs, f., *hand, group, force* (manual)
pen′dō, –ere, pepen′dī, pēn′sus, *hang, weigh, pay* (pendant)

554. Fourth Declension

We have seen that nouns of the first three declensions are distinguished by the ending in the genitive singular — first declension, **–ae,** second declension, **–ī,** third declension **–is.** The majority of Latin nouns belong to these three declensions. A few nouns, however, have **–ūs** in the genitive singular and belong to the **fourth declension.** Many of these are derived from verbs.

	Case Endings		**cāsus,** *chance* (base, **cās–**)	
Nom.	**–us**	**–ūs**	**cā′sus**	**cā′sūs**
Gen.	**–ūs**	**–uum**	**cā′sūs**	**cā′suum**
Dat.	**–uī**	**–ibus**	**cā′suī**	**cā′sibus**
Acc.	**–um**	**–ūs**	**cā′sum**	**cā′sūs**
Abl.	**–ū**	**–ibus**	**cā′sū**	**cā′sibus**

[1] Usually has abl. sing. **domō** and acc. plur. **domōs (641).**

555. Gender. — Nouns of the fourth declension in **-us** are mostly masculine; the only exceptions in this book are **manus** and **domus,** both of which are feminine.

556. Drill. — Decline **exercitus noster, impetus fortis.**

557. Exercises

Oral. 1. Iūrāvit per (*by*) deōs sē numquam dēsertūrum esse amīcōs suōs. 2. Omnēs cīvēs cruciātū in suīs domibus ā barbarīs interfectī sunt. 3. Maiōrēs gentēs lībertātem iūraque minōrum populōrum dēspicere nōn dēbent. 4. Postquam cāsus ducī nūntiātus est, ille mortem suā manū petīvit. 5. Exercitus noster impetum in (*on*) ōrdinēs Gallōrum fēcit et celeriter eōs in fugam dedit. 6. Paucī cūrās cāsūsque vītae leviter dēspicere possunt. 7. Magnamne pecūniam prō eō librō quem manū tenēs pependistī?

Written. 1. Soldiers, make an attack upon that small force of the enemy. 2. Death brought about by torture is the worst of all misfortunes. 3. He has sworn that he will make an attack upon the enemy at the third hour. 4. The house was deserted; I could see nothing. I touched a body with my hand and shouted.

558. English Word Studies

In two earlier lessons (**159, 162**) we saw how many English words are simply the base of a Latin noun, adjective, or verb, or the base plus silent **-e.** A great many such words are derived from the Latin words in this book. A few are *par, facile, prime, just, cede, part.*

In the case of verbs, the base of the present indicative, present participle, or perfect participle, or of all three, may furnish an English word: *convene, convenient, convent; remove, remote; refer, relate.*

As previously noted, there are sometimes changes in the base, *e.g.* the dropping of one of two final consonants, as in *remit, expel,* and particularly the addition of a vowel to the main vowel of the word, as in the following (the added vowel is underscored): *peace, mount, reign, remain. Contain, retain,* etc., are from the compounds of **teneō.** The compounds of *cede* are spelled in the same way as the simple verb (*accede, precede, concede, recede, intercede, secede*), except *proceed, succeed,* and *exceed.*

Exercise. — Find ten more words illustrating the above principles.

559. Gracchī

Ti. et C. Gracchī Scīpiōnis Āfricānī nepōtēs erant. Dīligentiā Cornēliae mātris puerī doctī sunt. Cornēlia crēdidit eōs certē summam potestātem obtentūrōs esse. Quondam hospita[1] ōrnāmenta sua pulcherrima manū tenēns eī ostendēbat. Tum Cornēlia līberōs suōs, quī cāsū aderant, hospitae mōnstrāns dīxit: "Haec sunt mea ōrnāmenta!" (*See Fig.* 161.)

Tiberius iam vir plēbī amīcus erat. Tribūnus plēbis factus[2] agrōs populō dabat. Hī agrī pūblicī erant sed multōs annōs ā nōbilibus occupātī erant. Nihil nōbilēs prō eīs pependerant. Tum senātōrēs convocātī dē Tiberiō cōnsuluērunt. Tiberiō accēdente, Scīpiō Nāsīca,

[1] *guest.* [2] 133 B.C.

senātor, clāmāvit: "Venīte mēcum sī reī[1] pūblicae salūtem cupitis." Tum omnēs in Tiberium impetum fēcērunt et eum interfēcērunt.

In somnō Gāius vīdit frātrem suum, quī dīxit: "Cūr dubitās, Gāī? Vītam tuam populō dare dēbēs." Itaque Gāius iūrāvit opus Tiberī sē perfectūrum esse neque eius cōnsilia dēsertūrum. Tribūnus factus frūmentum plēbī dabat et cīvitātem omnibus quī Italiam incolēbant. Sed fugere coāctus interfectus est.

Itaque senātōrēs mortem Gracchōrum effēcērunt. Sed cōnsilia hōrum mānsērunt, et Rōmānī eōs multōs annōs memoriā tenuērunt.

Read Morris (*Roman*), pp. 165–172; Harding, pp. 158–165 Haaren and Poland, pp. 142–147; Guerber (*Story*), pp. 146–152.

[1] Genitive of **rēs**. Translate by the derivative of **rēs pūblica**.

FIG. 161. "HAEC SUNT MEA ŌRNĀMENTA"

LESSON LXXX

IDIOMS. THE DATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE WITH *TO* REVIEWED

560. Vocabulary

dēmōns′trō, –ā′re, –ā′vī, –ā′tus, *point out, show* [***mōnstrō***]
dē′sum, dees′se, dē′fuī, dēfutū′rus, *be lacking* (with dat.) [***sum***]
ex′struō, –ere, –strū′xī, –strūc′tus, *pile up, build up* [***struō***]
impe′rium, impe′rī, n., *command, power* (imperial)
lēgā′tus, –ī, m., *envoy, lieutenant general* [***lēgō,*** *appoint*]
no′ceō, –ē′re, no′cuī, no′citus, *do harm* (*to*), *harm* (with dat.) (noxious)
praefi′ciō, –ere, –fē′cī, –fec′tus, *put in charge of* (with acc. and dat.) [***faciō***]
prae′sum, –es′se, –fuī, –futū′rus, *be in charge of* (with dat.) [***sum***]
red′dō, –ere, red′didī, red′ditus, *give back, deliver* [***dō***]
urbs, ur′bis, f., *city* (suburban)

561. Idioms

Review the idioms **committere proelium, alius . . . alius, aliī . . . aliī, alter . . . alter, summus mōns, extrēma via.** Memorize the following new idioms:

1. **certiōrem eum facere dē,** *to inform him about;* as, **Fēcī eōs certiōrēs dē itinere,** *I informed them about the road* (what literally?).

2. **quam,** when used with the superlative of an adjective or adverb, means *as . . . possible.* Cf. **quam plūrimī,** *as many as possible;* **quam celerrimē,** *as quickly as possible.*

562. *To* with Verbs of Motion

The dative is essentially the "to" or "for" case. We have noticed, however, that, when *to* implies literally *motion toward* a place or person, the accusative is

used. The following are "motion verbs," previously studied, that take the accusative with **ad** or **in**:

accēdō, cēdō, contendō, dūcō, fugiō, mātūrō, mittō, moveō, nāvigō, portō, prōcēdō, prōdūcō, properō, redigō, redūcō, trānsportō, veniō.

563. Dative of Indirect Object: A Summary

When *to* or *toward* does not imply literal motion but indicates the person *to whom* something is given or *toward whom* a benefit, injury, feeling, or quality is directed, the dative must be used. The following verbs, already familiar, are transitive and admit an accusative of the *direct object* and a dative of the *indirect object:*

committō, dīcō, dō, dōnō, iungō, mandō, mōnstrō, nūntiō, ostendō, permittō, prōpōnō, reddō, relinquō, respondeō, submittō, trādō, tribuō.

Some of these verbs have as the direct object either a neuter pronoun or an infinitive: **dīcō, respondeō, nūntiō.**

Other verbs rarely take any case but the dative: **noceō.**

564. Exercises

Oral. 1. Mīlitēs quī prae sē equōs agēbant, hostibus vīsīs, quam celerrimē cōnstitērunt. 2. Dēmōnstrā mihi illum librum quem tibi reddidī. 3. Virum quī huic praesidiō praefuit illī urbī praeficiam. 4. Lēgātus Rōmānus hostēs certiōrēs fēcit suōs mīlitēs puerīs puellīsque nōn nocitūrōs esse. 5. Sī reliquam partem aestātis cōpiam māteriae exstruētis, hieme cōpia vōbīs

nōn deerit. 6. Postquam Rōmānōs ex hīs regiōnibus expulērunt, ipsī sub imperium Rōmānum redāctī sunt. 7. Castrīs nostrīs cōnfectīs, hostēs in nōs impetūs nōn iam facient.

Written. 1. Show him your new books; he will not harm them. 2. We shall put this general in charge of that province and he will send grain to the city. 3. We shall inform you about all (things). 4. Answer our letters. Write as clearly as possible.

565. Latin and English Word Formation

We have seen (**169**) that when a Latin word is compounded with a prefix, a short **–a–** or **–e–** is usually changed to short **–i–**. Similarly, **–ae–** is changed to long **–ī–**. From **aestimō** we have **exīstimō**; from **aequus, inīquus**; from **caedō, occīdō** (English *incision, decisive, concise,* etc.). The compounds of **caedō,** with long **–ī–**, must be carefully distinguished from the compounds of **cadō,** with short **–i–**.

–Au– is often changed to **–ū–** in compounds: **accūsō** is from **causa**; **interclūdō** and **exclūdō** are from **claudō** (English *recluse,* etc.).

Exercise. — Illustrate these rules by further examples of English derivatives of **caedō, quaerō, claudō.**

566. Scīpiō

P. Cornēlius Scīpiō, puer duodēvīgintī annōrum, patrem, quī graviter vulnerātus erat, servāvit.[1] Post pugnam Cannēnsem, in quā Rōmānī gravissimē victī

[1] In the Second Punic War, the greatest of the three wars against Carthage, 218–201 B.C.

sunt, omnibus probantibus, Scīpiōnī, puerō vīgintī annōrum, summum imperium datum est. Postquam sex annōs in Italiā exercituī praefuit, in Hispāniam processit et urbem Carthāginem Novam diē[1] quō vēnit expugnāvit. Scīpiōnem clēmentissimē sē gerentem Hispānī rēgem appellāvērunt; sed Scīpiō, silentiō factō, dīxit: "Nōmen imperātōris, quō mē meī mīlitēs appellāvērunt, mihi maximum est: rēgis nōmen, apud aliōs magnum, Rōmānī ōdērunt.[2] Sī id quod rēgāle est amplissimum iūdicātis, exīstimāte rēgālem in mē esse animum." Posteā, Hispāniā pācātā, Scīpiō in Āfricam prōcessit et ibi Carthāginiēnsēs victōriīs terruit. Tum illī Hannibalem ex Italiā ad patriam revocāvērunt. Sed Scīpiō eum Zamae[3] vīcit, et ille, clārissimus et maximus omnium ducum quī contrā Rōmānōs pugnāvērunt, ex patriā in exsilium fūgit. Scīpiō ob hanc victōriam Āfricānus appellātus est.

Read Haaren and Poland, pp. 122–134; Harding, pp. 135–146.

---

[1] Ablative. [2] *hate.* [3] *at Zama* (202 B.C.)

LESSON LXXXI

FIFTH DECLENSION

567. Vocabulary

au′tem, conj. (never first word), *moreover, on the other hand*
di′ēs, diē′ī, m., *day* (diary)
ignō′rō, –ā′re, –ā′vī, –ā′tus, *be ignorant of, not know* [***nōscō***]
interclū′dō, –ere, –clū′sī, –clū′sus, *shut off, cut off* [***claudō***]
lūx, lū′cis, f., *light* (translucent)
prīn′ceps, prīn′cipis, m., *first man, chief, leader* [***prīmus*** + ***capiō***]
rēs, re′ī, f., *thing, matter, affair* (real)
senā′tus, senā′tūs, m., *senate* (senatorial)
spe′ciēs, speciē′ī, f., *appearance, pretense, kind* [***speciō***]
spēs, spe′ī, f., *hope* [***spērō***]

568. Fifth Declension

The last of the noun declensions embraces comparatively few words. **Rēs** and **diēs,** however, occur constantly and should be memorized. Other nouns of the **fifth declension,** as a rule, have no plural; all are feminine except **diēs,** which is commonly masculine.

Case Endings	Sing.	Plur.	**diēs,** *day* (base, **di–**)		**rēs,** *thing* (base, **r–**)	
Nom.	**–ēs**	**–ēs**	di′ēs	di′ēs	rēs	rēs
Gen.	**–ĕī**	**–ērum**	diē′ī	diē′rum	re′ī	rē′rum
Dat.	**–ĕī**	**–ēbus**	diē′ī	diē′bus	re′ī	rē′bus
Acc.	**–em**	**–ēs**	di′em	di′ēs	rem	rēs
Abl.	**–ē**	**–ēbus**	di′ē	diē′bus	rē	rē′bus

Observe that –e– appears in every ending and that in **diēs** it is long in the genitive and dative singular, though preceding a vowel (**604**).

569. Drill. — Decline **rēs similis, ūna spēs, diēs longus.**

570. English Word Studies

English words which preserve the forms of the Latin fourth declension are: **census, consensus, impetus, prospectus, status, apparatus** (plural **apparatuses** or **apparatus**; the latter preserves the Latin plural). Note that **consensus** (from **sentiō**) is spelled with an **–s–** but **census** (from **cēnseō**) with a **–c–**. An ablative form is seen in **impromptu.**

The fifth declension is represented by **rabies, series, species.** The last two are used in the plural with no change of form (as in Latin). The accusative singular is represented by **requiem,** the ablative by **specie,** and the ablative plural by **rebus.**

A.M., ante merīdiem, *before midday;* **P.M., post merīdiem,** *after midday;* **M., merīdiēs,** *midday.*

Latin Phrases in English

cāsus bellī, *an occasion for war.*

in statū quō, *in the situation in which* (*it was before*); **status quō,** *the situation in which* (*it was before*).

bonā fidē, *in good faith.*

prīmā faciē, *on the first face* (*of it*); e.g. *prima facie* evidence.

sine diē, *without a day* (*being set*); used of adjournment by a parliamentary body.

571. Exercises

Oral. 1. Noster exercitus maiōrem partem nōnī diēī in castrīs remānsit, quod nūllam spem victōriae habuit. 2. Gallī autem, hīs rēbus cognitīs, trāns flūmen trāductī, nōs interclūsērunt. 3. Lūx diēī captīvīs grātis-

sima fuit et novam spem salūtis dedit. 4. Memoria diēī bene āctī est per sē satis magnum praemium. 5. Dēmōnstrāvī illum prīncipem nocuisse senātuī populōque Rōmānō. 6. Quid significant (*mean*) hae litterae, in signīs Rōmānīs vīsae, "S. P. Q. R.?" Rogā magistrum tuum sī ignōrās. 7. Speciēs illōrum barbarōrum mē puerum terrēbat et multōs annōs in memoriā haerēbat.

Written. 1. A wretched man is always urged-on by the hope of better days. 2. Under the pretense of friendship he proposed terms of peace, but we did not believe him (*dat.*). 3. By chance I heard our leader say that there was no hope of peace before the seventh month. 4. Most (men) are deceived by the appearance of things; a few, on the other hand, see things clearly.

572. Clārum Factum Scīpiōnis

Dē clārīs factīs Scīpiōnis lēgistī (**477, 566**). Aliud dē eō scrīptum est. Oppugnābat ille oppidum mūnītum in quō erant multī mīlitēs et magna cōpia frūmentī. Scīpiō exīstimābat oppidum capī posse, sed paucī eandem spem habuērunt. In castrīs Scīpiō iūs dīcēbat,[1] et ex eō locō oppidum vidērī poterat. Ūnus ē mīlitibus quī ante eum stābat rogāvit: "Quō diē locōque iubēs hunc hominem[2] ad tē venīre?" Tum Scīpiō manum ad oppidum ipsum tetendit et iussit eum hominem in illō oppidō tertiō diē esse. Ita rēs facta est; tertiō diē oppidum captum eōdemque diē ibi ille iūs dīxit.

[1] *was administering justice.*

[2] The man was charged with an offense. The trial was set for the third day after.

Id etiam dīcī potest quod trāditum est ab eīs quī dē vītā et rēbus gestīs Āfricānī scrīpsērunt. Saepe ante prīmam lūcem hic prīnceps populī Rōmānī in Capitōlium veniēbat et ibi sōlus multās hōrās manēbat. Dīcēbātur deum dē salūte cīvitātis cōnsulere.

FIG. 162. CAESAR AND THE SOOTHSAYER

Caesar is being warned to beware the Ides of March (March 15), on which day he was assassinated (44 B.C.). (From "Julius Caesar.")

LESSON LXXXII

GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

573. Vocabulary

am′plus, –a, –um, *large, great, distinguished* (amplify)
am′plius, compar. adv., *more, further*
a′pud, prep. with acc., *among*
ascen′dō, –ere, ascen′dī, ascēn′sus, *climb (up), ascend* [***scandō, climb***]
dī′vidō, –ere, dīvī′sī, dīvī′sus, *separate, divide* (division)
e′ques, e′quitis, m., *horseman* [***equus***]
explō′rō, –ā′re, –ā′vī, –ā′tus, *investigate, explore* [***plōrō, call out***]
familiā′ris, –e (*belonging to the family*), *friendly;* as noun, m., *friend* [***familia***]
frōns, fron′tis, f., *forehead, front* (frontal)
im′perō, –ā′re, –ā′vī, –ā′tus, *command, order* (with dat. of person) (imperial)
ra′tiō, ratiō′nis, f., *account, plan, manner, reason* (rational)

574. Genitive and Ablative of Description

1. **virī magnae virtūtis,** *men of great courage.*
2. **spatium decem pedum,** *a space of ten feet.*
3. **hominēs inimīcō animō,** *men with* (or *of*) *an unfriendly spirit.*

Observe that in English we may say *men* ***of*** or ***with*** *an unfriendly spirit.* Both are descriptive. Note also that description is similarly expressed in Latin, *i.e.* either by the genitive or the ablative, but only when modified by an adjective.

While the **genitive** and the **ablative of description** are translated alike, the Latin confines the genitive largely to expressions of *measure and number* (see 2) and the ablative to *physical qualities.*

575. Exercises

Oral. 1. Mārcus erat puer magnā grātiā apud familiārēs suōs. 2. Dux Gallōrum fuit vir amplissimō genere

et praefuit eōrum equitibus. 3. Posteā explicābō tibi amplius ratiōnēs quās in animō habeō. 4. Hāc aestāte ascendam montem decem mīlium pedum. 5. Frontem huius montis nōn poterō ascendere, quod ea est praeceps et difficillima. 6. Eum montem sōlī virī maximae virtūtis explōrāvērunt. 7. Rōmānī gentēs Galliae dīvidēbant et hōc modō eīs facile imperābant.

Written. 1. After a journey of two days, we arrived at (**ad**) a very beautiful city. 2. We all know that Italy has been separated from Gaul by very high mountains. 3. The general whom Caesar put-in-charge-of the horsemen was a man of great influence among the Gauls. 4. Do you desire to climb a mountain which has never been explored?

576. Latin and English Word Formation

The suffixes **–ilis** and **–bilis** are added to verb stems to form adjectives. They indicate what *can be done:* **facilis** is "doable," *easy*. The suffix **–ilis** usually becomes *–ile* in English: *facile, fertile*. The more common suffix **–bilis** becomes *–ble, –able, –ible* in English: *noble, credible, terrible, amiable, visible, comparable.*

Several suffixes meaning *pertaining to* are added to nouns and adjectives to form adjectives: **–āris** (English *–ar*), **–ārius** (*–ary*), **–ānus** (*–an, –ane*), **–icus** (*–ic*). Examples of their use in Latin and English are: **familiāris,** *singular;* **frūmentārius,** *ordinary;* **Rōmānus,** *human, humane;* **pūblicus,** *generic.*

The suffix **–tūdō** (English *–tude*) is added to adjective stems to form nouns and means *state of being:* **magnitūdō,** *magnitude.*

Exercise. — Find fifteen other examples of these suffixes in English words derived from Latin words already studied.

577. Scīpiō et Catō

Catō, vir maximae auctōritātis, Scīpiōnī inimīcus erat. Itaque iussit familiārem suum Petīlium petere in senātū ratiōnēs pecūniae praedaeque captae in bellō cum Antiochō ā Scīpiōne gestō. Tum Scīpiō librum ostendit et dīxit:

"In hōc librō ratiōnēs scrīptae sunt omnis pecūniae omnisque praedae quam accēpī. Hic est diēs quō mihi in animō erat[1] ratiōnēs apud vōs legere. Nunc autem, quod Petīlius imperat, id nōn faciam."

Hōc dictō, librum dīscidit.[2]

Fig. 163. Posing for Their Picture

[1] **mihi . . . erat,** *I intended.* [2] *tore in pieces.*

NINTH REVIEW (LESSONS LXXVII–LXXXII)

578. Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. aetās
2. cāsus
3. cruciātus
4. diēs
5. domus
6. frōns
7. eques
8. exercitus
9. imperium
10. impetus
11. lēgātus
12. lūx
13. manus
14. mēnsis
15. mors
16. negōtium
17. potestās
18. prīnceps
19. ratiō
20. rēs
21. senātus
22. speciēs
23. spēs
24. urbs
25. virtūs

Adjectives

26. amplus
27. familiāris

Verbs

28. ascendō
29. attingō
30. dēmōnstrō
31. dēserō
32. dēspiciō
33. dēsum
34. dīvidō
35. exerceō
36. exīstimō
37. explōrō
38. exstruō
39. ignōrō
40. imperō
41. incolō
42. intellegō
43. interclūdō
44. iungō
45. iūrō
46. noceō
47. pendō
48. praeficiō
49. praemittō
50. praesum
51. reddō
52. supersum

Adverb

53. satis

Prepositions

54. apud
55. circum
56. prae
57. super

Conjunctions

58. autem
59. postquam

579. Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. *age*
2. *chance, accident*
3. *torture*
4. *day*
5. *home*
6. *front*
7. *horseman*
8. *army*
9. *command, power*
10. *attack*
11. *envoy, general*
12. *light*
13. *hand*
14. *month*
15. *death*
16. *business*
17. *power*
18. *chief*
19. *account, plan*
20. *thing*
21. *senate*
22. *appearance*
23. *hope*
24. *city*
25. *courage*

Adjectives

26. *great, distinguished*
27. *friendly*

Verbs

28. *ascend*
29. *reach*
30. *point out*
31. *desert*
32. *look down on*
33. *be lacking*
34. *separate*
35. *train*
36. *think*
37. *explore*
38. *pile up*
39. *not know*
40. *command*
41. *dwell*
42. *understand*
43. *shut off*
44. *join*
45. *swear*
46. *do harm to*
47. *hang, pay*
48. *put in charge of*
49. *send ahead*
50. *be in charge of*
51. *give back*
52. *be left over*

Adverb

53. *enough*

Prepositions

54. *among*
55. *around*
56. *in front of*
57. *above*

Conjunctions

58. *moreover*
59. *after*

580. Noun and Adjective Review

Decline **tanta virtūs, mors tarda, aetās optima, frōns alta, maxima potestās, urbs nōbilis.**

581. Verb Review

1. Give a synopsis of (*a*) **noceō,** 1st sing., indic. act.; (*b*) **trādō,** 2nd sing., indic. pass.; (*c*) **praeficiō,** 3rd sing., indic. act.; (*d*) **dēmōnstrō,** 3rd sing., indic. pass.; (*e*) **mūniō,** 3rd plur., indic. pass.; (*f*) **supersum,** 3rd plur., indic.

2. Conjugate **possum** throughout.

3. **Rapid-Fire Drill on Verb Forms.** — *Locate the form:* praemīsit, frēgerant, exīstimābō, incoluisse, iūnctūrus esse, exercērī, interclūdēns, dēserunt, redde, dēmōnstrāte, explōrārī, dīvidī, imperāns.

582. Final Pronoun Drill and Review

Review sections **254, 305, 320, 414, 425, 432, 437,** and **518.** Copy the following sentences and substitute the proper form of the Latin pronoun for all underscored English words:

1. We often admire the most those whom we know the least.
2. Whose book is this? Whose (*plur.*) horses are those?
3. At what time did you arrive?
4. The sailor himself told it to me.
5. That is the same speech that I heard before.
6. What did he tell you? Did he tell him the same thing?
7. I remember you, but you don't seem to remember me.
8. The number of those who flatter is legion.

9. Who will tell us the name of the boy by whom his sister and I have been rescued?
10. Who were the men whom we saw that day, to whom you handed the contract?

583. English Word Studies

Find and use in sentences as many English derivatives as possible from **pōnō, veniō,** and **pellō.**

Enter the derivatives in your notebook, using a separate page for each Latin word.

584. A Derivative Match (*To the Teacher*). The desirability of holding frequent word contests was discussed in **484.** The same method may be applied to derivative work. After choosing sides, dictate Latin words and have each student in turn give one English derivative, or, *vice versa,* dictate English words and have him give the Latin form of each.

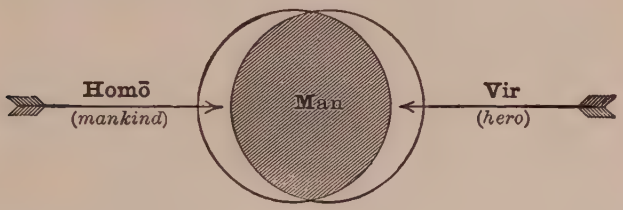
LATIN INSCRIPTION ON LONGFELLOW'S GRAVE

LESSON LXXXIII

SYNONYMS. THE STORY OF LUCIUS

585. Synonyms

We rarely find a word in any language which has exactly the same meaning as another word. Words which have approximately the same meaning are called **synonyms.** The diagram may help you to remember the margin of difference between the synonyms **homō** and **vir,** which are often confused.



The following synonyms have occurred in previous vocabularies. Note differences and discriminate in their use:

1. **terra,** *land* (as opposed to water), then some particular *land* or *country.*
   fīnēs, *borders,* hence a *land* or *country* with reference to its boundaries.
   patria, *fatherland,* the *land* of one's birth.
2. **dux** [dūcō], *a leader* in any field, but often in a military sense.
   prīnceps, [prīmus + capiō], the *first* or *chief* man in a group — usually nonmilitary.
3. **videō,** *see,* the most general word.
   cernō, *see clearly.*
   cōnspiciō, *catch sight of.*

4. **labor,** *hard work, toil, suffering.*
   opus, usually *a piece of work.*
   negōtium, *lack of leisure* [**ōtium**], *business.*
5. **potestās,** *power* in general, *opportunity.*
   auctōritās, *influence.*
   rēgnum, *royal power.*
   imperium, *military power, command.*

Fig. 164. Wearers of the Toga

586. THE STORY OF LUCIUS (*Concluded*)

Cīvis Novus Iter Facit

Iam Lūcius aetātem quīndecim annōrum attigerat. Nunc pater eius dīxit eum dēbēre proximīs Līberālibus[1] togam praetextam dēpōnere et virīlem togam sūmere. Hōc tempore plūrimī puerī Rōmānī togās

[1] The Liberalia, a festival held March 17.

praetextās dēpōnēbant. (Puerī Rōmānī togās praetextās gerēbant, sed virī tōtās albās gerēbant. Brācae, quae ā virīs nunc geruntur, ā barbarīs, nōn ā Rōmānīs, illīs diēbus gerēbantur.)

The New Citizen

Līberālia aderant. Multī amīcī convēnērunt. Lūcius, postquam mōrem antīquum servāns togam praetextam ante Larēs posuit, novam virīlem togam sūmpsit. Omnēs familiārēs cum eō ad Forum pedibus prōcessērunt, et posteā ad Capitōlium, ubi nōmen eius ad numerum cīvium ascrīptum est. Nunc poterat dīcere, "Cīvis Rōmānus sum!" Tum omnēs cum Lūciō domum[1] revertērunt, ubi optima cēna parāta erat. Multī cibī dē ultimīs terrīs portātī erant, aliī dē Graeciā, aliī dē Asiā, aliī dē Āfricā. Hospitēs cēnam variō sermōne prōdūxērunt et cum Lūciō dē officiīs cīvium, dē bellō et pāce, dē negōtiīs, dē multīs aliīs rēbus ēgērunt. Lūcius nunc intellēxit mūnera et officia cīvis Rōmānī.

The Journey

Paulō[2] post Lūcius, iam vir, cum patre iter fēcit. Itaque per portam Capēnam ex urbe discessērunt. Raedā ibi inventā, in Appiā Viā prōcessērunt. Sepulchrīs ad viam vīsīs, Lūcius dīxit: "Pater, cūr sepulchra ad viās pōnuntur? Hoc numquam intellegere potuī." Pater respondit: "Hōc modō omnēs ea vidēre possunt." Lūcius dīxit sē nocte inter sepulchra iter facere nōn cupere.

[1] *Place to which* is expressed without a preposition with **domum**: *home.* [2] *shortly*

Good Roads and Great Men

Quod iter facile et commodum erat, Lūcius dīxit: "Nōnne exīstimās Appiam Viam optimam omnium esse?" Pater respondit: "Omnēs nostrae viae optimae sunt. Ob eam causam hostēs vīcimus, potestātem nostram auximus, et nunc gentēs regimus. Aliī imāginēs pulchriōrēs pingunt, aliī ōrant[1] causās melius, sed nōs regimus populōs." "Etiam causās optimē ōrāmus," respondit Lūcius. "Quis melior ōrātor fuit aut est aut erit quam Cicerō? Hic ōrātor etiam cōnsul fuit et populum Rōmānum rēxit. Ego eum ōrātiōnem habentem in Forō audīvī et eius ōrātiōnēs in lūdō lēgī." "Lēgistīne ōrātiōnēs in Catilīnam, illum quī cīvitātem ēvertere statuit?" "Illās et aliās lēgī. In prīmā dīxit dē Catilīnā: 'Ō tempora! Ō mōrēs! Senātus haec intellegit, cōnsul videt; hic tamen vīvit.'" "Optimē!" dīxit pater. "In secundā, sī rēctē memoriā teneō, dīxit, postquam Catilīna ex urbe exiit: 'Abiit, excessit, ēvāsit,[2] ērūpit[3]!' Ex Cicerōnis linguā fluēbat ōrātiō dulcior quam mel."

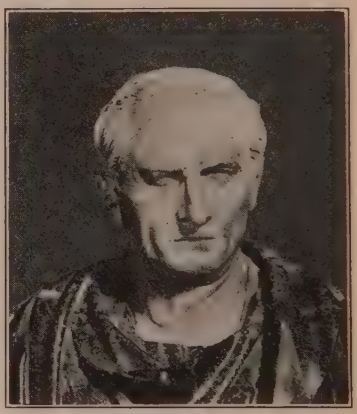


Fig. 165. M. Tullius Cicerō

Scenes by the Way

Tum altōs et pulchrōs arcūs[4] aquaeductūs[5] cernunt,

[1] *plead.* [2] **Ēvādō, ēvāsus** — derivative? [3] **Ērumpō, ēruptus** — derivative? [4] Accusative plural. [5] Genitive singular.

quī optimam aquam dē montibus in urbem dūcunt. Pater Lūciō dīxit prīmum aquaeductum ab Appiō factum esse. Appius fuit ille quī Appiam Viam mūnīvit. Ita prōcēdunt, nunc agrōs et vīllās, montēs silvāsque spectantēs, nunc hominēs frequentēs in viā ipsā, quōrum aliī pedibus prōcēdēbant, aliī aut equō aut raedā aut lectīcā ferēbantur.

Epilogue

Nōn iam vīvunt Lūcius et eius amīcī, nōn iam vīvunt Caesar et Cicerō, virī clārissimī, sed lingua eōrum vīvit, vīvunt eōrum dicta et facta, lēgēs et mōrēs, glōria et fāma. Haec omnia in eōrum librīs inveniuntur. Eīs quī itinera parva per illōs librōs faciunt Rōmānī ipsī vīvere vidēntur.

Fig. 166. Aquaeductus
Roman aqueduct at Segovia, Spain.

587. GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE

(*a*) Dress

The most obvious difference between ancient and modern clothing was that civilized men did not in the old days wear trousers. These garments were worn in those times by barbarians. After the barbarians destroyed the Roman Empire, their garb became the fashion for all Europe. The same is true of the moustache (without beard). No Roman ever wore one, and it was just as much the mark of the barbarian as trousers were. Down to the second century A.D. most Romans were smooth shaven.

All Roman men wore as an outer garment a long shirt called a tunic, made of white wool. Senators and knights had crimson stripes down the front and back. A belt was worn over this, and the upper part was bloused out over the belt. When a Roman was engaged in some active occupation, he pulled his tunic up to his knees. Such a garment alone was worn in the house.

Over the tunic the Roman citizen might wear the toga. This garment was the official dress of Roman citizens, and only citizens were allowed to wear it. It was made of white wool. The toga of boys and magistrates had a crimson border. When boys grew up they changed to the plain white toga. Important citizens always wore this garment when appearing in public, but the ordinary Roman wore it much less frequently.

The toga was really a sort of blanket which was

thrown over the left shoulder, pulled across the back and under the right arm, and again thrown over the left shoulder. It was not fastened in any way, and it must have been quite a trick to learn to wear it.

Roman women also wore a tunic. Over this the married women wore a **stola,** a long dress with a flounce at the bottom. For street wear a shawl, called a **palla,** was used.

Wool was the chief material for clothing; next came linen. Silk was rare and expensive, while cotton was almost unknown.

In the house men and women wore sandals or slippers; outdoors they wore shoes. Those of magistrates were red. No stockings were worn, though in cold weather old and sickly people sometimes wound cloth around their legs, like the puttees of soldiers.

Hats were rarely worn, except on journeys. Such as there were had broad brims and were flat. Women often wore ribbons and elaborate pins in their hair. Styles in hairdressing changed constantly as with us, but bobbed hair was unknown among adult women.

Read McDaniel, pp. 81–93; Preston and Dodge, pp. 88–104; Johnston, chap. VII.

(*b*) Food and Meals

The easiest way to give an idea of Roman foods is by listing some important foods which were unknown to the Romans. potatoes, tomatoes, bananas, oranges, sugar, coffee, tea. Butter was rarely used, except externally as a sort of salve or cold cream. Milk and cheese were freely used. Instead of sugar, honey was used for sweetening. The extensive use of honey made

beekeeping a very important occupation. Wheat bread baked in round loaves (Fig. 84) was the "staff of life." Cabbage, onions, beans were among the chief vegetables. Apples, pears, grapes, olives were the chief fruits. The **mālum Persicum** (from which our word *peach* is derived) was, as its name shows, originally brought from Persia.

Much use was made of salads of various kinds, as is true in Italy to-day. Hence one reason for the importance of olive oil. This was used also in cooking, instead of butter, and in lamps.

The favorite meat was pork. Various kinds of fowl and birds were eaten, even peacocks by the wealthy classes. Fish and oysters became extremely popular.

Besides milk and water the chief drink of the Romans was wine. There were many grades of native and imported wines. They were usually mixed with water when drunk at meals.

Breakfast was a simple meal, chiefly of bread. In the country, dinner (**cēna**) was at noon, but in the city this was postponed till early evening. Instead there was a luncheon (**prandium**) at midday or somewhat earlier.

The dinner consisted of a course of relishes (lettuce, onions, eggs, oysters, asparagus, etc.), called the **gustus** (*taste*), followed by the chief course (meat, fish, or fowl and vegetables), then the dessert, called the **secunda mēnsa** (*second table*), of fruit, nuts, and sweets. The Latin expression **ab ōvō usque ad māla,** *from eggs to apples*, meaning from beginning to end, shows what the usual relishes and desserts were. Wine was served with the meal.

The guests reclined on couches instead of sitting on chairs. There were couches along three sides of the rectangular table, each with room for three people. As the guests reclined on their left elbows, only their right hands were free. Forks were rarely used. Food was taken up with the fingers or with spoons. Meat was cut up before being served. Though much use was made of the fingers, we may well imagine that people of culture ate quite as daintily as we do who have forks to help us.

Read McDaniel, pp. 120–136; Preston and Dodge, pp. 46–47, 50–56.

FIG. 167. ROMAN SANDAL
This leather sandal was found in England.

SĀTURNĀLIA

Persōnae

Geta, *callidissimus servōrum*
Bellus, *pulcherrimus servōrum*
L. Calpurnius, *dominus*
Hector, *maximus servōrum*
Boadīx, *coquus*
Aliī servī

TEMPUS: Decembrī. LOCUS: in aedibus L. Calpurnī. (*Servī accēdunt.*)

Servī. Iō Sāturnālia! Iō Sāturnālia! Iō Sāturnālia!

(*Boadīx ā sinistrā parte accēdit, currēns*)

Boadīx. Quid est? Quem clāmōrem audiō? Quid accidit? Quis interfectus est?

Servī. Ho, ho, ho! Coquus est.

Bellus. Nōnne pulcher est? Quam gravis est! Eō currente, audīre vidēmur — montem cadentem!

Servī. Ha, ha!

Boadīx. Quid? Montem cadentem? Ubi?

Hector. Mōns nōn cadit; stupidus es.

Geta. Sāturnālia adsunt. Nōnne Sāturnālia in Galliā, tuā patriā, erant?

Boadīx. Quae sunt? Nūlla coxī.

Servī. Ha, ha! "Coxī!"

Geta. Sāturnālia! — Sunt septem diēs quibus deō Sāturnō honōrēs dōnantur —

Boadīx. Septem diēs! Deī Superī! Cūr rīdētis? Abīte,[1] aut vōs omnēs interficiam.

Hector. Quid? Properāre nōn dēbēs.

Boadīx. Diēbus quibus deīs honōrēs dōnantur, tum

[1] *Be off!*

labor coquī maximus est. Cūr tantum clāmōrem fēcistis? Cūr nōn licet dominō nostrō ex memoriā hōs diēs dēpōnere? Cūr —

Geta. Sed hīs diēbus servī līberī sunt. Rēgem habent, ē numerō servōrum dēlēctum. Rēx domum regit! Nūllus labor est.

Boadīx. Coquīs labor semper est! Abīte![1]

Hector. Nunc nōn est tempus labōris. Tē teneō. Sī nōbīscum Sāturnālia nōn clāmābis, — in viam tē ēiciēmus.

Bellus. Eat[2] stupidus ad labōrem!

Geta. Eat!

Boadīx. Poenam dabitis, — pessimī! (*Exit*)

Geta (*Hectorī*). Eat, — nam dē graviōribus rēbus agere dēbēmus.

Hector. Dē graviōribus quam dē Boadīce agere nōn possumus. Ha, ha!

Geta. (*Hectorī*). Nōnne tū cōnfīdis tē rēgem futūrum esse?

Servī. Iō Sāturnālia!

Hector. Rēgem?

Geta. Rēgem familiae, — servum quī reliquōs servōs Sāturnālibus regit.

Hector. Mē?

Geta. Tē! Maximus servōrum es. Dominus tē amat. — Mihi dīxit tē sibi cārissimum servōrum esse.

Hector. Dīxitne?

Geta. Dīxit. Sed Bellus putat sē rēgem futūrum esse.

Hector. Bellus? Puer est! Rēx nōn erit.

Geta. Tū rēx eris. Iō Sāturnālia!

Hector et reliquī Servī. Iō Sāturnālia!

---

[1] *Be off!* [2] *Let him go.*

Geta (*Bellō*). Nōnne tū cōnfīdis tē rēgem familiae futūrum esse?

Bellus. Mē?

Geta. Tē! Pulcherrimus servōrum es. Dominus tē amat. — Mihi dīxit tē sibi cārissimum servōrum esse. Sed Hector putat sē rēgem futūrum esse.

Bellus. Hector? Nōn pulcher est.

Hector. Servī! Nōnne mē audītis?

Servī. Audīmus.

Hector. Rēx familiae erō.

Bellus. Quid? Ego rēx erō.

Hector. Puer es.

Bellus. Tē nōn timeō! Tē interficiam.

Hector. Tē in viam ēiciam.

Bellus. Em!

Hector. Em tibi! (*Pugnant*)

Servī. Bellus vincit. Bene, Hector! Bellus eum interficiet. Iō!

(*Calpurnius ā dextrā parte, Boadīx ā sinistrā parte accēdunt*)

Calpurnius et Boadīx. Quid hoc?

Servī. Dominus adest! Illī tamen pugnant.

Calpurnius. Quid hoc? Librum meum legere nōn possum.

Geta (*Calpurniō*). Diū pugnāvērunt! Ego eōs dēsinere pugnāre iussī, sed mihi nōn pāruērunt. Sī mē rēgem familiae faciēs, mihi pārēbunt. Rēx bonus erō. —

Calpurnius. O-ho! Rēx familiae!

Hector et Bellus. Mēne vocās? Ōh! Dominus est!

Calpurnius. Ha, ha! Rēgem familiae dēligere dēbeō. In memoriā nōn habēbam. Dēligō —

Hector et Bellus et Geta. Mē!

Calpurnius. Dēligō servum mihi cārissimum et optimum, —— coquum!

Servī. Coquum!

Calpurnius. Boadīx, rēx es. Em, vidēsne? Haec pecūnia tua est! Sī servī tibi pārēbunt, eīs partem dā. Sed in memoriā tenē tē rēgem esse! Bene rege. Iō Sāturnālia! (*Exit*)

Boadīx. Rēx nunc sum! Vōs omnēs nunc mihi auxilium dabitis. Meus labor vester est. Iō Sāturnālia! —— Cūr nōn iam Sāturnālia clāmātis?

Servī. Ōh! Ōh! Sāturnālia dūra!

(*Exeunt*)

FIG. 168. ANCIENT FOODS FOUND IN POMPEII

FIG. 169. "ET TŪ, BRŪTE"

Caesar's murder in the Senate. (From "Julius Caesar.")

SYNTAX OUTLINES FOR FINAL REVIEW

NOUN SYNTAX

(References are to sections)

589. Nominative

1. Subject of Verb (**15**).
2. Predicate Noun or Adjective (**15**).

590. Genitive

1. Possession (**45**).
2. Description (**574**).

591. Dative

1. Indirect Object (**57–58**).
   (*a*) With transitive verbs (*give*, etc.) and Acc. of Dir. Obj. (**563**).
   (*b*) With certain intransitive verbs (**noceō**, etc.) (**563**).
2. With adjectives meaning *like, fit, near*, etc. (**506**).

592. Accusative

1. Direct Object (**29–30**).
2. Place to Which with **ad** or **in** (**123**).
3. Subject of an Infinitive (**262–263**).
4. Extent of Time or Space (**542–543**).
5. Prepositions with acc.: **ad ante, apud, circum, contrā, inter, ob, per, post, super, trāns**; also **in** and **sub** to indicate the direction in which a thing moves.

593. Ablative

(*a*) *With Preposition*

1. Agent (person) with **ab** (**ā**) (**228**).
2. Place Where with **in, sub** (**95**, *a*).

3. Place from Which with **ab, dē, ex** (**109**).
4. Separation[1] with **ab, dē, ex** (**109**).
5. Accompaniment with **cum** (**190**).
6. Manner with **cum**[2] (**315**).
7. Prepositions with the abl.: **ab, cum, dē, ex, prae, prō**; also **in** and **sub** to indicate place in which.

(*b*) *Without Preposition*

8. Means (thing) (**65**).
9. Time When (**421**).
10. Respect (**400–401**).
11. Ablative Absolute (**365–366**).
12. Description (**574**).
13. Cause (**125**, footnote).

594. Vocative

Case of address (**107**).

VERB SYNTAX

595. Infinitive

Use	*After Verbs*	*Translated by*
Subject or Object	as in English, without subject	Infinitive (**136; 137**)
Object	*order, teach*, etc., as in English, with subj. acc.	Infinitive (**262–263**)
Object (indir. statement)	*saying, thinking, knowing*, etc., with subj. acc.	"That" clause (**465–467**)

596. Imperative

Used in commands (**74, 156**).

---

[1] When the separation is not meant literally, the preposition is usually omitted: **Līberor timōre,** *I am freed from fear.*

[2] When an adjective is used with the noun, **cum** may be omitted.

597. TENSE

(*a*) Indicative

Imperfect Indicative — state of being; repeated, customary, or continuous action (**242**).

Perfect Indicative — act performed once (**242**).

(*b*) Infinitives and Participles

(Determined by main verb)

Present: *same time as* main verb (**449, 474,** 1).

Perfect: *before* main verb (**474,** 3).

Future: *after* main verb (**474,** 2).

598. AGREEMENT

Adjectives agree in number, gender, and case with the nouns which they modify (**16–17; 18,** *c*).

Verbs agree in person and number with their subjects (**33**).

When two singular subjects are connected by **aut, aut . . . aut, neque . . . neque,** the verb is singular (**229**).

The **relative pronoun** agrees in gender and number with its antecedent but its case depends upon its use in its own clause (**308**).

Appositives agree in case (**164**).

599. BOOKS FOR COLLATERAL READING

I. BOOKS FOR SPECIAL ASSIGNMENTS (referred to in the lessons)

* Available also in Everyman's Library, a series published by E. P. Dutton & Co.

Baker, Emilie Kip, *Stories of Old Greece and Rome.* The Macmillan Company (1913).

Botsford, George W., *A History of Rome.* The Macmillan Company (1901).

Bulfinch, Thomas, *The Age of Fable,** Lothrop, Lee and Shepard Co. (1881).

Clarke, M., *Story of Aeneas.* American Book Company (1898).

Colum, Padraic, *The Adventures of Odysseus and the Tale of Troy.* The Macmillan Company (1918).

Davis, William Stearns, *A Day in Old Rome.* Allyn and Bacon (1925).

Gayley, Charles Mills, *The Classic Myths in English Literature.* Ginn and Company (1911).

Greenwood, Josephine H., *Our Heritage from the Old World.* D. Appleton and Company (1921).

Guerber, H. A., *Myths of Greece and Rome.* American Book Company (1893).

Guerber, H. A., *The Story of the Romans.* American Book Company (1924).

Haaren, John H ., and Poland, A. B., *Famous Men of Rome.* American Book Company (1904).

Harding, C. H. and S. B., *The City of the Seven Hills.* Scott, Foresman and Company (1902).

Harding, C. H. and S. B., *Stories of Greek Gods, Heroes, and Men.* Scott, Foresman and Company (1897).

Hawthorne, Nathaniel, *A Wonderbook for Boys and Girls.** Houghton Mifflin Company (1892).

Johnston, Harold W., *The Private Life of the Romans.* Scott, Foresman and Company (1903).

McDaniel, Walton Brooks, *Roman Private Life and Its Survivals.* Longmans, Green and Co. (1924).

Morris, Charles, *Historical Tales (Roman).* J. B. Lippincott Company (1908).

Preston, Harriet W., and Dodge, Louise, *The Private Life of the Romans.* Benj. H. Sanborn and Co. (1893).

Sabin, Frances E., *Classical Myths That Live Today.* Silver, Burdett and Company (1927).

Tappan, Eva March, *The Story of the Roman People.* Houghton Mifflin Company (1910).

II. BOOKS AND NOVELS FOR HISTORICAL BACKGROUND

Bulwer-Lytton, Edward, *Last Days of Pompeii.** The Macmillan Company (1908).

Cowles, J. D., *Our Little Roman Cousin of Long Ago.* L. C. Page & Co. (1913).

Hall, Jennie, *Buried Cities.* The Macmillan Company (1922).

Lovell, Isabel, *Stories in Stone from the Roman Forum.* The Macmillan Company (1902).

Macgregor, Mary, *The Story of Rome.* Frederick A. Stokes Company (1913).

Tappan, Eva March, *Stories from the Classics,* Vol. 3. Houghton Mifflin Company (1907).

White, Edward Lucas, *The Unwilling Vestal.* E. P. Dutton and Co. (1918).

III. SUPPLEMENTARY BOOKS FOR THE TEACHER

Kent, Roland G., *Language and Philology*. Longmans, Green and Co. (1923).

Paxson, Susan, *Handbook for Latin Clubs*. Ginn and Company (1916).

Scott, H. F., and Carr, W. L., *The Development of Language*. Scott, Foresman and Company (1921).

Swan, Norma L., *Word Study for High Schools*. The Macmillan Company (1920).

Fig. 170. Interior of a House in Pompeii, Restored

APPENDIX

PRONUNCIATION[1]

600. Vowels

At one time the English vowels were pronounced like the Latin, but the pronunciation of English has changed greatly. In French, Spanish, Italian, German, etc., which also have adopted the Latin alphabet, the vowels are still pronounced substantially as in Latin.

Each of the Latin vowels may be pronounced long or short, the difference being one of *time*. This is called **quantity.** In addition, all the long vowels except **a** have a different *sound* from the short vowels. This is called **quality.** The pronunciation is as follows:

a) *Long*	*Short*	*Long and Short* as in
ā as in *father*	**a** as first *a* in *aha*	*Martha* (**ā, ă**)
ē as in *they*	**e** as in *let*	*lateness* (**ē, ĕ**)
ī as in *police*	**i** as in *bit*	*seasick* (**ī, ĭ**)
ō as in *rope*	**o** as in *obey, for*	*phonograph* (**ō, ŏ**)
ū as in *rude*	**u** as in *full*	*two-footed* (**ū, ŭ**)

In this book long vowels are regularly marked −; short vowels are usually unmarked, but ˘ is sometimes used.

(*b*) **Caution.** — It is very important to distinguish the *sounds* of the long and short vowels. For a person to say, *I heard the din in the hall,* when he meant the "dean," or *I forgot the debt,* when he meant the "date," is no worse than to confuse **ī** and **ĭ, ē** and **ĕ** in Latin.

The English equivalents of **e** and **o** are only approximate. Avoid pronouncing **ŏ** like *o* in *not* or in *note.*

601. Diphthongs

The first three of the following diphthongs (two vowels making one sound) are the ones most commonly used:

---

[1] The best way to learn correct pronunciation is by careful imitation of the teacher; the rules are given for reference.

ae like *ai* in *aisle*
au like *ou* in *out*
oe like *oi* in *oil*
ei like *ei* in *freight*
eu like *eh–oo* (pronounced quickly)
ui like *oo–ee* (pronounced quickly); only in **cui** and **huic**

602. Consonants

The Latin consonants have, generally speaking, the same sounds as in English. The following exceptions, however, should be noted:

b before **s** or **t** has the sound of **p**.
c is always hard as in *cat*, never soft as in *city*.
g is always hard as in *go*, never soft as in *gem*.
i (consonant) has the sound of *y* in *year*.
(**i** is a consonant between vowels and before a vowel at the beginning of a word)
s always has the sound of *s* in *sin;* never of *s* in *these*.
t always has the sound of *t* in *ten;* never of *t* in *motion*.
v has the sound of *w* in *will*.
x has the sound of *x* in *extra*.
(**ch** = **k**; **ph** = **f**; **th** = **t**)
Doubled consonants are pronounced separately: **an′–nus.**

603. English Pronunciation of Latin. — The above method of pronunciation is the ancient Roman method. It should be remembered, however, that Latin words which have become thoroughly English should be pronounced as English words; *e.g.* in *terra firma*, the *i* is pronounced as in *firm*, not as in *miracle;* in *alumni*, the *i* is pronounced as in *mile*.

604. Quantity of Vowels

The quantity (and quality) of vowels must be learned as part of the word. There are, however, a few general rules:

1. A vowel is short before another vowel or **h** (because **h** is weakly sounded).
2. A vowel is short before **nt, nd,** and final **m** and **t.**

605. Syllables

Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs: **vir–tū′–te, proe′–li–um.**

A single consonant between two vowels or diphthongs is pronounced with the second: **fī′–li–us, a′–git.** Compound words are divided into their component parts and are exceptions to this rule: **ad′–es.**

When two or more consonants occur between vowels or diphthongs, the division is made before the last consonant: **por′–tus, vīnc′–tī, an′–nus.** An exception to this rule occurs whenever a mute (**p, b, t, d, c, g**) is followed by a liquid (**l, r**), in which case the mute combines with the liquid and both are pronounced with the second vowel: **pū′–bli–cus, cas′–tra.**

The next to the last syllable of a word is called the **penult;** the one before the penult (or the third from the end) is called the **antepenult.**

606. Quantity of Syllables

Some syllables of course take longer to pronounce than others, just as some vowels are longer than others.

1. A syllable is *naturally* long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong.

2. A syllable is long *by position* if it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants or the double consonant **x** (= **cs**).

Note. — Exception is made in the case of a mute followed by a liquid (see **605**). **H** is so weakly sounded that it does not help make a syllable long.

Caution. — Distinguish carefully between long syllable and long vowel; in **ĕxĕm′plum** the first two syllables are long, though the vowels are short.

607. Accent

The accented syllable of a word is the one that is pronounced with more stress or emphasis than the others; so in the word

an'swer, the accent is on the first syllable. In Latin the accent is easily learned according to fixed rules:

1. Words of two syllables are accented on the first: **frā'ter.**

2. Words of three or more syllables are accented on the penult if it is long, otherwise on the antepenult: **lēgā'tus, exem'plum; dī'cĕre, si'milis.**

FIG. 171. ROMAN TOILET ARTICLES

Brush, combs, pins, mirror, rouge jar with cover.

ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR

The material here given may be reviewed in connection with the Lessons, where cross references to it will be found. For the use of those who prefer to review Elementary Grammar before taking up the Lessons, a number of explanations are given here which will also be found in the body of the book. Teachers can easily devise English exercises for drill with classes which need it. The sentences on these pages may be used for that purpose.

608. The Sentence. Subject and Predicate

A **sentence** is a group of words which make complete *sense.* Every sentence consists of two parts — the **subject** about which something is said and the **predicate** which says something about the subject: *The sailor* (subject) *saved the girl* (predicate), **Nauta puellam servāvit.**

A subject or predicate is said to be **modified** by those words which are closely associated with it.

609. Parts of Speech

The words of a language are divided, according to their use, into eight classes called **parts of speech.** These are:

Nouns	Verbs	Prepositions
Pronouns	Adverbs	Conjunctions
Adjectives		Interjections

610. Nouns

A **noun** (from Latin **nōmen,** *name*) is a word that names a person, place, or thing: *Anna,* **Anna; *island,* īnsula; *letter,* littera.**

Nouns may be classified as:

a. **Common** (applied to any one of a class): *city,* **urbs; *girl,* puella.**

b. **Proper** (applied to a particular one of a class): *Rome,* **Rōma; *Julia,* Iūlia.**

Note. — Proper nouns always begin with a capital letter.

611. Pronouns

A **pronoun** (Latin **prō,** *for;* **nōmen,** *name*) is a word used instead of a noun. The noun whose place is taken by a pronoun is called an **antecedent** (Latin **ante,** *before;* **cēdere,** *go*). There are five classes of pronouns:

a. **Personal** pronouns distinguish the three persons: the person speaking (*I,* **ego; *we,* nōs** — first person), the person spoken to (*you,* **tū, vōs** — second person), the person or thing spoken of (*he,* **is; *she,* ea; *it,* id; *they,* eī** — third person).

b. **Interrogative** pronouns are used to ask questions: *who,* **quis; *which, what,* quid.**

c. **Relative** pronouns relate to a preceding (antecedent) word and join to it a dependent clause; *who,* **quī; *which, what, that,* quod.**

d. **Demonstrative** pronouns point out persons or objects definitely — often accompanied with a gesture; *this,* **hic; *that,* ille; *these,* hī; *those,* illī.**

e. **Indefinite** pronouns refer to persons or objects in an indefinite way: *some one, some, any, anyone,* **aliquis; *no one,* nēmō; *each, everyone,* quisque.**

612. Adjectives

An **adjective** is a word used to describe or limit the meaning of a noun or pronoun:

a. **Descriptive** adjectives are either **common** or **proper**: *good,* **bonus; *Roman,* Rōmānus** (see **610** *a, b,* and **Note**).

b. **Limiting**:

1. **Article** — **definite** (*the*), **indefinite** (*a, an*). There is no word in Latin for "the" or "a."
2. **Numerals** — **cardinals** (*one, two, three,* etc., **ūnus, duo, trēs,** etc.), **ordinals** (*first, second, third,* etc., **prīmus, secundus, tertius,** etc.)
3. **Possessive** adjectives (formed from personal pronouns): *my, mine,* **meus; *our, ours,* noster; *your, yours,* tuus, vester; *his, her, its,* eius; *their, theirs,* eōrum.**

When interrogative, relative, demonstrative, and indefinite pronouns (**611**) are used as adjectives, they are called respectively:

4. **Interrogative** adjectives: ***what*** *street?* ***quae*** **via?**
5. **Relative** adjectives: *He spent a year in Italy, in* ***which*** *country he saw many beautiful things,* **Annum in Italiā ēgit, in *quā* terrā multa pulchra vīdit.**
6. **Demonstrative** adjectives: ***that*** *road,* ***illa*** **via.**
7. **Indefinite** adjectives: ***some*** *boy,* ***aliquis*** **puer.**

In English the demonstrative adjectives are the only ones that have different forms in the singular and plural: *this, these; that, those.*

613. Verbs

A **verb** is a word used to tell something about a subject; it expresses action or situation: *He* ***fought,*** ***Pugnābat;*** *He* ***is*** *good,* **Bonus *est.***

a. According to use, verbs are either **transitive** or **intransitive.**

1. A **transitive** verb (Latin **trāns,** *over;* **īre,** *go, pass*) is one in which the action expressed by the verb passes over to a receiver: *Anna* ***is carrying*** *water,* **Anna aquam *portat.***
2. An **intransitive** verb is one whose action does not pass over to a receiver: *Anna* ***is working,*** **Anna *labōrat.***

Contrast "set" (transitive) with "sit" (intransitive), and "lay" (transitive) with "lie" (intransitive).

b. Intransitive verbs are either **complete** or **linking** (copulative).

1. A **complete** verb is one which is complete in meaning without an object or other word: *He* ***sails,*** ***Nāvigat.***
2. A **linking** verb is one which links a noun or adjective to the subject: *They* ***are*** *good,* **Bonī *sunt.***

The chief linking verbs in English are *be, appear, seem, become, feel, look, taste, smell.*

c. An **auxiliary** verb (Latin **auxilium,** *help*) is one used in the conjugation of other verbs: *I* ***am*** *learning;* ***Did*** *you see? They* ***have*** *given.*

614. Adverbs

An **adverb** is a word used to modify the meaning of a verb, adjective, or other adverb: *He is working* ***now,*** ***Nunc*** **labōrat.**

615. Prepositions

A **preposition** is a word used to show the relation of a noun or pronoun, called its **object,** to some word in the sentence: *He sails* ***to*** *the island,* ***Ad*** **īnsulam nāvigat.** The preposition is said to **govern** its object.

616. Conjunctions

A **conjunction** is a word used to join words, groups of words, and sentences. Conjunctions may be classified according to their use as:

a. **Coördinate,** connecting words or sentences of equal rank (*and,* **et**; *but,* **sed**; *or,* **aut**; *nor,* **neque**).

b. **Subordinate,** connecting a subordinate part of a sentence with a principal part (*if,* **sī**; *while,* **dum**; *because,* **quod,** etc.).

c. **Correlative,** used in pairs (*both . . . and,* **et . . . et**; *neither . . . nor,* **neque . . . neque,** etc.).

617. Interjections

An **interjection** is a word used to show emotion. It has no direct relation to any other word in the sentence: *O! Alas! Ah! Oh!*

618. Inflection

The change of form which words undergo to indicate differences in use is called **inflection**: *boy — boys,* **puer — puerī**; *see, saw, seen,* **videō, vīdī, vīsus.** The inflection of nouns is called **declension.** Nouns and pronouns are declined to indicate change in number and case, and sometimes gender. Some pronouns indicate person (**611,** *a*).

619. Number

A noun or pronoun is **singular** when it refers to one person or thing: *girl,* **puella**; *house,* **aedificium**; *mouse,* **mūs**; *tooth,* **dēns.** It is **plural** when it refers to more than one: *girls,* **puellae**; *houses,* **aedificia**; *mice,* **mūrēs**; *teeth,* **dentēs.**

620. Gender

Gender is a distinction in the form of words corresponding to a distinction of sex. It is shown by change of word, by change of endings, or by use of a prefix: *father*, **pater** — *mother*, **māter**; *master*, **dominus** — *mistress*, **domina**; *he-goat* — *she-goat*. The first words given are **masculine,** the second are **feminine.** Most nouns in English have no gender and are therefore **neuter** ("neither" masculine nor feminine).

621. Case

Case is a change in the form of a noun or pronoun to show its use in the sentence: ***She*** (subject) *is here,* ***Ea*** **adest;** *I saw* ***her*** (object), ***Eam*** **vīdī.**

622. Subject and Object

a. The **subject** of a verb is that about which a thing is said (**608**).

b The **direct object** is that which is directly affected by the action indicated in the verb: *Anna carries* ***water,*** **Anna** ***aquam*** **portat.** The term object is also applied to a word dependent upon a preposition (**615**).

623. Names and Uses of the Cases

a. **Nominative.** — A noun or pronoun used as the subject of a verb is in the **nominative** case: *The* ***farmer*** *calls,* ***Agricola*** **vocat.**

b. **Accusative** (Objective). — A noun or pronoun used as the object of a verb or preposition is in the **accusative** case: *I sent a* ***book*** *to* ***him,*** **Ad eum** ***librum*** **mīsī.**

c. **Dative.** — The noun or pronoun that shows for whom or what the direct object is intended is called the **indirect object** and is put in the **dative** case: *I gave* ***him*** *a book,* ***Eī*** **librum dedī.**

d. **Genitive** (Possessive). — Possession is expressed by the **genitive** case: *the* ***boy's*** *book,* ***puerī*** **liber.**

624. Conjugation

The inflection of verbs is called **conjugation.** Verbs are conjugated to indicate *person, number, tense, voice,* and *mood.*

625. Person and Number

A verb must agree with its subject in person and number: *The girl* ***is*** *good,* **Puella *est* bona**; *The girls* ***are*** *good,* **Puellae *sunt* bonae.**

626. Tense

Tense is time. There are six tenses:

a. The **present** represents an act as taking place now: *He* ***goes.***

b. The **past** represents an act as having already taken place: *He* ***went*** *yesterday.*

c. The **future** represents an act that will occur at some future date: *He* ***will go*** *to-morrow.*

d. The **present perfect** represents an act as completed but from the point of view of the present: *He* ***has gone*** (just left).

e. The **past perfect** represents an act as completed at some definite time in the past: *He* ***had gone*** (before something else occurred).

f. The **future perfect** represents an act as completed at or before some definite time in the future: *He* ***will have gone*** (before something else will occur).

627. Progressive and Emphatic Verb Forms

a. **Progressive** (time or action continuous; used with the auxiliary "be"): *They* ***are studying,*** *they* ***were studying,*** *they* ***will be studying,*** *they* ***have been studying,*** *they* ***had been studying,*** *they* ***will have been studying.***

b. **Emphatic** (with the auxiliary "do," used only in the present and past):

1. Used in questions: ***Do*** (***did***) *you* ***know*** *this?*
2. Negative: ***I do*** (***did***) *not* ***know*** *it.*
3. Emphatic: ***I do*** (***did***) ***believe*** *it.*

628. Voice

A transitive verb is in the **active voice** when it represents the subject as the doer or agent: *Anna* ***accuses*** *the sailor,* **Anna nautam *accūsat.***

A transitive verb is in the **passive voice** when it represents the subject as the receiver of the action: *The sailor* ***is accused,*** **Nauta** ***accūsātur.***

Note. — Intransitive verbs are used only in the active voice in English.

629. Mood

The **indicative mood** is used to assert a fact or to ask a question: *Rome* ***is*** *a great city,* **Rōma** ***est*** **magna urbs;** *Where* ***is*** *Anna?* **Ubi** ***est*** **Anna?**

630. Infinitive

The **infinitive** is a form of the verb to which *to* is usually prefixed in English: ***to*** *go,* ***to*** *sing.* It has tense and voice, but not person, number, or mood.

631. Participle

The **participle** is a verbal adjective. As an adjective it modifies a noun or pronoun: *a* ***losing*** *fight.* As a verb it may have an object or adverbial modifiers: ***losing*** *his balance, he fell off.* The participles which are used in English are:

	Active	Passive
Present	*seeing*	*being seen*
Past	*having seen*	*seen, having been seen*

632. Synopsis

A **synopsis** is an outline, showing the given verb in a certain person and number in all moods and tenses (and in both voices if the verb is transitive).

633. Phrases

A **phrase** is a group of words without subject and predicate.

One important kind of phrase is the **prepositional phrase,** that is, a preposition together with the word or words which it governs: *in great danger,* **in magnō perīculō.**

634. Clauses

A **clause,** like a phrase, is a part of a sentence but differs from it in having a subject and a predicate.

Clauses are classified as:

a. **Principal,** when used as the leading or independent statement in a sentence: ***The girl** whom you saw on the street **is my sister,** **Puella** **quam in viā vīdistī** **est mea soror.***

b. **Subordinate,** when used as a dependent statement to modify the principal clause: *The girl* ***whom you saw on the street*** *is my sister,* **Puella** ***quam in viā vīdistī*** **est mea soror.**

Subordinate clauses are used as single parts of speech:

1. **Substantive** (or **noun**) **clause:** *It pleases me* ***that you came*** (your coming), **Mihi grātum est** ***quod vēnistī.***

2. **Adjective clause:** *This boy,* ***who is always good,*** *will receive a reward* (this good boy), **Hic puer,** ***quī semper bonus est,*** **praemium accipiet.**

3. **Adverbial clause:** *I gave him the money* ***because he earned it,*** **Eī pecūniam dedī** ***quod eam meruit.***

635. Sentences

a. A **simple sentence** contains one principal clause: *My friend, the farmer, has many horses,* **Amīcus meus, agricola, multōs equōs habet.**

b. A **compound sentence** contains two or more principal clauses connected by the coördinate conjunctions "and," "but," etc.: *My friend, the farmer, has many horses, but I have not seen them,* **Amīcus meus, agricola, multōs equōs habet, sed eōs nōn vīdī.**

c. A **complex sentence** contains one principal clause to which one or more subordinate clauses are joined by subordinate conjunctions or by relative or interrogative pronouns: *My friend, the farmer, has many horses which I have not seen,* **Amīcus meus, agricola, multōs equōs habet quōs nōn vīdī.**

SUMMARY OF INFLECTIONS

NOUNS

636. FIRST DECLENSION (71) SECOND DECLENSION (101)

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	via	viae	servus	servī
Gen.	viae	viārum	servī	servōrum
Dat.	viae	viīs	servō	servīs
Acc.	viam	viās	servum	servōs
Abl.	viā	viīs	servō	servīs
(*Voc.*)			(serve)	

637. SECOND DECLENSION (115, 129)

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	ager	agrī	puer	puerī	signum	signa
Gen.	agrī	agrōrum	puerī	puerōrum	signī	signōrum
Dat.	agrō	agrīs	puerō	puerīs	signō	signīs
Acc.	agrum	agrōs	puerum	puerōs	signum	signa
Abl.	agrō	agrīs	puerō	puerīs	signō	signīs

638. THIRD DECLENSION (358, 370)

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	mīles	mīlitēs	lēx	lēgēs	corpus	corpora
Gen.	mīlitis	mīlitum	lēgis	lēgum	corporis	corporum
Dat.	mīlitī	mīlitibus	lēgī	lēgibus	corporī	corporibus
Acc.	mīlitem	mīlitēs	lēgem	lēgēs	corpus	corpora
Abl.	mīlite	mīlitibus	lēge	lēgibus	corpore	corporibus

I-Stems (381)

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	cīvis	cīvēs	mare	maria
Gen.	cīvis	cīvium	maris	marium
Dat.	cīvī	cīvibus	marī	maribus
Acc.	cīvem	cīvēs (īs)	mare	maria
Abl.	cīve	cīvibus	marī	maribus

639. FOURTH DECLENSION (554)

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	cāsus	cāsūs	cornū	cornua
Gen.	cāsūs	cāsuum	cornūs	cornuum
Dat.	cāsuī	cāsibus	cornū	cornibus
Acc.	cāsum	cāsūs	cornū	cornua
Abl.	cāsū	cāsibus	cornū	cornibus

640. FIFTH DECLENSION (568)

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Gen.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
Dat.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Acc.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Abl.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

641. NOUNS OF IRREGULAR OR DEFECTIVE DECLENSION

	(455)		(495)	(553)	
	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	vīs	vīrēs	nēmō	domus	domūs
Gen.	——	vīrium	(nūllīus)	domūs (-ī)	domuum (-ōrum)
Dat.	——	vīribus	nēminī	domuī (-ō)	domibus
Acc.	vim	vīrēs (-īs)	nēminem	domum	domōs (-ūs)
Abl.	vī	vīribus	(nūllō)	domō (-ū)	domibus
(*Loc.*)				(domī)	

ADJECTIVES

642. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (71, 101, 115, 129, 143)

	Singular		
Nom.	magnus, *m.*	magna, *f.*	magnum, *n.*
Gen.	magnī	magnae	magnī
Dat.	magnō	magnae	magnō
Acc.	magnum	magnam	magnum
Abl.	magnō	magnā	magnō
(*Voc*)	(magne)		

		Plural	
Nom.	magnī	magnae	magna
Gen.	magnōrum	magnārum	magnōrum
Dat.	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs
Acc.	magnōs	magnās	magna
Abl.	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs

	Singular		
Nom.	līber, *m.*	lībera, *f.*	līberum, *n.*
Gen.	līberī	līberae	līberī
Dat.	līberō	līberae	līberō
Acc.	līberum	līberam	līberum
Abl.	līberō	līberā	līberō

	Plural		
Nom.	līberī	līberae	lībera
Gen.	līberōrum	līberārum	līberōrum
Dat.	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs
Acc.	līberōs	līberās	lībera
Abl.	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs

	Singular		
Nom.	noster, *m.*	nostra, *f.*	nostrum, *n.*
Gen.	nostrī	nostrae	nostrī
Dat.	nostrō	nostrae	nostrō
Acc.	nostrum	nostram	nostrum
Abl.	nostrō	nostrā	nostrō

Plural, **nostrī, nostrae, nostra,** etc.

643. THIRD DECLENSION (393)

a. Three Endings

	Singular			Plural		
Nom.	ācer, *m.*	ācris, *f.*	ācre, *n.*	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs (-īs)	ācrēs (-īs)	ācria
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

b. Two Endings

	Singular		Plural	
Nom.	fortis, *m., f.*	forte, *n.*	fortēs	fortia
Gen.	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium
Dat.	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus
Acc.	fortem	forte	fortēs (-īs)	fortia
Abl.	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus

c. One Ending

	Singular		Plural	
Nom.	pār, *m., f.*	pār, *n.*	parēs	paria
Gen.	paris	paris	parium	parium
Dat.	parī	parī	paribus	paribus
Acc.	parem	pār	parēs (-īs)	paria
Abl.	parī	parī	paribus	paribus

644. PRESENT PARTICIPLE (450)

	Singular		Plural	
Nom.	parāns, *m., f.*	parāns, *n.*	parantēs	parantia
Gen.	parantis	parantis	parantium	parantium
Dat.	parantī	parantī	parantibus	parantibus
Acc.	parantem	parāns	parantēs (-īs)	parantia
Abl.	parante (-ī)	parante (-ī)	parantibus	parantibus

645. NUMERALS (441, 527, 528)

Nom.	ūnus, *m.*	ūna, *f.*	ūnum,[1] *n.*	trēs, *m., f.*	tria, *n.*
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	trium	trium
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tribus	tribus
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	trēs	tria
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus	tribus

Nom.	duo, *m.*	duae, *f.*	duo, *n.*	mīlle	mīlia
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	mīlle	mīlium
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlle	mīlibus
Acc.	duōs	duās	duo	mīlle	mīlia
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlle	mīlibus

[1] Alius has aliud in the nom. and acc. sing. neuter. The plural is regular.

646. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

a. Regular (488, 503, 505)

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
altus, -a, -um	altior, altius	altissimus, -a, -um
fortis, forte	fortior, -ius	fortissimus, -a, -um
līber, -era, -um	līberior, -ius	līberrimus, -a, -um
ācer, ācris, ācre	ācrior, -ius	ācerrimus, -a, -um
facilis, facile	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um

b. Irregular (511)

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus, -a, -um	melior, -ius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um	peior, -ius	pessimus, -a, -um
magnus, -a, -um	maior, -ius	maximus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um	minor, -us	minimus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um	——, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
īnferus, -a, -um	īnferior, -ius	īnfimus *or* īmus, -a, -um
superus, -a, -um	superior, -ius	suprēmus *or* summus, -a, -um
——	prior, -ius	prīmus, -a, -um
——	propior, -ius	proximus, -a, -um
——	ulterior, -ius	ultimus, -a, -um

647. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES (489, 511)

	Singular		Plural	
Nom.	altior, *m.*, *f.*	altius, *n.*	altiōrēs	altiōra
Gen.	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
Dat.	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus
Acc.	altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
Abl.	altiōre	altiōre	altiōribus	altiōribus

	Singular		Plural	
Nom.	plūs,[1] *n.*		plūrēs, *m.*, *f.*	plūra, *n.*
Gen.	plūris		plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	——		plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	plūs		plūrēs	plūra
Abl.	plūre		plūribus	plūribus

[1] Masculine and feminine lacking in the singular.

648. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS (498, 512)

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
altē	altius	altissimē
līberē	līberius	līberrimē
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
facile	facilius	facillimē
bene	melius	optimē
male	peius	pessimē
multum	plūs	plūrimum
——	minus	minimē
——	magis	maximē

649. NUMERALS (339, 526)

	Roman Numerals	Cardinals	Ordinals
1.	I.	ūnus, –a, –um	prīmus, –a, –um
2.	II.	duo, duae, duo	secundus (alter)
3.	III.	trēs, tria	tertius
4.	IIII *or* IV.	quattuor	quārtus
5.	V.	quīnque	quīntus
6.	VI.	sex	sextus
7.	VII.	septem	septimus
8.	VIII.	octō	octāvus
9.	VIIII *or* IX.	novem	nōnus
10.	X.	decem	decimus
11.	XI.	ūndecim	ūndecimus
12.	XII.	duodecim	duodecimus
13.	XIII.	tredecim	tertius decimus
14.	XIIII *or* XIV.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15.	XV.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16.	XVI.	sēdecim	sextus decimus
17.	XVII.	septendecim	septimus decimus
18.	XVIII.	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus
19.	XVIIII *or* XIX.	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus
20.	XX.	vīgintī	vīcēsimus
21.	XXI.	vīgintī ūnus *or* ūnus et vīgintī	vīcēsimus prīmus *or* ūnus et vīcēsimus
30.	XXX.	trīgintā	trīcēsimus
40.	XXXX *or* XL.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
50.	L.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus

60.	**LX.**	**sexāgintā**	**sexāgēsimus**
70.	**LXX.**	**septuāgintā**	**septuāgēsimus**
80.	**LXXX.**	**octōgintā**	**octōgēsimus**
90.	**LXXXX** *or* **XC.**	**nōnāgintā**	**nōnāgēsimus**
100.	**C.**	**centum**	**centēsimus**
101.	**CI.**	**centum (et) ūnus**	**centēsimus (et) prīmus**
200.	**CC.**	**ducentī, -ae, -a**	**ducentēsimus**
300.	**CCC.**	**trecentī, -ae, -a**	**trecentēsimus**
400.	**CCCC.**	**quadringentī, -ae, -a**	**quadringentēsimus**
500.	**D.**	**quīngentī, -ae, -a**	**quīngentēsimus**
600.	**DC.**	**sescentī, -ae, -a**	**sescentēsimus**
700.	**DCC.**	**septingentī, -ae, -a**	**septingentēsimus**
800.	**DCCC.**	**octingentī, -ae, -a**	**octingentēsimus**
900.	**DCCCC.**	**nōngentī, -ae, -a**	**nōngentēsimus**
1000.	**M.**	**mīlle**	**mīllēsimus**
2000.	**MM.**	**duo mīlia**	**bis mīllēsimus**

PRONOUNS

650. PERSONAL (254)

	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	M. F. N.
Nom.	**ego**	**nōs**	**tū**	**vōs**	**is ea id**
Gen.	**meī**	**nostrum (nostrī)**	**tuī**	**vestrum (-trī)**	(For declension see **652**
Dat.	**mihi**	**nōbīs**	**tibi**	**vōbīs**	
Acc.	**mē**	**nōs**	**tē**	**vōs**	— demonstrative **is**)
Abl.	**mē**	**nōbīs**	**tē**	**vōbīs**	

651. REFLEXIVE (518)

	First person	Second person
Gen.	**meī** (declined like **ego**)	**tuī** (declined like **tū**)

Note. — Reflexive pronouns are not used in the nominative.

Third person

	Singular	Plural
Gen.	**suī**	**suī**
Dat.	**sibi**	**sibi**
Acc.	**sē (sēsē)**	**sē (sēsē)**
Abl.	**sē (sēsē)**	**sē (sēsē)**

652. DEMONSTRATIVE (414, 425, 432)

	Singular			Plural		
Nom.	**hic**, *m.*	**haec**, *f.*	**hoc**, *n.*	**hī**	**hae**	**haec**
Gen.	**huius**	**huius**	**huius**	**hōrum**	**hārum**	**hōrum**
Dat.	**huic**	**huic**	**huic**	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**
Acc.	**hunc**	**hanc**	**hoc**	**hōs**	**hās**	**haec**
Abl.	**hōc**	**hāc**	**hōc**	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**

Nom.	**is**, *m.*	**ea**, *f.*	**id**, *n.*	**eī (iī)**	**eae**	**ea**
Gen.	**eius**	**eius**	**eius**	**eōrum**	**eārum**	**eōrum**
Dat.	**eī**	**eī**	**eī**	**eīs (iīs)**	**eīs (iīs)**	**eīs (iīs)**
Acc.	**eum**	**eam**	**id**	**eōs**	**eās**	**ea**
Abl.	**eō**	**eā**	**eō**	**eīs (iīs)**	**eīs (iīs)**	**eīs (iīs)**

Singular

Nom.	**īdem**, *m.*	**eadem**, *f.*	**idem**, *n.*
Gen.	**eiusdem**	**eiusdem**	**eiusdem**
Dat.	**eīdem**	**eīdem**	**eīdem**
Acc.	**eundem**	**eandem**	**idem**
Abl.	**eōdem**	**eādem**	**eōdem**

Plural

Nom.	**eīdem (īdem)**	**eaedem**	**eadem**
Gen.	**eōrundem**	**eārundem**	**eōrundem**
Dat.	**eīsdem (īsdem)**	**eīsdem (īsdem)**	**eīsdem (īsdem)**
Acc.	**eōsdem**	**eāsdem**	**eadem**
Abl.	**eīsdem (īsdem)**	**eīsdem (īsdem)**	**eīsdem (īsdem)**

DEMONSTRATIVE (414)

	Singular		
Nom.	**ille**, *m.*	**illa**, *f.*	**illud**, *n.*
Gen.	**illīus**	**illīus**	**illīus**
Dat.	**illī**	**illī**	**illī**
Acc.	**illum**	**illam**	**illud**
Abl.	**illō**	**illā**	**illō**

(Plur. regular like **magnus**)

INTENSIVE (437)

	Singular		
Nom.	**ipse**, *m.*	**ipsa**, *f.*	**ipsum**, *n.*
Gen.	**ipsīus**	**ipsīus**	**ipsīus**
Dat.	**ipsī**	**ipsī**	**ipsī**
Acc.	**ipsum**	**ipsam**	**ipsum**
Abl.	**ipsō**	**ipsā**	**ipsō**

(Plur. regular)

653. RELATIVE (305)

	Singular			Plural		
Nom.	quī, *m.*	quae, *f.*	quod, *n.*	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

654. INTERROGATIVE (320)[1]

	Singular	
Nom.	quis,[2] *m., f.*	quid, *n.*
Gen.	cuius	cuius
Dat.	cui	cui
Acc.	quem	quid
Abl.	quō	quō

[1] Plural like that of quī.

[2] Interrogative adjective quī declined throughout like relative quī.

REGULAR VERBS

655. FIRST CONJUGATION

Principal Parts: **parō, parāre, parāvī, parātus**
(Stems: **parā-, parāv-, parāt-**)

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
PRESENT (**23**)		PRESENT (**221**)	
I prepare, etc.		*I am prepared*, etc.	
parō	parāmus	paror	parāmur
parās	parātis	parāris (-re)	parāminī
parat	parant	parātur	parantur
IMPERFECT (**39**)		IMPERFECT (**221**)	
I was preparing, etc.		*I was prepared*, etc.	
parābam	parābāmus	parābar	parābāmur
parābās	parābātis	parābāris (-re)	parābāminī
parābat	parābant	parābātur	parābantur
FUTURE (**51**)		FUTURE (**221**)	
I shall prepare, etc.		*I shall be prepared*, etc.	
parābō	parābimus	parābor	parābimur
parābis	parābitis	parāberis (-re)	parābiminī
parābit	parābunt	parābitur	parābuntur
PERFECT (**236**)		PERFECT (**271**)	
I prepared, I have prepared, etc.		*I was prepared, I have been prepared*, etc.	
parāvī	parāvimus	parātus (-a, -um) sum / es / est	parātī (-ae, -a) sumus / estis / sunt
parāvistī	parāvistis		
parāvit	parāvērunt (-ēre)		
PAST PERFECT (**247**)		PAST PERFECT (**272**)	
I had prepared, etc.		*I had been prepared*, etc.	
parāveram	parāverāmus	parātus (-a, -um) eram / erās / erat	parātī (-ae, -a) erāmus / erātis / erant
parāverās	parāverātis		
parāverat	parāverant		

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
FUTURE PERFECT (248)		FUTURE PERFECT (278)	
I shall have prepared, etc.		*I shall have been prepared*, etc.	
parāverō	parāverimus	parātus (–a, –um) erō / eris / erit	parātī (–ae, –a) erimus / eritis / erunt
parāveris	parāveritis		
parāverit	parāverint		

INFINITIVE (23, 280, 457, 463)

Present	parāre, *to prepare*	parārī, *to be prepared*
Perfect	parāvisse, *to have prepared*	parātus esse, *to have been prepared*
Future	parātūrus esse, *to be going to prepare*	

PARTICIPLES (269, 450–451)

Present	parāns, *Gen.* –antis, *preparing*	
Perfect		parātus, –a, –um, *prepared*
Future	parātūrus, –a, –um, *going to prepare*	

PRESENT IMPERATIVE (74)

2nd sing. parā, *prepare* (*thou*) *2nd plur.* parāte, *prepare* (*ye*)

656. SECOND CONJUGATION

Principal Parts: **habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus**
(Stems: **habē–, habu–, habit–**)

INDICATIVE

PRESENT (88)		PRESENT (221)	
habeō	habēmus	habeor	habēmur
habēs	habētis	habēris (–re)	habēminī
habet	habent	habētur	habentur

IMPERFECT (88)		IMPERFECT (221)	
habēbam	habēbāmus	habēbar	habēbāmur
habēbās	habēbātis	habēbāris (–re)	habēbāminī
habēbat	habēbant	habēbātur	habēbantur

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
FUTURE (88)		FUTURE (221)	
habēbō	habēbimus	habēbor	habēbimur
habēbis	habēbitis	habēberis (-re)	habēbiminī
habēbit	habēbunt	habēbitur	habēbuntur
PERFECT (236)		PERFECT (271)	
habuī	habuimus	habitus (-a, -um) sum / es / est	habitī (-ae, -a) sumus / estis / sunt
habuistī	habuistis		
habuit	habuērunt (-ēre)		
PAST PERFECT (247)		PAST PERFECT (272)	
habueram	habuerāmus	habitus (-a, -um) eram / erās / erat	habitī (-ae, -a) erāmus / erātis / erant
habuerās	habuerātis		
habuerat	habuerant		
FUTURE PERFECT (248)		FUTURE PERFECT (278)	
habuerō	habuerimus	habitus (-a, -um) erō / eris / erit	habitī (-ae, -a) erimus / eritis / erunt
habueris	habueritis		
habuerit	habuerint		

INFINITIVE (23, 280, 457, 463)

Present	habēre	habērī
Perfect	habuisse	habitus esse
Future	habitūrus esse	

PARTICIPLES (269, 450–451)

Present	habēns, *Gen.* -entis	
Perfect		habitus, -a, -um
Future	habitūrus, -a, -um	

PRESENT IMPERATIVE (74)

2*nd sing.* habē, *have (thou)*	2*nd plur.* habēte, *have (ye)*

657. THIRD CONJUGATION

Principal Parts: **pōnō, pōnĕre, posuī, positus**
(Stems: **pōnĕ-, posu-, posit-**)

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
INDICATIVE			
PRESENT (**155**)		PRESENT (**221**)	
pōnō	pōnimus	pōnor	pōnimur
pōnis	pōnitis	pōneris (-re)	pōniminī
pōnit	pōnunt	pōnitur	pōnuntur
IMPERFECT (**155**)		IMPERFECT (**221**)	
pōnēbam	pōnēbāmus	pōnēbar	pōnēbāmur
pōnēbās	pōnēbātis	pōnēbāris (-re)	pōnēbāminī
pōnēbat	pōnēbant	pōnēbātur	pōnēbantur
FUTURE (**182**)		FUTURE (**221**)	
pōnam	pōnēmus	pōnar	pōnēmur
pōnēs	pōnētis	pōnēris (-re)	pōnēminī
pōnet	pōnent	pōnētur	pōnentur
PERFECT (**236**)		PERFECT (**271**)	
posuī	posuimus	positus (-a, -um) sum / es / est	positī (-ae, -a) sumus / estis / sunt
posuistī	posuistis		
posuit	posuērunt (-ēre)		
PAST PERFECT (**247**)		PAST PERFECT (**272**)	
posueram	posuerāmus	positus (-a, -um) eram / erās / erat	positī (-ae, -a) erāmus / erātis / erant
posuerās	posuerātis		
posuerat	posuerant		
FUTURE PERFECT (**248**)		FUTURE PERFECT (**278**)	
posuerō	posuerimus	positus (-a, -um) erō / eris / erit	positī (-ae, -a) erimus / eritis / erunt
posueris	posueritis		
posuerit	posuerint		

	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE

INFINITIVE (**23**, **280**, **457**, **463**)

Present	pōnere	pōnī
Perfect	posuisse	positus esse
Future	positūrus esse	

PARTICIPLES (**269**, **450–451**)

Present	pōnēns, *Gen.* –entis	
Perfect		positus, –a, –um
Future	positūrus, –a, –um	

PRESENT IMPERATIVE (**74**)

2nd sing. pōne, *place* (*thou*) *2nd plur.* pōnite, *place* (*ye*)

658. FOURTH CONJUGATION

Principal Parts: **mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītus**
(Stems: **mūnī–, mūnīv–, mūnīt–**)

INDICATIVE

PRESENT (**171**)		PRESENT (**221**)	
mūniō	mūnīmus	mūnior	mūnīmur
mūnīs	mūnītis	mūnīris (–re)	mūnīminī
mūnit	mūniunt	mūnītur	mūniuntur

IMPERFECT (**171**)		IMPERFECT (**221**)	
mūniēbam	mūniēbāmus	mūniēbar	mūniēbāmur
mūniēbās	mūniēbātis	mūniēbāris (–re)	mūniēbāminī
mūniēbat	mūniēbant	mūniēbātur	mūniēbantur

FUTURE (**194**)		FUTURE (**221**)	
mūniam	mūniēmus	mūniar	mūniēmur
mūniēs	mūniētis	mūniēris (–re)	mūniēminī
mūniet	mūnient	mūniētur	mūnientur

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE		
PERFECT (236)		PERFECT (271)		
mūnīvī	mūnīvimus	mūnītus (-a, -um) sum	mūnītī (-ae, -a) sumus	
mūnīvistī	mūnīvistis	es	estis	
mūnīvit	mūnīvērunt (-ēre)	est	sunt	
PAST PERFECT (247)		PAST PERFECT (272)		
mūnīveram	mūnīverāmus	mūnītus (-a, -um) eram	mūnītī (-ae, -a) erāmus	
mūnīverās	mūnīverātis	erās	erātis	
mūnīverat	mūnīverant	erat	erant	
FUTURE PERFECT (248)		FUTURE PERFECT (278)		
mūnīverō	mūnīverimus	mūnītus (-a, -um) erō	mūnītī (-ae, -a) erimus	
mūnīveris	mūnīveritis	eris	eritis	
mūnīverit	mūnīverint	erit	erunt	

INFINITIVE (23, 280, 457, 463)

Present	mūnīre	mūnīrī
Perfect	mūnīvisse	mūnītus esse
Future	mūnītūrus esse	

PARTICIPLES (269, 450–451)

Present	mūniēns, *Gen.* mūnientis	
Perfect		mūnītus, -a, -um
Future	mūnītūrus, -a, -um	

PRESENT IMPERATIVE (74)

2nd sing. mūnī, *fortify (thou)* *2nd plur.* mūnīte, *fortify (ye)*

659. THIRD CONJUGATION *-IŌ* VERBS

Principal Parts: capiō, capĕre, cēpī, captus
(Stems: capĕ-, cēp-, capt-)

INDICATIVE

PRESENT (170)		PRESENT (221)	
capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
capis	capitis	caperis (-re)	capiminī
capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
IMPERFECT (170)		IMPERFECT (221)	
capiēbam, etc.		**capiēbar**, etc.	
FUTURE (194)		FUTURE (221)	
capiam	**capiēmus**	**capiar**	**capiēmur**
capiēs	**capiētis**	**capiēris** (**-re**)	**capiēminī**
capiet	**capient**	**capiētur**	**capientur**
PERFECT (236)		PERFECT (271)	
cēpī, etc.		**captus sum**, etc.	
PAST PERFECT (247)		PAST PERFECT (272)	
cēperam, etc.		**captus eram**, etc.	
FUTURE PERFECT (248)		FUTURE PERFECT (278)	
cēperō, etc.		**captus erō**, etc.	

INFINITIVE (**23**, **280**, **457**, **463**)

Present	**capere**	**capī**
Perfect	**cēpisse**	**captus esse**
Future	**captūrus esse**	

PARTICIPLES (**269**, **450–451**)

Present	**capiēns**, *Gen.* **capientis**	
Perfect		**captus**, **-a**, **-um**
Future	**captūrus**, **-a**, **-um**	

PRESENT IMPERATIVE (**74**)

2nd sing. **cape**, *take* (*thou*) — *2nd plur.* **capite**, *take* (*ye*)

IRREGULAR VERBS

660. Principal Parts: **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT (121)		IMPERFECT (135)	
sum, *I am*	**sumus**, *we are*	**eram**, *I was*, etc.	**erāmus**
es, *you are*	**estis**, *you are*	**erās**	**erātis**
est, *he is*	**sunt**, *they are*	**erat**	**erant**

FUTURE (135)

erō, *I shall be*, etc.	erimus
eris	eritis
erit	erunt

PERFECT (241)

fuī, *I was, I have been*, etc.	fuimus
fuistī	fuistis
fuit	fuērunt (–ēre)

PAST PERFECT (261)

fueram, *I had been*, etc.	fuerāmus
fuerās	fuerātis
fuerat	fuerant

FUTURE PERFECT (261)

fuerō, *I shall have been*, etc.	fuerimus
fueris	fueritis
fuerit	fuerint

INFINITIVE (457, 463)

Pres.	esse, *to be*
Perf.	fuisse, *to have been*
Fut.	futūrus esse, *to be going to be*

PARTICIPLE (451)

	——
	——
	futūrus, –a, –um, *going to be*

PRESENT IMPERATIVE (74)

2nd sing. es, *be (thou)*	*2nd plur.* este, *be (ye)*

661. Principal Parts: **possum, posse, potuī, ——**

INDICATIVE (332)

Pres.	possum, *I am able, I can*, etc.	possumus
	potes	potestis
	potest	possunt
Impf.	poteram, *etc., I was able, I could*, etc.	
Fut.	poterō, *etc., I shall be able*, etc.	
Perf.	potuī, *etc., I was able, I could*, etc.	
Past P.	potueram, *etc., I had been able*, etc.	
Fut. P.	potuerō, *etc., I shall have been able, etc.*	

INFINITIVE (329, 457)

Present posse, *to be able* *Perfect* potuisse, *to have been able*

PARTICIPLE (450)

Present potēns, *Gen.* –entis (adj.), *powerful*

FRENCH AND SPANISH THROUGH LATIN

Nōtitia linguārum est prīma porta sapientiae, *A knowledge of languages is the first door to wisdom.* — Bacon

662. The Romance Languages

The Romance (**Rōmānus,** *Roman*) languages — French, Spanish, Italian, Portuguese, and Rumanian — are modern forms of Latin. Fully ninety per cent of the words in French and Spanish are derived from Latin. The Latin student, therefore, who is familiar with the principles that govern vowel and consonant changes, as well as other peculiarities of word transfer, can recognize at a glance a large proportion of words in French and Spanish derived from classical (as opposed to late) Latin.

The following pages are intended primarily for older students who have elected Latin after having begun the study of French or Spanish. These rules will, moreover, be found invaluable for reference by the Latin student who may later elect French or Spanish (see **1**).

663. Pronunciation

The distinctions in sound between long and short **e** and **o** (**600,** *a*) are preserved in French and Spanish, though not in all derived words.

Spanish has no silent letters, except **h**, thus resembling Latin (**h** was weakly sounded in Latin).

664. Syllable Division

Syllable division in French and Spanish is according to the Latin rule (**605**).

665. Gender

Nouns which are masculine or feminine in Latin retain their gender in French and Spanish:

Lat.	**poēta,** *m.*	**līber,** *m.*	**mōns,** *m.*	**lībertās,** *f.*	**manus,** *f.*
Fr.	**poète**	**livre**	**mont**	**liberté**	**main**
Sp.	**poeta**	**libro**	**monte**	**libertad**	**mano**

Exception: Most Latin masculines in **–or** become feminine in French: **error,** *erreur*.

Nouns which are neuter in Latin become masculine in French and Spanish:

Lat.	*n.*	**verbum**	**tempus**
Fr.	*m.*	**verbe**	**temps**
Sp.	*m.*	**verbo**	**tiempo**

Exception: Many Latin neuters, especially those which were commonly used in the plural (which ends in **–a**, like the feminine singular) become feminine singular in French and Spanish:

Lat.	*n. plur.*	**arma**	**data**	**pecora**
Fr.	*f. sing.*	**arme**	**date**	**pécore**
Sp.	*f. sing.*	**arma**	**data**	**pécora**

FRENCH THROUGH LATIN

666. Accent

The French stress often preserves the Latin accent. The syllables after the accented syllable in Latin were dropped or became silent in French, which fact explains why the French stress is usually on the last syllable.

667. Vocabulary

Many Latin words remain unchanged in French, as in English: *agenda, alibi, errata, humus, omnibus, ultimatum*, etc.

668. Loss of Letters

1. The final syllable or letters of many Latin words are lost in French or changed to silent **e**: *ami* (**amīcum**[1]), *mont* (**montem**), *terre* (**terram**).

[1] The accusative of all Latin nouns and adjectives is given because the Romance forms are derived from it, not from the nominative.

2. An unaccented short vowel within a word is often lost: *homme* (**hom*i*nem**), *livrer* (**līberāre**), *peuple* (**populus**).

3. A consonant between two vowels is often lost: *cruel* (**crūdēlem**), *dire* (**dīcere**).

4. The first of two consonants is often lost: *frère* (**frātrem**).

669. Vowels

The Latin vowels often remain unchanged in French, but the following changes are to be noted:

(*A*) *Change to a single vowel*

1. **a** sometimes becomes **e**: *père* (**patrem**), *aimer* (**amāre**), *gré* (**grātum**), *mer* (**mare**).
2. **e** sometimes becomes **i**: *six* (**sex**), *lire* (**legere**).
3. **i** sometimes becomes **e**: *ferme* (**firmum**), *lettre* (**litteram**).
4. **u** sometimes becomes **o**: *nombre* (**numerum**), *onde* (**undam**), *rompre* (**rumpere**).
5. **au** sometimes becomes **o**: *chose* (**causam**).
6. **ae** and **oe** are treated as **e**.

(*B*) *Change to two vowels*

This was very common in accented syllables (cf. **558, 436**).

1. **ai** is from **a**: *aimer* (**amāre**), *main* (**manum**).
2. **ei** is from **e** or **i**: *plein* (**plēnus**), *seing* (**signum**).
3. **oi** is from **e, i, o,** or **u**: *roi* (**rēgem**), *voie* (**viam**), *gloire* (**glōriam**), *croix* (**crux**).
4. **ui** is from **o** or **u**: *puis* (**post**), *suis* (**sum**).
5. **au** is from **al,** and **eau** from **el**: *haut* (**altum**), *vaut* (**valet**), *beau* (**bellum**).
6. **eu, oeu,** is from **o**: *seul* (**sōlum**), *cœur* (**cor**).
7. **ou** is from **o** or **u**: *nous* (**nōs**), *prouver* (**probāre**), *jour* (**diurnum**).
8. **ie** is from **e**: *bien* (**bene**), *pied* (**pedem**).

670. Consonants

1. **b** and **p** sometimes become **v**: *livre* (**librum**), *avril* (**aprīlem**).

2. **p** and **v** sometimes become **b** or **f**: *double* (**duplicem**), *chef* (**caput**), *neuf* (**novum**).

3. **ct** sometimes becomes **it**: *fait* (**fac*t*um**), *fruit* (**frūc*t*um**).

4. **t** followed by **i** and a vowel in certain cases becomes **s**: *raison* (**ra*t*iōnem**).

5. **s** before a consonant is dropped and the preceding vowel receives a circumflex accent: *maître* (**magi*s*trum**), *tempête* (**tempe*s*tātem**).

6. **c** before **a**, especially at the beginning of words, becomes **ch**: *char* (**carrum**), *chef* (**caput**), *chose* (**causam**).

7. Initial **sc, sp,** and **st** become **esc, esp,** and **est**: *espace* (**spatium**), *espèce* (**speciem**).

In some words the **s** is dropped and the **e** has an acute accent: *étude* (**studium**).

671. Word Formation

The Latin prefixes used in French have undergone the same changes that have been noted for English in this book (cf. especially **com–, con–, en–, em–, sur–, tra–**). In addition, attention is called to the change from **dis–** to **de–, dés–** (**déshonneur**), **inter–** to **entre–** (**entrevoir**), **per–** to **par–** (**parfait**), **pro–** to **pour–** (**poursuivre**), **sub–** to **sou–, sous–** (**souvenir**), **ultra–** to **outre–** (**outremer**).

Latin suffixes in French show much the same form as in English. Note, however, the change of **–ātum** to **é** (**amātum,** *aimé*), **–ōrem** to **–eur** (**auctōrem,** *auteur*), **–ōsum** to **–eux** (**ōtiōsum,** *oiseux*), **–tātem** to **–té** (**lībertātem,** *liberté*).

672. Inflection

1. Nouns of the first Latin declension in **–a** end in silent **–e** in French.

2. The French definite article *le, la,* is derived from the last syllable of **ille, illa.**

3. The comparative forms of Latin irregular adjectives are to some extent preserved in French: *meilleur* (**melior**), *moins* (**minus**), *pire* (**peior**).

4. The same forms constitute the principal parts of verbs in French as in Latin, with the addition of the present participle.

5. Most French verbs belong to the first conjugation, with infinitive in **–er.** This corresponds to the Latin first conjugation,

with infinitive in **–āre,** but includes a number of verbs of the Latin second and third conjugations.

6. The French second conjugation, with infinitive in **–ir,** corresponds to the Latin fourth conjugation (**–īre**).

7. The French third conjugation, with infinitive in **–re,** corresponds to the Latin third conjugation (**–ĕre**).

8. The Latin personal endings have undergone considerable changes in French. The endings of the French past definite can easily be traced to those of the Latin perfect. Many of the irregular verbs in French preserve forms derived from the Latin:

suis	**(sum)**	*sommes*	**(sumus)**
es	**(es)**	*êtes*	**(estis)**
est	**(est)**	*sont*	**(sunt)**

SPANISH THROUGH LATIN

673. Accent

Accent is greatly simplified in Spanish if the student understands Latin accent. The so-called irregular accent of nouns and adjectives in Spanish preserves the Latin accent of the accusative case:

Lat.	**a′mant**	**a′nimum**	**ima′ginem**	**prōpo′situm**	**dormī′re**
Sp.	**aman**	**ánimo**	**imagen**	**propósito**	**dormir**

674. Vocabulary

Hundreds of words in Spanish are either identical with the original Latin form or resemble it so closely that one who knows Latin can understand their meaning at a glance, without knowing the principles that govern word transfer:

Lat.	**aqua**	**arma**	**causa**	**hōra**	**patria**	**trēs**	**victōria**	**dare**	**ūtilis**
Sp.	**agua**	**arma**	**causa**	**hora**	**patria**	**tres**	**victoria**	**dar**	**útil**

675. Loss of Letters

1. Final letters and syllables are often lost in Spanish, but not to the same extent as in French: *amigo* (**amīcum**), *monte* (**montem**), *útil* (**ūtilem**).

2. An unaccented short vowel within a word is sometimes lost: *hombre* (**hom*i*nem**), *librar* (**lī*be*rāre**), *pueblo* (**po*pu*lum**).

3. A consonant (especially **b, d, g, h**) between vowels is sometimes lost: *leer* (**le*g*ere**), *creer* (**crē*d*ere**), *traer* (**tra*h*ere**).

4. The first of two consonants is sometimes lost, especially **n** before **s**: *escrito* (**scrī*p*tum**), *autor* (**auc*t*ōrem**), *isla* (**ī*n*sulam**).

5. Double consonants become single: *oficio* (**of*f*icium**), *nulo* (**nū*ll*um**), *permitir* (**permi*tt*ere**). Double **n** becomes **ñ**: *año* (**a*nn*um**); **ñ** is also for **ni,** etc.: *señor* (**se*ni*or**).

676. Vowels

The Latin vowels often remain unchanged in Spanish, but the following changes are to be noted:

(*A*) *Change to a single vowel*

1. Short **i** sometimes becomes **e**: *lengua* (**l*i*nguam**), *letra* (**l*i*tteram**), *menos* (**m*i*nus**).
2. Short **u** sometimes becomes **o**: *onda* (***u*ndam**), *romper* (**r*u*mpere**).
3. **au** sometimes becomes **o**: *oído* (**a*u*dītum**), *cosa* (**c*au*sam**).
4. **ae** and **oe** are treated as **e.**

(*B*) *Change to two vowels*

1. Accented short **e** becomes **ie**: *bien* (**b*e*ne**), *cielo* (**c*ae*lum**), *cierto* (**c*e*rtum**).
2. Accented short **o** becomes **ue**: *bueno* (**b*o*num**), *cuerpo* (**c*o*rpus**), *nuevo* (**n*o*vem**).

677. Consonants

1. **c** sometimes becomes **g**: *amigo* (**amī*c*um**).
2. **p** sometimes becomes **b**: *pueblo* (**po*p*ulum**).
3. **t** sometimes becomes **d**: *maduro* (**mā*t*ūrum**), *padre* (**pa*t*rem**).
4. **ct** becomes **ch**: *dicho* (**di*ct*um**), *hecho* (**fa*ct*um**), *ocho* (**oc*t*ō**).
5. **li** becomes **j**: *consejo* (**cōnsi*li*um**), *hijo* (**fī*li*um**), *mejor* (**me*li*or**).
6. Initial **f** sometimes becomes **h**: *hacer* (**f*a*cere**), *hijo* (**f*ī*lium**).
7. Initial **cl** and **pl** sometimes become **ll**: *llamar* (**c*l*āmāre**), *llano* (**p*l*ānum**).

8. Initial **sc, sp,** and **st** become **esc, esp, est**: *escribir* (**scrībere**), *esperar* (**spērāre**), *estar* (**stāre**).

678. Word Formation

The Latin prefixes used in Spanish are easily recognizable. Note the following changes which sometimes occur: **ex–** to **ej–** (*ejercer*), **dis–** to **des–** (*descrédito*), **super–** to **sobre–** (*sobrehumano*).

The Latin suffixes are also used in Spanish. Note the following changes: **–ātum** to **–ado** (*amado*), **–tātem, –tūtem,** to **–tad, –tud** (*libertad, virtud*), **–tiōnem** to **–cion** (*oración*), **–tiam** to **–cia** (*gracia*).

679. Inflection

1. Nouns of the first Latin declension ending in **–a** retain the **–a** in Spanish: *gracia* (**grātia**), *tierra* (**terra**).

2. Nouns of the second Latin declension in **–us** and **–um** end in **–o** in Spanish: *carro* (**carrus**), *reino* (**rēgnum**).

3. The comparative and superlative forms of Latin irregular adjectives are to some extent preserved in Spanish: *peor* (**peior**), *mayor* (**maior**), *óptimo* (**optimus**), *libérrimo* (**līberrimus**).

4. The Spanish first conjugation, with infinitive in **–ar,** corresponds to the Latin first conjugation (**–āre**).

5. The Spanish second conjugation, with infinitive in **–er,** corresponds to the Latin second and third conjugations (**–ēre, –ĕre**).

6. The Spanish third conjugation, with infinitive in **–ir,** corresponds to the Latin fourth conjugation (**–īre**) but also includes many verbs of the third conjugation.

7. Many of the tenses of the Spanish verb are very much like the Latin. Cf. the imperfect:

Lat.	**amābam**	**amābās**	**amābat**	**amābāmus**	**amābātis**	**amābant**
Sp.	**amaba**	**amabas**	**amaba**	**amábamos**	**amabais**	**amaban**

Observe that final **–m** and **–t** of the personal endings of Latin verbs disappear in Spanish.

The Spanish past definite is very similar to the Latin perfect.

8. The Latin perfect participle will suggest at once the past participle of the Spanish verb, no matter how irregular: **impressus,** Sp. *impreso;* **scrīptus,** Sp. *escrito.*

680. Vocabulary

I The Classroom

blackboard, **tabula (nigra)**
desk, **scrīnium**
door, **iānua**
open, close the door, **aperī, claude iānuam**
seat, **sella**
window, **fenestra**
sit down, **cōnsīde, –ite**
chalk, **crēta**
pencil, **stilus**
pen, **calamus**
ink, **ātrāmentum**
paper, **charta**
stand up, **surge, –ite**

II The Lesson

page, **pāgina**
lesson, **pēnsum**
to speak, know Latin, **loquī, scīre Latīnē**
translate into English, **Anglicē redde**

III Grammar

parts of speech, **partēs ōrātiōnis:**
nōmen, adiectīvum, prōnōmen (persōnāle, relātīvum,[1] etc.), verbum, adverbium, praepositiō, coniūnctiō, interiectiō
case, **cāsus: nōminātīvus, genitīvus, datīvus, accūsātīvus,[1] etc.**
gender, **genus: masculīnum, fēminīnum, neutrum**
number, **numerus: singulāris, plūrālis**
person, **persōna: prīma, secunda, tertia**
declension, **dēclīnātiō; *to decline,* dēclīnāre**
tense, **tempus: praesēns, imperfectum, futūrum, perfectum, praeteritum perfectum, futūrum perfectum**
mood, **modus: indicātīvus,[1] etc.**

voice, **vōx: actīva, passīva**
conjugation, **coniugātiō; *to conjugate,* coniugāre**
participle, **participium**
deponent, **dēpōnēns**

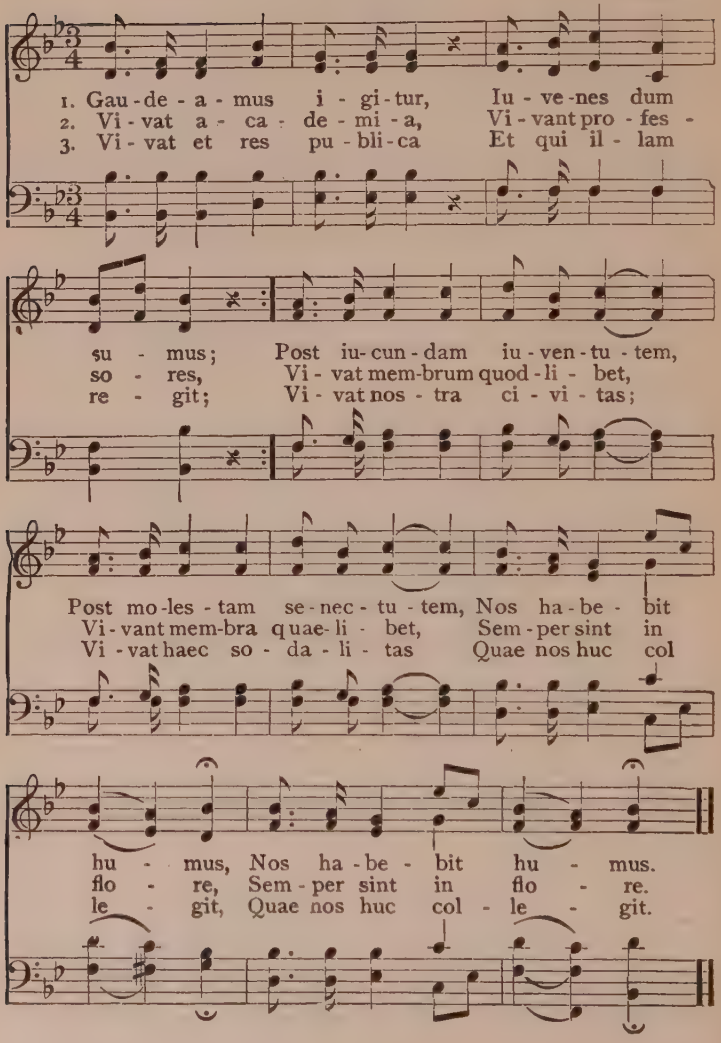
IV Miscellaneous

good morning, **salvē, –ēte**
good bye, **valē, –ēte**
how are you? **quid agis?**
good! **bene!**
to-day, **hodiē**
yesterday, **herī**
to-morrow, **crās**
that's enough, **satis est**

[1] Similarly other words whose English forms end in *–ive.*

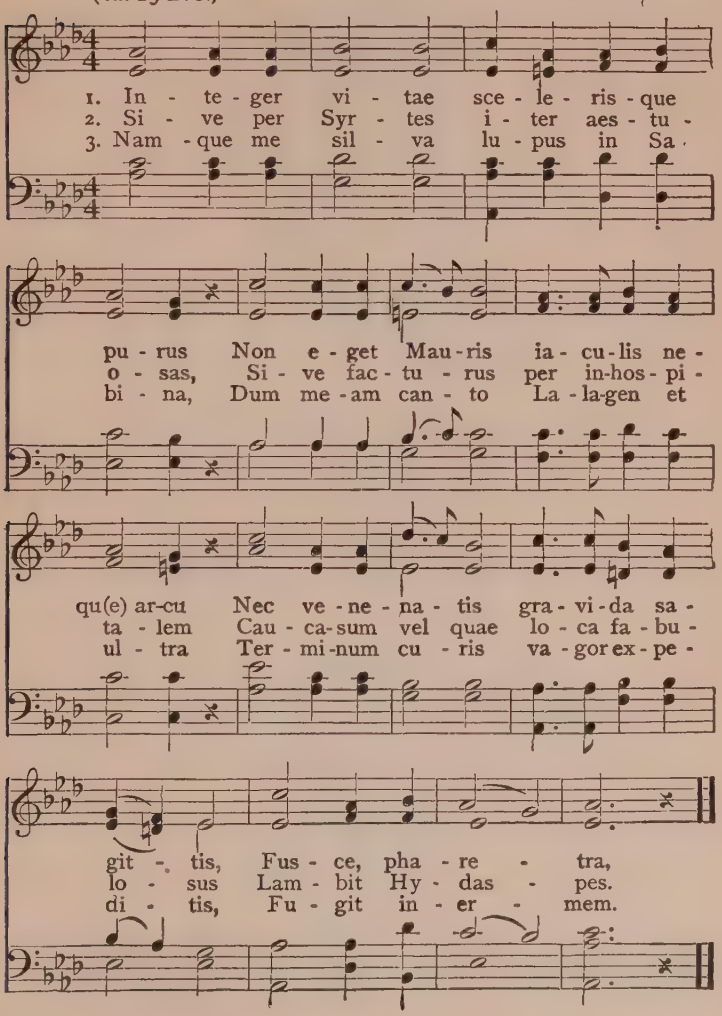
GAUDEAMUS IGITUR

Student Song


1. Gau - de - a - mus i - gi - tur, Iu - ve - nes dum
2. Vi - vat a - ca - de - mi - a, Vi - vant pro - fes -
3. Vi - vat et res pu - bli - ca Et qui il - lam
su - mus; Post iu - cun - dam iu - ven - tu - tem,
so - res, Vi - vat mem - brum quod - li - bet,
re - git; Vi - vat nos - tra ci - vi - tas;
Post mo - les - tam se - nec - tu - tem, Nos ha - be - bit
Vi - vant mem - bra quae - li - bet, Sem - per sint in
Vi - vat haec so - da - li - tas Quae nos huc col
hu - mus, Nos ha - be - bit hu - mus.
flo - re, Sem - per sint in flo - re.
le - git, Quae nos huc col - le - git.

INTEGER VITAE

HORACE, Odes I. 22 (ca. 25 B.C.)

Dr. F. F. FLEMMING, ca. 1811

1. In - te - ger vi - tae sce - le - ris - que
2. Si - ve per Syr - tes i - ter aes - tu -
3. Nam - que me sil - va lu - pus in Sa -
pu - rus Non e - get Mau - ris ia - cu - lis ne -
o - sas, Si - ve fac - tu - rus per in - hos - pi -
bi - na, Dum me - am can - to La - la - gen et
qu(e) ar - cu Nec ve - ne - na - tis gra - vi - da sa -
ta - lem Cau - ca - sum vel quae lo - ca fa - bu -
ul - tra Ter - mi - num cu - ris va - gor ex - pe -
git - tis, Fus - ce, pha - re - tra,
lo - sus Lam - bit Hy - das - pes.
di - tis, Fu - git in - er - mem.

ADESTE FIDĒLĒS[1]

Adeste, fidēlēs,
Laetī triumphantēs;
Venīte, venīte in Bethlehem;
Nātum vidēte
Rēgem angelōrum;
Venīte adōrēmus, venīte adōrēmus,
Venīte adōrēmus Dominum.

Cantet nunc "Iō!"
Chorus angelōrum;
Cantet nunc aula caelestium:
"Glōria, glōria
In excelsīs Deō!"
Venīte, etc.

Ergō quī nātus
Diē hodiernā,
Iēsū, tibi sit glōria;
Patris aeternī
Verbum carō factum!
Venīte, etc.

AMERICA

Tr. George D. Kellogg

Tē canō, Patria,
Candida, lībera;
Tē referet
Portus et exulum
Et tumulus senum;
Lībera montium
Vōx resonet.

[1] Sung to the tune of the Portuguese Hymn, "O Come, All Ye Faithful."

Tūtor es ūnicus,
Ūnus avum Deus!
Laudō libēns.
Patria lūceat,
Lībera fulgeat,
Vīs tua mūniat,
Omnipotēns!

THE STAR-SPANGLED BANNER

Tr. F. A. Geyser

Ōh, potestne cernī, prōfulgente diē,
Salūtātum signum circā noctis adventum?
Lātī clāv(ī) et stellae, dēcertant(e) aciē,
Glōriōsē cingunt oppidī mūnīmentum!
Iaculumque rubēns, globus sūrsum rumpēns
Per noctem mōnstrant vexillum fulgēns.
Stellātumne vexillum volāns tegit nōs,
Patriam līberam fortiumque domōs?

Ōh, sīc estō semper, manus sī lībera
Arcet ā patriā bellī vāstātiōnem!
Triumphante pāce patria prōspera
Deum laudet quī nōs statuit nātiōnem!
Victōria me(a) est, quandō causa iūst(a) est;
Haec nostra sit vōx: "Deus salūs nostr(a) est."
Stellātum vexillum triumphāns teget nōs,
Patriam līberam fortiumque domōs!

WORD LISTS FOR VOCABULARY DRILL

Prescribed by the Revised (1928) New York State Syllabus and the College Board Latin Word List (in the main).

FIRST HALF YEAR

The following lists are to be memorized thoroughly. Time-limited tests are recommended, in which teachers should strive to secure at least 90 per cent efficiency.

Verbs

amō*	love	moveō	move
appellō	name, call	commoveō	move thoroughly, alarm
cōnfirmō	strengthen, assert		
dō	give	permoveō	move strongly, excite
exspectō	look out for, wait for	removeō	move back, withdraw
labōrō	toil, suffer	respondeō	answer
līberō	set free	teneō	hold
nāvigō	sail	contineō	hold together, bound
nūntiō	give news, announce	obtineō	hold fast, obtain
occupō	seize	pertineō	extend, belong to
parō	make ready, prepare	sustineō	uphold, resist
comparō	make ready, buy, compare	timeō	be afraid, fear
portō	carry	videō	see
pugnō	fight	agō	drive, do, plead
servō	keep, save	cōgō	drive together, gather, compel
spectō	look at	redigō	drive back, reduce
superō	overcome, surpass, defeat	cēdō	move, go away, yield
vocō	call	discēdō	go away
habeō	have, hold	excēdō	go out, withdraw
moneō	warn, advise	dēfendō	ward off, defend

* Words printed in lightface type are not required until later by the College Board Latin Word List or are not found at all in that list.

VERBS — *Continued*

dūcō	lead	**intermittō**	interrupt, stop
addūcō	lead to, influence	**permittō**	allow
indūcō	lead on, influence	**praemittō**	send ahead
perdūcō	lead through, construct	**remittō**	send back, let go, relax
prōdūcō	lead forward, protract	**petō**	seek, attack, ask
		relinquō	leave behind
gerō	carry on	**scrībō**	write
lūdō	play	**cōnscrībō**	write together, enroll
mittō	send		
āmittō	send away, let go, lose	**vincō**	conquer
committō	send together, entrust, join	**sum**	be
		absum	be away, be absent
dīmittō	send away, dispatch	**adsum**	be near, be present

NOUNS

agricola	farmer	**prōvincia**	province
amīcitia	friendship	**puella**	girl
aqua	water	**pugna**	fight
fāma	reputation, rumor	**rēgīna**	queen
fēmina	woman	**silva**	forest
fīlia	daughter	**terra**	earth, land
fortūna	chance, fortune	**via**	way, road
fuga	flight	**victōria**	victory
iniūria	wrong	**vīta**	life
īnsula	island		
lingua	tongue, language	**ager**	field, country
lūna	moon	**animus**	spirit, courage, mind
memoria	memory		
mēnsa	table, dish	**annus**	year
nātūra	nature, character	**arma**	arms, implements
nauta	sailor	**auxilium**	aid, assistance
patria	one's country	**bellum**	war
pecūnia	money	**castra**	camp
poena	penalty, punishment	**cōnsilium**	plan, counsel
		deus	god
poēta	poet	dominus	master
porta	gate	**equus**	horse

NOUNS — *Continued*

factum	deed	**auctōritās**	authority, influence
fīlius	son	**caput**	head
frūmentum	grain	**celeritās**	swiftness, speed
gladius	sword	**cōnsul**	consul
liber	book	**corpus**	body
locus	place	**dux**	leader
magister	master, teacher, helmsman	**flūmen**	river
		frāter	brother
negōtium	business, task	**hiems**	winter
numerus	number	**homō**	man, human being
oculus	eye	**lātitūdō**	width
officium	duty	**lēx**	law
oppidum	town	**lībertās**	freedom
perīculum	trial, danger	**lūx**	light
populus	people, nation	**magnitūdō**	greatness, size
praemium	reward	**māter**	mother
praesidium	garrison, protection	**mīles**	soldier
proelium	battle	**multitūdō**	large number, crowd
puer	boy		
rēgnum	kingdom, royal power	**nōmen**	name
		pater	father
servus	slave	**pāx**	peace
signum	sign, signal, standard	**pēs**	foot
		prīnceps	leading man, chief
socius	ally	**rēx**	king
vesper	evening	**sōl**	sun
vir	man	soror	sister
		tempus	time
aestās	summer	**victor**	conqueror
altitūdō	height	**virtūs**	manliness, bravery
arbor	tree	**vōx**	voice, word

ADJECTIVES, PRONOUNS

aequus	level, equal, kindly	**certus**	sure, certain
altus	high, deep	**crēber**	thick, close, frequent
amīcus	friendly		
amplus	large, splendid	**decimus**	tenth
barbarus	foreign, rude	**ēgregius**	outstanding, distinguished
bonus	good		

Adjectives, Pronouns — *Continued*

finitimus	neighboring	**secundus**	following, second, favorable
ignōtus	unknown		
inimīcus	unfriendly	**septimus**	seventh
inīquus	uneven, unfair	**sextus**	sixth
integer	whole	**tertius**	third
lātus	wide	**timidus**	fearful, cowardly
līber	free	**tuus**	thy, thine, your, yours
longus	long		
magnus	great	**ūnus**	one
malus	bad	**vērus**	true
meus	my, mine	**vester**	your, yours
miser	wretched		
multus	much; (plu. many)	**centum**	hundred
nōnus	ninth	**decem**	ten
noster	our, ours	**duo**	two
nōtus	known	**novem**	nine
novus	new	**octō**	eight
octāvus	eighth	**quattuor**	four
parvus	small	**quīnque**	five
paucī	a few, few	**septem**	seven
prīmus	first	**sex**	six
pūblicus	belonging to the people, public	**trēs**	three
		vīgintī	twenty
quārtus	fourth		
quīntus	fifth	**is**	this, that, he
reliquus	left behind, remaining, rest of	**quī**	who, which, that

Prepositions, Adverbs, Conjunctions

ā (ab)	from, away from, by	**in**	in, into
		per	through
ad	to, toward, near	**post**	after, behind
ante	before	**prō**	in front of, in behalf of
cum	with		
dē	down from, concerning	**sine**	without
		sub	under, close to
ē (ex)	out of	**trāns**	across

PREPOSITIONS, ADVERBS, CONJUNCTIONS — *Continued*

anteā	before that, previously	**cūr**	why
iam	now, already, presently	**et**	and
		et . . . et	both . . . and
nōn	not	**etiam**	also, even
nunc	now	**-ne**	interrogative particle
posteā	after that, afterwards	**nec (neque)**	and not, nor, neither
tum (tunc)	at that time	**neque . . . neque**	neither . . . nor
ubi	where, when	**quam**	how, as, than
ac (atque)	and also, and	**-que**	and
aut	or	**quod**	because
aut . . . aut	either . . . or	**sed**	but

SECOND HALF YEAR

VERBS

appropinquō	approach	**laudō**	praise
clāmō	shout, cry	**occultō**	hide, conceal
commūnicō	share, communicate	**recuperō**	regain, get back
		temptō	try, attempt
dēmōnstrō	point out	**vītō**	avoid
(dō — 3d conjugation compounds)		**vulnerō**	wound
abdō	put away, hide		
circumdō	put around, surround	**audeō**	dare
		dēbeō	owe, ought
reddō	give back, return	**doceō**	teach, inform
trādō	hand over, entrust, surrender	**iubeō**	order, command
		licet	it is permitted
dubitō	hesitate, doubt	**maneō**	stay, remain
ēnūntiō	disclose, announce	**permaneō**	stay through, abide
exīstimō	think, believe	**noceō**	harm
prōnūntiō	declare	**obsideō**	sit against, besiege
putō	think	**oportet**	it behooves, ought
renūntiō	announce, proclaim	**perterreō**	frighten thoroughly
ignōrō	be unacquainted with	**possideō**	possess, acquire
		prohibeō	keep away

VERBS — *Continued*

studeō	be eager, desire
antecēdō	go before, surpass
succēdō	approach, come next
claudō	close, shut
coepī	have begun
cognōscō	learn; (perfect: know)
cōnfīdō	trust
cōnsistō	take position, halt, stop
dēsistō	desist, cease
resistō	take a stand, resist
contendō	struggle, hasten
ostendō	hold out, show
dīcō	say, speak
exstruō	pile up, build
īnstruō	arrange, marshal
legō	pick, choose, read
dēligō	pick out, choose
pellō	strike, beat, drive
compellō	drive together, collect, force
impellō	drive on, urge on
pōnō	put, place
dēpōnō	put down, put aside
expōnō	put forth, set forth
impōnō	put on
prōpōnō	set forth, propose
premō	press
submittō	send under, send to assist, yield
trahō	drag, draw
capiō	take, seize
accipiō	take to, receive, accept
excipiō	take out, succeed to
incipiō	begin
cupiō	desire, wish
faciō	do, make
cōnficiō	accomplish, complete
dēficiō	fail, revolt from
interficiō	kill
perficiō	accomplish
praeficiō	put at the head of
prōficiō	accomplish, gain
satisfaciō	do enough, do one's duty, apologize
iaciō	hurl, throw
adiciō	add to
coniciō	hurl, throw
obiciō	throw against
prōiciō	hurl (forward)
audiō	hear
fīniō	limit, bound, end
mūniō	do a task, build, fortify
sciō	know
sentiō	feel, think, judge
cōnsentiō	think together, agree
veniō	come
circumveniō	come around, surround, cut off
conveniō	come together, assemble
inveniō	come upon, find
perveniō	come through, arrive
dēsum	be lacking
possum	be able, can
praesum	be ahead, be in charge of
supersum	be over, remain, survive

Nouns

cōpia	supply, abundance (plu. forces)	**timor**	fear
		vulnus	wound
hōra	hour	**iter**	road, march
inopia	want, lack		
rīpa	bank, shore	**cīvis**	citizen
sagitta	arrow	dēns	tooth
toga	toga	**finis**	end, boundary (plu. territory)
tuba	trumpet		
vīlla	farm house	**hostis**	enemy
		mare	sea
beneficium	kind deed, service	**mēns**	mind
bīduum	two days	**mēnsis**	month
campus	plain, field	**mōns**	mountain
digitus	finger, toe	**mors**	death
imperātum	command	**nāvis**	ship
imperium	command, power	**nox**	night
maleficium	evil deed	**pars**	part
modus	measure, manner	**pōns**	bridge
spatium	space	**urbs**	city
trīduum	three days	**vīs**	violence, force
		adventus	approach, arrival
aetās	age, time of life	**cornū**	horn, wing (of an army)
cīvitās	citizenship, community, state		
		domus	home, house
condiciō	agreement, terms, condition	**equitātus**	body of horsemen, cavalry
cōnsuētūdō	custom, habit	**exercitus**	trained body, army
cupiditās	desire, longing	**exitus**	outcome, end
difficultās	difficulty	**manus**	hand, band, troop
dignitās	worth, rank	**passus**	pace, (double) step
facultās	power of doing, ability, chance	**senātus**	body of elders, senate
genus	origin, kind, race	**aciēs**	edge, line of battle
iūs	right, law	**diēs**	day
laus	praise, glory	**fidēs**	trust, pledge, reliability
ōrātiō	speech		
ōrdō	order, rank	**meridiēs**	midday
potestās	power	**rēs**	thing
ratiō	reckoning, plan, reason	**rēs pūblica**	commonwealth
		spēs	hope

Adjectives, Pronouns

cupidus	desirous	**levis**	light, fickle
dexter	right (of direction)	**mīlle**	thousand
idōneus	suitable	**nōbilis**	well-known
maritimus	of the sea, maritime	**omnis**	all, whole (sing. every)
necessārius	necessary		
occultus	hidden, secret	**pār**	equal
perītus	experienced, skilled	**potēns**	able, powerful
propinquus	nearby, kinsman	**praesēns**	present, in person
sinister	left (of direction)	**prūdēns**	foreseeing, discreet, wise
suus	his, her, its, their (own)	**recēns**	fresh, new
vīcīnus	neighboring	**similis**	like, resembling
		singulāris	one by one, extraordinary
ācer	sharp, keen, eager		
alacer	eager, cheerful		
celer	swift	**ego**	I
commūnis	common, general	**hic**	this
difficilis	difficult	**īdem**	the same
dīligēns	careful	**ille**	that
facilis	easy	**ipse**	self, very
fidēlis	faithful	**quis**	who, any
fortis	brave	**suī**	(of) himself, herself, itself, themselves
gravis	heavy, serious		
humilis	low, lowly	**tū**	thou, you

Prepositions, Adverbs, Conjunctions

apud	near, in the presence of, among	**eōdem**	to the same place
		facile	easily
inter	between, among	hīc (adv.)	here, at this point
ob	against, on account of	**hūc**	hither
		iam prīdem	long ago
propter	near, on account of	**ibi**	there
		inde	thence
aegrē	with difficulty	**interim**	meanwhile
amplius	more	**magis**	more greatly, more
bene	well	**magnopere**	greatly
bis	twice	**nē . . . quidem**	not even
eō	thither, to that place	**parum**	(too) little

PREPOSITIONS, ADVERBS, CONJUNCTIONS — *Continued*

quidem	certainly, at least	**vērō**	in truth, but
quō	whither	**autem**	moreover, but
satis	enough	**enim**	for, indeed
unde	whence	**nam**	for
vehementer	strongly	**sī**	if

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

The English pronunciation of proper names is indicated by a simple system. The vowels are as follows: ā as in *hate*, ă as in *hat*, ē as in *feed*, ĕ as in *fed*, ī as in *bite*, ĭ as in *bit*, ō as in *hope*, ŏ as in *hop*, ū as in *cute*, ŭ as in *cut*. In the ending ēs the *s* is soft as in *rose*. When the accented syllable ends in a consonant, the vowel is short; otherwise, it is long.

A

ā, ab, *prep. w. abl.*, from, away from, by.

abeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, go away.

absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, be away, be absent.

ac, *see* **atque.**

accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, approach.

accidō, -ere, accidī, —, fall to, befall, happen (*w. dat.*).

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, receive.

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, blame, accuse.

ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp, keen.

ācriter, *comp.*, **ācrius,** *superl.*, **ācerrimē,** *adv.*, sharply.

Actium, -tī, *n.*, Actium (Ak′shium), *a promontory in Epirus.*

ad, *prep. w. acc.*, to, toward, for, near.

addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead to, influence.

adhibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitus, apply, employ, summon.

adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, be near, be present.

adventus, -ūs, *m.*, a coming to, arrival.

aedēs, -ium, *f. pl.*, a house.

aedificium, -cī, *n.*, building.

aeger, -gra, -grum, sick.

Aegyptiī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Egyptians.

Aegyptus, -ī, *f.*, Egypt.

Aenēās, -ae, *m.*, Aeneas (Enē′as).

Aeolus, -ī, *m.*, Aeolus (Ē′olus).

aequē, *adv.*, justly.

aequus, -a, -um, even, equal, fair, just, calm.

aestās, aestātis, *f.*, summer.

aetās, aetātis, *f.*, age, time of life.

Aetna, -ae, *f.*, (Mt.) Etna.

afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, affect, afflict with, visit with.

Āfrī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Africans.

Āfrica, -ae, *f.*, Africa.

Āfricānus, -ī, *m.*, Africā′nus.

ager, agrī, *m.*, field, land, country.

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, drive, live *or* spend (*of time*), do, treat, discuss; **grātiās agere,** thank; **triumphum agere,** celebrate a triumph.

agricola, –ae, *m.*, farmer.
āh! *interj.*, ah!
āla, –ae, *f.*, wing.
Albānī, –ōrum, *m.*, the Albans, *the people of Alba Longa.*
albus, –a, –um, white.
Alcinous, –ī, *m.*, Alcinous (Alsin′-o-us), *king of the Phaeacians.*
ālea, –ae, *f.*, die (*pl.*, dice).
Alexandrīa, –ae, *f.*, Alexandria, *a city in Egypt.*
Alexandrīnī, –ōrum, *m.*, the Alexandrians, *the people of Alexandria.*
aliēnus, –a, –um, another's, unfavorable, foreign, of no concern.
alius, alia, aliud, other, another; **alius . . . alius,** one . . . another; **aliī . . . aliī,** some . . . others.
alō, –ere, aluī, alitus, feed, nourish.
Alpēs, –ium, *f.*, the Alps.
altē, *adv.*, on high, deeply, far.
alter, altera, alterum, the other (*of two*); **alter . . . alter,** the one . . . the other.
altus, –a, –um, high, deep, tall.
ambō, –ae, –ō, both.
America, –ae, *f.*, America.
Americānus, –a, –um, American; **Americānus, –ī,** *m.*, an American.
amīcitia, –ae, *f.*, friendship.
amīcus, –a, –um, friendly; **amīcus, –ī,** *m.*, **amīca, –ae,** *f.*, friend.
āmittō, –ere, āmīsī, āmissus, let go, lose.
amō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, love, like.
amor, –ōris, *m.*, love.
amphitheātrum, –ī, *n.*, amphitheater.
amplē, fully; *comp.*, **amplius,** more, further.
amplus, –a, –um, great, large, magnificent.
Amūlius, –lī, *m.*, Amū′lius.
Anchīsēs, –ae, *m.*, Anchises (Ankī′sēs), *father of Aeneas.*
Anglicus, –a, –um, English.
animus, –ī, *m.*, mind, spirit, courage.
Anna, –ae, *f.*, Anna.
annus, –ī, *m.*, year.
ānser, –eris, *m.*, goose.
ante, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, before (*of time or space*).
anteā, *adv.*, before.
antecēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus, go before, precede, take the lead.
Antiochus, –ī, *m.*, Antī′ochus, *a Syrian king.*
antīquus, –a, –um, ancient, of old.
aperiō, –īre, –peruī, –pertus, open.
Apollō, –inis, *m.*, Apoll′o.
appellō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, call, call upon, name.
Appius, –pī, *m.*, Ap′pius.
Appius, –a, –um, *adj.*, of Appius, Appian.
aptus, –a, –um, fit, suitable (*w. dat.*).

apud, *prep. w. acc.*, among, at the home of, with.
aqua, **–ae**, *f.*, water.
aquaeductus, **–ūs**, *m.*, aqueduct.
Aquītānī, **–ōrum**, *m.*, the Aquitā'nians, *a people in Gaul.*
arbor, **–oris**, *f.*, tree.
arcus, **–ūs**, *m.*, arch, bow.
arēna, **–ae**, *f.*, sand, arena.
argentum, **–ī**, *n.*, silver.
Ariovistus, **–ī**, *m.*, Ariovīs'tus, *a German chieftain.*
arma, **–ōrum**, *n.*, weapons, arms.
armō, **–āre**, **–āvī**, **–ātus**, arm.
arx, **arcis**, *f.*, citadel.
ascendō, **–ere**, **ascendī**, **ascēnsus**, climb (up), ascend.
ascrībō, **–ere**, **ascrīpsī**, **ascrīptus**, add to (*in writing*).
Asia, **–ae**, *f.*, Asia.
Athēna, **–ae**, *f.*, Athē'na, *Greek goddess of wisdom.*
Atlanticus, **–a**, **–um**, Atlantic.
atque (**ac**), *conj.*, and.
ātrium, **–trī**, *n.*, atrium, hall, house.
Atticus, **–ī**, *m.*, At'ticus.
attingō, **–ere**, **–tigī**, **–tāctus**, touch, reach.
auctor, **–ōris**, *m.*, maker, author.
auctōritās, **–tātis**, *f.*, authority, influence.
audācia, **–ae**, *f.*, boldness.
audiō, **–īre**, **–īvī**, **–ītus**, hear.
augeō, **–ēre**, **auxī**, **auctus**, increase.
aureus, **–a**, **–um**, of gold, golden.
aurīga, **–ae**, *m.*, charioteer.
aurōra, **–ae**, *f.*, dawn.
aurum, **–ī**, *n.*, gold.
aut, or; **aut . . . aut**, either . . . or.
autem, *conj.* (*never first word*), moreover, on the other hand.
auxilium, **–ī**, *n.*, help, aid, assistance; *pl.*, reinforcements.
āvertō, **–ere**, **āvertī**, **āversus**, turn away from.
avus, **–ī**, *m.*, grandfather.
axis, **–is**, *m.*, axletree.

B

Bacchus, **–ī**, *m.*, Bacchus, *god of wine.*
barbarus, **–a**, **–um**, foreign, barbarous; **barbarus**, **–ī**, *m.*, a barbarian.
Baucis, **–idis**, *f.*, Baucis (Bau'sis), *wife of Philemon.*
Belgae, **–ārum**, *m.*, the Belgians.
bellum, **–ī**, *n.*, war; **bellum gerere**, wage *or* carry on war.
bene, *adv.*, well, well done; *comp.*, **melius**, better; *superl.*, **optimē**, best, very good!
beneficium, **–cī**, *n.*, kindness, favor.
bibō, **–ere**, **bibī**, —, drink.
bis, *adv.*, twice.
bonus, **–a**, **–um**, good; *comp.*, **melior**, **melius**, better; *superl.*, **optimus**, **–a**, **–um**, best.
brācae, **–ārum**, *f.*, trousers.
Britannī, **–ōrum**, *m.*, the Britons.
Britannia, **–ae**, *f.*, Britain.

C

C., *abbreviation for* **Gāius.**

cadō, –ere, cecidī, cāsus, fall.

Caedicius, –cī, *m.*, Caedicius (Sēdi′shius).

caedō, –ere, cecīdī, caesus, cut, kill.

caelum, –ī, *n.*, sky.

Caesar, –aris, *m.*, Caesar.

callidus, –a, –um, *adj.*, crafty, clever.

Calypsō, –ūs, *f.*, Calyp′so.

Campānia, –ae, *f.*, Campa′nia, *a district of Italy.*

Campus Mārtius, Campī Mārtiī, *m.*, Campus Martius (Mar′shius), *a park and place of assembly in Rome.*

candidus, –a, –um, white.

canis, –is, *m. and f.*, dog.

Cannēnsis, –e, *adj.*, of Cannae (Can′ē).

canō, –ere, cecinī, cantus, sing.

Capēna, *see* **porta.**

capiō, –ere, cēpī, captus, take, seize, capture.

Capitōlium, –lī, *n.*, the Capitol, *temple of Jupiter at Rome;* the Capitoline Hill.

captīvus, –ī, *m.*, prisoner.

caput, capitis, *n.*, head.

carmen, –inis, *n.*, song.

carrus, –ī, *m.*, cart, wagon.

Carthāginiēnsēs, –ium, *m.*, the Carthaginians (Carthajin′ians).

Carthāgō, –inis, *f.*, Carthage, *a city in Africa.*

cārus, –a, –um, dear.

castra, –ōrum, *n.*, camp; **castra pōnere,** pitch camp; **castra movēre,** break camp.

cāsus, –ūs, *m.*, fall, chance, accident; **cāsū,** by chance.

Catilīna, –ae, *m.*, Catiline.

Catō, –ōnis, *m.*, Cato (Kā′tō), *a famous Roman senator.*

causa, –ae, *f.*, cause, reason; **causās ōrāre,** plead cases.

cēdō, –ere, cessī, cessus, move, retreat.

celer, celeris, celere, swift.

celeritās, –tātis, *f.*, swiftness, speed.

celeriter, *comp.*, **celerius,** quickly.

Celtae, –ārum, *m.*, Celts, *a people of Gaul.*

cēna, –ae, *f.*, dinner.

centum, hundred.

cēra, –ae, *f.*, wax.

Cerēs, –eris, *f.*, Ceres (Sē′rēs), *goddess of agriculture.*

cernō, –ere, crēvī, crētus, separate, discern, see.

certē, certainly, at least.

certus, –a, –um, fixed, certain, sure; **certiōrem eum facere dē,** inform him about.

cēterī, –ae, –a, the other, the rest.

Charybdis, –is (acc. **Charybdim**), *f.*, Charybdis (Karib′dis), *a dangerous whirlpool opposite Scylla.*

Christus, –ī, *m.*, Christ.

cibus, –ī, *m.*, food.

Cicerō, –ōnis, *m.*, Cicero (Sis′ero).

Cimbrī, –ōrum, *m.*, the Cimbri (Sim′brī), *a people of Germany.*

Cincinnātus, –ī, *m.*, Cincinnatus (Sinsinā′tus).

Cīneās, –ae, *m.*, Cineas (Sin′eas).

Cinna, –ae, *m.*, Cinna (Sin′a).

Circē, –ae, *f.*, Circe (Sir′cē), *a sorceress.*

circum, *prep. w. acc.*, around.

circus, –ī, *m.*, circle, circus, *esp. the Circus Maximus at Rome.*

cīvis, cīvis, *m.*, citizen.

cīvitās, –tātis, *f.*, citizenship, state.

clāmō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, cry out, shout.

clāmor, –ōris, *m.*, shout.

Clāra, –ae, *f.*, Clara.

clārus, –a, –um, clear, brilliant, famous.

Claudia, –ae, *f.*, Claudia.

claudō, –ere, clausī, clausus, close.

clēmenter, mildly, with forbearance.

Cleopātra, –ae, *f.*, Cleopā′tra, *queen of Egypt.*

Coclēs (Cō′clēs), *see* **Horātius.**

cognātus, –ī, *m.*, relative.

cognōmen, –inis, *n.*, cognomen, surname.

cognōscō, –ere, –nōvī, –nitus, learn, recognize; *perf. tenses,* have learned, know, understand.

cōgō, –ere, coēgī, coāctus, drive together, collect, compel.

colō, –ere, coluī, cultus, till, dwell in, inhabit, worship.

colōnia, –ae, *f.*, colony.

colōnus, –ī, *m.*, settler.

Colossēum, –ī, *n.*, the Colossē′um, *a famous amphitheater at Rome.*

Columbus, –ī, *m.*, Columbus.

Comitium –tī, *n.*, the Comitium (Comish′ium), *the assembly place of the Romans.*

committō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, join together, commit, intrust; **proelium committere,** begin battle.

commodē, *adv.*, suitably, conveniently.

commodus, –a, –um, suitable, convenient.

commoveō, –ēre, –mōvī, –mōtus, move away, disturb.

commūnis, –e, common.

comparō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, get ready, get together, prepare.

concordia, –ae, *f.*, harmony.

condiciō, –ōnis, *f.*, condition, terms.

cōnficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus, (do thoroughly), complete, exhaust.

cōnfīdō, –ere, cōnfīsus sum, have confidence (in), be confident.

cōnfirmō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, make firm, encourage, establish, strengthen.

coniungō, –ere, –iūnxī, –iūnctus, join with, unite.

cōnscrībō, –ere, –scrīpsī, –scrīptus, enlist, enroll.
cōnservō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, save, preserve.
cōnsilium, –lī, *n.*, plan, prudence, advice; **cōnsilium capere,** adopt a plan.
cōnsistō, –ere, cōnstitī, cōnstitus, stand still, stop.
cōnspiciō, –ere, –spexī, –spectus, catch sight of, see.
cōnstituō, –ere, –stituī, –stitūtus, set up, establish, determine.
cōnsul, –ulis, *m.*, consul, *the highest Roman official.*
cōnsulō, –ere, –suluī, –sultus, consult.
contendō, –ere, –tendī, –tentus, struggle, hasten.
contineō, –ēre, –uī, –tentus, hold (together), detain, contain, hem in.
contrā, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, against.
conveniō, –īre, –vēnī, –ventus, come together, assemble.
convocō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, call together, summon.
cōpia, –ae, *f.*, supply, abundance; *pl.*, forces, troops.
coquō, –ere, coxī, coctus, cook.
coquus, –ī, *m.*, cook.
cor, cordis, *n.*, heart.
Cornēlia, –ae, *f.*, Cornē'lia.
Cornēlius, –lī, *m.*, Cornē'lius.
cornicen, –cinis, *m.*, hornblower.
corōna, –ae, *f.*, crown, wreath.
corpus, –poris, *n.*, body.
Corsica, –ae, *f.*, Corsica.
crātēr, –ēris, *m.*, bowl.
crēber, –bra, –brum, frequent, close together.
crēdō, –ere, –didī, –ditus, believe, intrust (*w. dat.*).
creō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, create, elect.
Crēta, –ae, *f.*, Crete.
Creūsa, –ae, *f.*, Creū'sa.
cruciātus, –ūs, *m.*, torture.
cum, *prep. w. abl.*, with.
cupiditās, –tātis, *f.*, desire, greed.
cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītus, desire.
cūr, *adv.*, why.
cūra, –ae, *f.*, care, concern; **(cum) magnā cūrā,** very carefully.
cūrātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, cure.
currō, –ere, cucurrī, cursus, run.
currus, –ūs, *m.*, chariot.
cursus, –ūs, *m.*, course.
Cyclōps, –ōpis, *pl.*, **Cyclōpēs, –um,** *m.*, Cyclops (Sī'clops), the Cyclō'pēs, *or one-eyed giants.*

D

Daedalus, –ī, *m.*, Daedalus (Dĕd'alus).
dē, *prep. w. abl.*, from, down from, concerning.
dea, –ae, *f.*, goddess.
dēbeō, –ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus, ought, owe, be obliged to.
dēcēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus, depart, go away.
decem, ten.
December, –bris, *m.*, December.

decimus, –a, –um, tenth.
dēcipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus, deceive.
dēfendō, –ere, –fendī, –fēnsus, defend.
dēligō, –ere, –lēgī, –lēctus, select.
dēmōnstrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, point out, show.
Dentātus, –ī, *m.*, Dentā'tus.
dēpōnō, –ere, –posuī, –positus, put *or* lay aside.
dēserō, –ere, –seruī, –sertus, desert.
dēsiliō, –īre, –siluī, –sultus, jump down.
dēsinō, –ere, –siī, –situs, stop, cease.
dēspiciō, –ere, –spexī, –spectus, look down on, despise.
dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, be lacking.
deus, –ī, *m.*, god.
dēvorō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, swallow.
dexter, –tra, –trum, right (*hand*).
Diāna, –ae, *f.*, Dī'na, *goddess of hunting.*
dīcō, –ere, dīxī, dictus, say, tell.
dictātor, –ōris, *m.*, dictator.
dictātūra, –ae, *f.*, dictatorship.
dictum, –ī, *n.*, word, saying.
Dīdō, –ōnis, *f.*, Dī'dō.
diēs, diēī, *m.*, day.
difficilis, –e, difficult.
digitus, –ī, *m.*, finger.
dīligentia, –ae, *f.*, carefulness, diligence.
dīmittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, let go, send away.
discēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus, go away, depart.
disciplīna, –ae, *f.*, training, instruction, learning.
discipulus, –ī, *m.*, **discipula, –ae,** *f.*, learner, pupil.
dissimilis, –e, unlike.
diū, *comp.*, **diūtius,** *superl.*, **diūtissimē,** *adv.*, for a long time.
dīvidō, –ere, –vīsī, –vīsus, divide.
dō, dare, dedī, datus, give; **poenam dare,** pay the penalty.
doceō, –ēre, docuī, doctus, teach.
dolor, –ōris, *m.*, grief, pain.
dominus, –ī, *m.*, master, lord, ruler.
domus, –ūs, *f.*, house, home.
dōnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, give, present.
dōnum, –ī, *n.*, gift.
dubitō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, doubt, hesitate.
dūcō, –ere, dūxī, ductus, lead.
dulcis, –e, sweet.
dum, *conj.*, while.
duo, –ae, –o, two.
duodēvīgintī, eighteen.
dūrus, –a, –um, hard, harsh, cruel.
dux, ducis, *m.*, leader, general.

E

ē, ex, *prep. w. abl.*, from, out from, out of.
ecce, *interj.*, behold!
edō, –ere, ēdī, ēsus, eat.

ēducō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, bring up, educate.
ēdūcō, –ere, ēdūxī, ēductus, lead out.
efficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus, make out, bring about, complete.
ego, meī, I.
ēgregius, –a, –um, distinguished, excellent.
ēiciō, –ere, ēiēcī, ēiectus, throw *or* thrust out.
elephantus, –ī, *m.*, elephant.
em! *interj.*, here! there! take that!
emō, –ere, ēmī, ēmptus, get, buy.
Ēpīrus, –ī, *f.*, Ēpī'rus, *a province in Greece.*
epistula, –ae, *f.*, letter.
eques, equitis, *m.*, horseman.
equus, –ī, *m.*, horse.
ērumpō, –ere, ērūpī, ēruptus, burst forth.
et, *conj.*, and, even; **et . . . et,** both . . . and.
etiam, *adv.*, also, even, too.
Etrūscī, –ōrum, *m.*, the Etruscans.
Eumaeus, –ī, *m.*, Eumaeus (Ūmē'us).
Eurōpa, –ae, *f.*, Europe.
Eurylochus, –ī, *m.*, Eurylochus (Ūrĭl'okus), *a companion of Ulysses.*
ēvādō, –ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsus, go out, escape.
ēvertō, –ere, ēvertī, ēversus, overturn.
ēvocō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, summon.
excēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus, go away, depart.
exemplum, –ī, *n.*, sample, example, model.
exeō, –īre, –iī, –itus, go out *or* forth.
exerceō, –ēre, –ercuī, –ercitus, occupy, train.
exercitus, –ūs, *m.*, (trained) army.
exīstimō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, think, consider.
expediō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus, set free.
expellō, –ere, –pulī, –pulsus, drive out.
explicō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, unfold, spread out, explain.
explōrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, investigate, explore.
expugnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, capture by assault.
exsilium, –lī, *n.*, exile.
exspectō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, look out for, await, wait.
exstinguō, –ere, –stīnxī, –stīnctus, extinguish, destroy.
exstruō, –ere, –strūxī, –strūctus, pile up, build up.
extrēmus, –a, –um, farthest, last, end of.

F

Fabius, –bī, *m.*, Fā'bius.
Fabricius, –cī, *m.*, Fabricius (Fabrish'ius).
fābula, –ae, *f.*, story.
facile, *adv.*, easily.
facilis, –e, easy.

faciō, –ere, fēcī, factus, do, make, hold; **verba facere,** speak, make a speech; **certiōrem eum facere dē,** inform him about.
factum, –ī, *n.*, deed.
fallō, –ere, fefellī, falsus, deceive.
fāma, –ae, *f.*, report, fame, reputation.
familia, –ae, *f.*, household, family.
familiāris, –e, (belonging to the family), friendly; *as noun,* friend.
fātum, –ī, *n.*, fate; *often personified,* the Fates.
Faustulus, –ī, *m.*, Faus'tulus.
fēlīciter, *adv.*, happily.
fēlīx, –īcis, happy.
fēmina, –ae, *f.*, woman.
fēriae, –ārum, *f.*, holidays.
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear, carry, bring.
ferrum, –ī, *n.*, iron.
fīlia, –ae, *f.*, daughter.
fīlius, –lī, *m.*, son.
fīnis, fīnis, *m.*, end, limit; *pl.*, borders, territory.
fīnitimus, –a, –um, neighboring; **fīnitimus, –ī,** *m.*, a neighbor.
firmus, –a, –um, strong, steadfast, firm, solid.
fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus, cry, weep.
flōs, flōris, *m.*, flower.
flūmen, flūminis, *n.*, river.
fluō, –ere, flūxī, flūxus, flow.
focus, –ī, *m.*, hearth.
fōns, fontis, *m.*, spring.
fōrma, –ae, *f.*, shape, image, form.
fortasse, *adv.*, perhaps.
fortis, –e, strong, brave.
fortiter, bravely.
fortūna, –ae, *f.*, fortune.
forum, –ī, *n.*, market place; Forum (*at Rome*).
fossa, –ae, *f.*, trench.
frangō, –ere, frēgī, frāctus, break, wreck.
frāter, frātris, *m.*, brother.
frequēns, *gen.* **frequentis,** *adj.*, in great numbers, often.
frōns, frontis, *f.*, forehead, front.
frūmentum, –ī, *n.*, grain.
frūstrā, *adv.*, in vain.
fuga, –ae, *f.*, flight; **in fugam dare,** put to flight.
fugiō, –ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, flee.
fulmen, –inis, *n.*, lightning.
futūrus, *see* **sum.**

G

Gāia, –ae, *f.*, Gā'ia.
Gāius, –ī, *m.*, Gā'ius.
Gallia, –ae, *f.*, Gaul, *ancient France.*
Gallicus, –a, –um, Gallic.
Gallus, –ī, *m.*, a Gaul.
geminī, –ōrum, *m.*, twins.
gēns, gentis, *f.*, tribe, people, nation.
genus, generis, *n.*, birth, race, kind.
Germānia, –ae, *f.*, Germany.
Germānus, –ī, *m.*, a German.
gerō, –ere, gessī, gestus, carry on, manage, wear; **bellum gerere,** wage war; **sē gerere,** act.

gladiātor, –ōris, *m.*, gladiator.
gladius, –dī, *m.*, sword.
glōria, –ae, *f.*, glory, fame.
Gracchus, –ī, *m.*, Gracchus (Grak′us).
Graecia, –ae, *f.*, Greece.
Graecus, –a, –um, Greek; **Graecus, –ī,** *m.*, a Greek.
grātia, –ae, *f.*, gratitude, favor, influence, grace; **grātiam habēre,** feel grateful; **grātiās agere,** thank.
grātus, –a, –um, pleasing, grateful.
gravis, –e, heavy, serious, severe.
graviter, seriously.

H

ha! *interj.*, ha!
habeō, –ēre, habuī, habitus, have, hold, consider; **grātiam habēre,** feel grateful (*w. dat.*); **ōrātiōnem habēre,** deliver an oration.
habitō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, live.
haereō, –ēre, haesī, haesus, stick.
Hannibal, –alis, *m.*, Hannibal, *a Carthaginian general.*
Helenus, –ī, *m.*, Hel′enus.
Helvētiī, –ōrum, *m.*, the Helvetians (Helvē′shians), *who lived in ancient Switzerland.*
herba, –ae, *f.*, grass, plant.
Hesperia, –ae, *f.*, Hespe′ria.
Hibernia, –ae, *f.*, Ireland.
hic, haec, hoc, this; *as pron.*, he, she, it.
hīc, *adv.*, here.
hiems, hiemis, *f.*, winter.
Hispānia, –ae, *f.*, Spain.
Hispānus, –a, –um, Spanish; **Hispānus, –ī,** *m.*, a Spaniard.
ho! *interj.*, ho!
homō, hominis, *m.*, man, human being.
honestās, –tātis, *f.*, honor, honesty.
honor, –ōris, *m.*, honor, office.
hōra, –ae, *f.*, hour.
Horātius, –tī, *m.*, Horatius (Horā′shius); **Horātius Coclēs** ("One-eye"), *a famous Roman.*
hospes, –pitis, *m.*, guest.
hospita, –ae, *f.*, guest.
hostis, hostis, *m.*, enemy (*usually pl.*).
humilis, –e, low, humble.

I

iaciō, –ere, iēcī, iactus, throw, cast, hurl.
iam, *adv.*, already; **nōn iam,** no longer.
ibi, *adv.*, there.
Īcarus, –ī, *m.*, Ī′carus, *son of Daedalus.*
īdem, eadem, idem, same.
ignis, –is, *m.*, fire.
ignōrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, be ignorant of, not know.
ille, illa, illud, *demonst. adj.*, that; *as pron.*, he, she, it.
imāgō, imāginis, *f.*, likeness (*i.e. a statue or picture*).
impedīmentum, –ī, *n.*, hindrance; *pl.*, baggage.

impediō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus, hinder.
imperātor, –ōris, *m.*, commander, general.
imperium, –rī, *n.*, command, power.
imperō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, command, order, govern (*w. dat.*).
impetus, –ūs, *m.*, attack.
in, *prep. w. acc.*, into, to, against; *w. abl.*, in, on.
incertus, –a, –um, uncertain.
incidō, –ere, –cidī, —, fall into *or* upon, happen.
incipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus, take to, begin.
incitō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, urge on, arouse.
incolō, –ere, incoluī, incultus, dwell, inhabit.
īnferior, īnferius, lower.
inimīcus, –a, –um, unfriendly, hostile; *as noun*, enemy.
iniūria, –ae, *f.*, wrong, injustice, injury.
inquit, says he, said he.
īnstō, –āre, īnstitī, —, press on, threaten.
īnstruō, –ere, –strūxī, –strūctus, arrange, provide, draw up.
īnsula, –ae, *f.*, island.
integer, –gra, –grum, untouched, fresh.
intellegō, –ere, –lēxī, –lēctus, understand.
inter, *prep. w. acc.*, between, among.
intercipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus, intercept.
interclūdō, –ere, –clūsī, –clūsus, shut off, cut off.
interficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus, kill.
interim, *adv.*, meanwhile.
intermittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, let go between, suspend, stop, cease.
inveniō, –īre, –vēnī, –ventus, come upon, find.
iō, *interj.*, hurrah!
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, self, very.
īra, –ae, *f.*, anger.
is, ea, id, this, that; *as pron.*, he, she, it.
Isabella, –ae, *f.*, Isabella.
ita, *adv.*, so, in such a way, thus.
Italia, –ae, *f.*, Italy.
itaque, *adv.*, and so, therefore.
iter, itineris, *n.*, journey, road, march.
iterum, *adv.*, again, for the second time.
Ithaca, –ae, *f.*, Ith'aca.
iubeō, –ēre, iussī, iussus, order, command.
iūdicō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, judge, decide.
Iugurtha, –ae, *m.*, Jugur'tha, *king of Numidia.*
Iūlia, –ae, *f.*, Julia.
Iūlius, –lī, *m.*, Julius.
Iūlus, –ī, *m.*, Iulus (Īyū'lus).
iungō, –ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, join to (*w. dat.*).
Iūnō, –ōnis, *f.*, Juno, *a goddess, wife of Jupiter.*
Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.*, Jupiter, *king of the gods.*

iūrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, swear.
iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, justice.
iūstē, *adv.*, justly.
iūstus, –a, –um, just.
Iuvenālis, –is, *m.*, Jū′venal.

L

L., *abbreviation for* **Lūcius.**
labor, –ōris, *m.*, work, trouble, hardship.
labōrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, labor, work, suffer.
Lacedaemoniī, –ōrum, *m.*, the Lacedaemō′nians, Spartans, *a people of southern Greece.*
lacrima, –ae, *f.*, tear.
lanterna, –ae, *f.*, lantern.
Lār, Laris, *m.*, Lar, *a household god.*
lassitūdō, –tūdinis, *f.*, weariness.
Latīnus, –a, –um, *adj.*, Latin, belonging to Latium; **Latīnī, –ōrum,** *m.*, the Latins; **Latīna (lingua),** the Latin language.
Latīnus, –ī, *m.*, Latī′nus.
Lātōna, –ae, *f.*, Latō′na, *mother of Apollo and Diana.*
lātus, –a, –um, wide.
laudō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, praise.
Lāvīnia, –ae, *f.*, Lavin′ia.
Lāvīnium, –nī, *n.*, Lavin′ium.
lavō, –āre, –lāvī, lautus, wash.
lectīca, –ae, *f.*, litter, sedan.
lēgātus, –ī, *m.*, envoy, lieutenant general.
legō, –ere, lēgī, lēctus, gather, choose, read.
Leucothea, –ae, *f.*, Leucothea (Lūkŏth′ea).
levis, –e, light (*in weight*).
leviter, *adv.*, lightly.
lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law.
liber, librī, *m.*, book.
līber, –era, –erum, free.
līberē, *adv.*, freely.
līberī, –ōrum, *m.*, children.
līberō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, set free.
lībertās, –tātis, *f.*, freedom.
licet, –ēre, licuit, it is permitted.
lignum, –ī, *n.*, wood.
ligō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, tie, bind.
lingua, –ae, *f.*, tongue, language.
littera, –ae, *f.*, a letter (*of the alphabet*); *pl.*, a letter (*epistle*), literature.
Līvius, –vī, *m.*, Livius.
locus, –ī, *m.* (*pl.*, **loca, locōrum,** *n.*), place.
longē, *adv.*, far away.
longus, –a, –um, long.
Lōtophagī, –ōrum, *m.*, lotus-eaters.
lōtus, –ī, *f.*, lotus.
Lūcius, –cī, *m.*, Lucius.
lūdō, –ere, lūsī, lūsus, play.
lūdus, –ī, *m.*, game, school (*as a place for exercise*).
lupa, –ae, *f.*, she-wolf.
Lūsitānia, –ae, *f.*, Portugal.
lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light.
Lysō, –ōnis, *m.*, Ly′so.

M

M., *abbreviation for* **Mārcus.**
magis, *adv.*, more; *superl.*, **maximē,** very, very greatly, especially.

magister, –trī, *m.*, teacher.
magnus, –a, –um, big, large, great; *comp.*, **maior, maius,** greater; *superl.*, **maximus, –a, –um,** greatest, very great.
maior, *see* **magnus.**
male, *adv.*, badly; *comp.*, **peius,** worse; *superl.*, **pessimē,** worst.
malus, –a, –um, bad, evil; *comp.*, **peior, peius,** worse; *superl.*, **pessimus, –a, –um,** very bad, worst.
mandō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, intrust.
maneō, –ēre, mānsī, mānsus, remain.
manus, –ūs, *f.*, hand, group, force.
Mārcus, –ī, *m.*, Marcus.
mare, maris, *n.*, sea.
Marīa, –ae, *f.*, Maria, Mary.
marītus, –ī, *m.*, husband.
Marius, –rī, *m.*, Marius.
Mārs, Mārtis, *m.*, Mars, *god of war.*
māter, mātris, *f.*, mother.
māteria, –ae, *f.*, matter, timber.
mātrimōnium, –nī, *n.*, marriage.
mātūrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, hasten.
maximē, *see* **magis.**
maximus, –a, –um, *see* **magnus.**
Maximus, –ī, *m.*, Maximus.
medicus, –ī, *m.*, doctor.
Mediterrāneum (Mare), Mediterranean Sea.
medius, –a, –um, middle, middle of.
mel, mellis, *n.*, honey.
melior, *see* **bonus.**
memoria, –ae, *f.*, memory; **memoriā tenēre,** remember.
mēnsa, –ae, *f.*, table.
mēnsis, –is, *m.*, month.
Mercurius, –rī, *m.*, Mercury.
mereō, –ēre, meruī, meritus, deserve, earn.
mēta, –ae, *f.*, goal, turning post, *in the Circus.*
meus, –a, –um, mine, my.
Midās, –ae, *m.*, Mī′dăs.
migrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, depart.
mīles, mīlitis, *m.*, soldier.
mīlle, *pl.*, **mīlia,** thousand.
Minerva, –ae, *f.*, Minerva, *goddess of wisdom.*
minimē, *see* **minus.**
minimus, –ā, –um, *see* **parvus.**
minor, *see* **parvus.**
Mīnōs, –ōis, *m.*, Mī′nŏs, *a Cretan king and lawgiver.*
Minucius, –cī, *m.*, Minucius.
minus, *adv.*, less; *superl.*, **minimē,** least.
miser, –era, –erum, wretched, poor.
Mithridātēs, –is, *m.*, Mithridā′tēs, *king of Pontus in Asia Minor.*
mittō, –ere, mīsī, missus, let go, send.
modus, –ī, *m.*, measure, limit, manner, kind.
moneō, –ēre, monuī, monitus, remind, warn.
mōns, montis, *m.*, mountain; **summus mōns,** the top of the mountain.

mōnstrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, point out, show.
mors, mortis, *f.*, death.
mōs, mōris, *m.*, custom.
moveō, –ēre, mōvī, mōtus, move; **castra movēre,** break camp.
mox, *adv.*, soon.
mulier, mulieris, *f.*, woman.
multum, *adv.*, much; *comp.*, **plūs,** more; *superl.*, **plūrimum,** most.
multus, –a, –um, much; *pl.*, many; *comp.*, **plūrēs, plūra,** more; *superl.*, **plūrimus, –a, –um,** most.
mūniō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus, fortify, defend; **viam mūnīre,** build a road.
mūnus, mūneris, *n.*, duty, service, gift.
mūrus, –ī, *m.*, wall.
mūtō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, change.

N

Naevius, –vī, *m.*, Naevius (Nē′vius).
nam, *conj.*, for.
nārrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, tell, relate.
Nāsīca, –ae, *m.*, Nasī′ca.
nātūra, –ae, *f.*, nature.
Nausicaa, –ae, *f.*, Nausic′ăă.
nauta, –ae, *m.*, sailor.
nāvigō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, sail.
nāvis, nāvis, *f.*, ship.
nē . . . quidem (*emphatic word between*), not even.
–ne (*enclitic*), *introduces questions.*
nec, *see* **neque.**
necessārius, –a, –um, necessary.
neglegentia, –ae, *f.*, negligence.
negōtium, –tī, *n.*, business.
nēmō, *dat.* **nēminī,** *acc.* **nēminem** (*no other forms*), no one.
nepōs, –ōtis, *m.*, grandson.
Neptūnus, –ī, *m.*, Neptune, *god of the sea.*
neque (*or* **nec**), and not, nor; **neque . . . neque,** neither . . . nor.
neuter, –tra, –trum, neither (*of two*).
nihil, nothing.
Niobē, –ae, *f.*, Nī′obe, *queen of Thebes.*
nisi, *conj.*, unless, except.
nōbilis, –e, distinguished, noble.
nōbīscum = **cum nōbīs.**
noceō, –ēre, nocuī, nocitus, do harm to (*w. dat.*).
nōmen, nōminis, *n.*, name.
nōn, *adv.*, not; **nōn iam,** *adv.*, no longer.
nōnus, –a, –um, ninth.
nōs, nostrum, we, *pl. of* **ego.**
nōscō, –ere, nōvī, nōtus, learn; *in perf. tenses,* I have learned, I know.
noster, –tra, –trum, our.
nōtus, –a, –um, known, familiar.
novem, nine.
novus, –a, –um, new, strange.
nox, noctis, *f.*, night.
nūllus, –a, –um, no, none, no one.
numerus, –ī, *m.*, number.
Numidia, –ae, *f.*, Numidia, *a country in Africa.*

Numitor, –ōris, *m.*, Nu′mitor.
numquam, *adv.*, never.
nunc, *adv.*, now.
nūntiō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, report, announce.
nūntius, –tī, messenger.

O

Ō, *interj.*, O!
ob, *prep. w. acc.*, toward, on account of, for.
obtineō, –ēre, –tinuī, –tentus, hold, obtain.
occīdō, –ere, –cīdī, –cīsus, kill.
occupō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, seize.
Ōceanus, –ī, *m.*, ocean (*esp. the Atlantic Ocean*).
octāvus, –a, –um, eighth.
octō, eight.
oculus, –ī, *m.*, eye.
officium, –cī, *n.*, duty.
ōh! *interj.*, oh!
oho! *interj.*, oho!
ōlim, *adv.*, sometime, once upon a time.
Olympus, –ī, *m.*, Olym′pus, *the home of the gods.*
omnis, omne, all, every.
opera, –ae, *f.*, work; **meā operā,** through my efforts.
oppidum, –ī, *n.*, town.
opprimō, –ere, –pressī, –pressus, overwhelm, surprise, overcome.
oppugnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, attack.
optimē, *see* **bene.**
optimus, *see* **bonus.**
opus, operis, *n.*, work.
ōrāculum, –ī, *n.*, oracle, prophecy.
ōrātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, speech; **ōrātiōnem habēre,** deliver an oration.
ōrātor, –ōris, *m.*, speaker, orator.
ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*, order, rank; **ex ōrdine,** in turn.
ōrnāmentum, –ī, *n.*, ornament, jewel.
ōrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, beg, ask; **causās ōrāre,** plead cases.
ostendō, –ere, ostendī, ostentus, (stretch out), show, display.
ōtium, ōtī, *n.*, leisure, rest.
ovis, –is, *f.*, sheep.

P

P., *abbreviation for* **Pūblius.**
pācō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, pacify, subdue.
Pactōlus, –ī, *m.*, the Păctō′lus, *a river in Lydia.*
paene, *adv.*, almost.
pāgina, –ae, *f.*, page.
pār, *gen.* **paris,** equal (*w. dat.*).
parātus, –a, –um, prepared, ready.
pāreō, –ēre, pāruī, pāritus, (appear), be obedient to, obey (*w. dat.*).
parō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, get, get ready, prepare.
pars, partis, *f.*, part, side.
Parthenōn, –ōnis, *m.*, the Par′thenŏn, *temple of Athena at Athens.*
parvus, –a, –um, small; *comp.*, **minor, minus,** less; *superl.*, **minimus, –a, –um,** least.

pāstor, –ōris, *m.*, shepherd.
pater, patris, *m.*, father.
patria, –ae, *f.*, fatherland, country.
paucī, –ae, –a, few.
paulō, *adv.*, shortly, a little.
Paulus, –ī, *m.*, Paul.
paupertās, –tātis, *f.*, poverty.
pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace.
pecūnia, –ae, *f.*, money.
peior, peius, *see* **malus.**
pellō, –ere, pepulī, pulsus, drive, defeat.
Penātēs, –ium, *m.*, the Penā tēs, *household gods.*
pendō, –ere, pependī, pēnsus, hang, weigh, pay.
Pēnelopē, –ae, *f.*, Penĕl′ope, *wife of Ulysses.*
per, *prep. w. acc.*, through, by.
perficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus, finish.
perfodiō, –ere, –fōdī, –fossus, pierce.
perīculum, –ī, *n.*, danger, trial.
permaneō, –ēre, –mānsī, –mānsus, stay to the end, remain.
permittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, let go through, allow, intrust (*w. dat.*).
permoveō, –ēre, –mōvī, –mōtus, move throughout *or* deeply, induce.
permūtātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, exchange.
perpetuus, –a, –um, constant, lasting.
persōna, –ae, *f.*, character, person.
pertineō, –ēre, –tinuī, –tentus, (*w.* **ad**), extend to, pertain to.
perveniō, –īre, –vēnī, –ventus, come through, arrive.
pēs, pedis, *m.*, foot; **pedibus,** on foot.
pessimus, –a, –um, *see* **malus.**
Petīlius, –lī, *m.*, Petil′ius.
petō, –ere, petīvī, petītus, seek, ask.
Phaeācia, –ae, *f.*, Phaeacia (Fēā′shia).
Philēmōn, –onis, *m.*, Philē′mon, *husband of Baucis.*
Phrygia, –ae, *f.*, Phrygia (Frij′ia), *a country of Asia Minor.*
pictūra, –ae, *f.*, picture.
pila, –ae, *f.*, ball.
pingō, –ere, pīnxī, pictus, paint, embroider.
plānus, –a, –um, level, plane.
plēbs, plēbis, *f.*, the people, the common people.
plēnus, –a, –um, full.
plicō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, fold.
Plīnius, –nī, *m.*, Pliny, *a Roman author.*
plūrēs, plūra, more, *see* **multus.**
plūrimus, *see* **multus.**
plūs, *see* **multum, multus.**
Plūtō, –ōnis, *m.*, Plū′tō.
poena, –ae, *f.*, penalty, punishment; **poenam dare,** pay the penalty.
poēta, –ae, *m.*, poet.
Polyphēmus, –ī, *m.*, Polyphē′mus, *a man-eating giant.*
pompa, –ae, *f.*, parade.

Pompeius, –ī, *m.*, Pompey.
Pompōnia, –ae, *f.*, Pompō′nia.
Pompōnius, –nī, *m.*, Pompō′nius.
pōnō, –ere, posuī, positus, put, place, set; **castra pōnere,** pitch camp.
pōns, pontis, *m.*, bridge.
pontifex, –ficis, *m.*, priest.
Pontus, –ī, *m.*, Pon′tus, *the region south of the Black Sea.*
populus, –ī, *m.*, people; *pl.*, peoples, nations.
Porsena, –ae, *m.*, Por′sena.
porta, –ae, *f.*, gate; **porta Capēna,** *a gate in the wall of Rome.*
portō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, carry.
portus, –ūs, *m.*, harbor.
possum, posse, potuī, —, can, be able (*w. infin.*).
post, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, behind (*of place*); after (*of time*).
posteā, *adv.*, afterwards.
postquam, *conj.*, after.
potestās, –tātis, *f.*, power, authority, chance.
prae, *prep. w. abl.*, before, in front of.
praeceps, *gen.* **praecipitis,** *adj.*, headlong, steep.
praeda, –ae, *f.*, booty, prey.
praeficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus, put in charge of (*w. acc. and dat.*).
praemittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, send ahead.
praemium –mī, *n.*, reward.
praesidium, –dī, *n.*, garrison, guard, protection.
praesum, –esse, –fuī, –futūrus, be in charge of (*w. dat.*).
praetextus, –a, –um, woven in front, bordered; **toga praetexta,** *a cloak with a purple border, worn by children.*
premō, –ere, pressī, pressus, press, press hard, oppress, attack fiercely.
pretium, –tī, *n.*, price.
Priamus, –ī, *m.*, Prī′am.
prīmō, *adv.*, at first.
prīmum, *adv.*, for the first time.
prīmus, –a, –um, first.
prīnceps, –cipis, *m.*, first man, chief, leader.
prō, *prep. w. abl.*, in front of, before, for.
probō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, test, prove, approve.
Proca, –ae, *m.*, Proca.
prōcēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus, go forth, advance.
procus, –ī, *m.*, suitor.
prōdūcō, –ere, –dūxī, –ductus, lead forth *or* out, prolong.
proelium, –lī, *n.*, battle.
prohibeō, –ēre, –hibuī, –hibitus, prevent, keep from.
prōmittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, promise.
properō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, hasten.
prōpōnō, –ere, –posuī, –positus, set forth, present, offer.
proprius, –a, –um, one's own, fitting.
propter, *prep. w. acc.*, on account of.

Prōserpina, –ae, *f.*, Proser'pina.
prōvideō, –ēre, –vīdī, –vīsus, foresee, provide.
prōvincia, –ae, *f.*, province.
proximus, –a, –um, nearest, next (*w. dat.*).
pūblicus, –a, –um, public.
Pūblius, –lī, *m.*, Pub'lius.
puella, –ae, *f.*, girl.
puer, puerī, *m.*, boy.
pugna, –ae, *f.*, battle.
pugnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, fight.
pulcher, –chra, –chrum, beautiful.
Pūnicus, –a, –um, Punic, Carthaginian.
putō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, think.
Pyrrhus, –ī, *m.*, Pȳr'rhus, *king of Epirus*.

Q

Q., *abbreviation for* **Quīntus.**
quadrīgae, –ārum, *f.*, a four-horse team, a chariot.
quaerō, –ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, seek, inquire.
quam, *conj.*, than; *w. superl.*, as . . . as possible; *adv.*, how.
quārtus, –a, –um, fourth.
quattuor, four.
-que (*always joined to second word*), and
quī, quae, quod, *relat. pron.*, who, which, what, that.
quī, quae, quod, *interrog. adj.*, what.
quidem (*placed after the word emphasized*), certainly, to be sure.
quīndecim, fifteen.
quīnque, five.
quīntus, –a, –um, fifth.
Quīntus, –ī, *m.*, Quintus.
quis, quid, *interrog. pron.*, who, what.
quod, *conj.*, because.
quondam, *adv.*, once (upon a time).
quot, how many.

R

raeda, –ae, *f.*, four-wheeled carriage, omnibus.
rapiō, –ere, rapuī, raptus, seize, carry off.
ratiō, –ōnis, *f.*, account, plan, manner, reason.
recipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus, take back, recover, receive; **sē recipere,** retreat.
rēctē, *adv.*, rightly.
reddō, –ere, reddidī, redditus, give back, deliver, restore.
redigō, –ere, redēgī, redāctus, drive *or* bring back, reduce.
redūcō, –ere, –dūxī, –ductus, lead back, bring back.
rēgālis, –e, regal, kinglike.
rēgia, –ae, *f.*, palace.
rēgīna, –ae, *f.*, queen.
regiō, –ōnis, *f.*, district, region.
rēgnum, –ī, *n.*, royal power, kingdom.
regō, –ere, rēxī, rēctus, rule, guide.
Rēgulus, –ī, *m.*, Reg'ulus.

relinquō, –ere, –līquī, –lictus, leave (behind), abandon.
reliquus, –a, –um, remaining, rest (of).
remaneō, –ēre, –mānsī, –mānsūrus, remain behind, remain.
remittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, relax, send back.
removeō, –ēre, –mōvī, –mōtus, move back, remove, withdraw.
Remus, –ī, *m.*, Remus.
repellō, –ere, reppulī, repulsus, drive back, repulse.
rēs, reī, *f.*, thing, matter, affair; **rēs pūblica,** public affairs, government; **rēs gestae,** exploits.
respondeō, –ēre, –spondī, –spōnsus, answer.
respōnsum, –ī, *n.*, reply.
restō, –āre, restitī, —, remain.
retineō, –ēre, –tinuī, –tentus, hold back, restrain, keep.
revertō, –ere, –vertī, –versus, return.
revocō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, recall, call back.
rēx, rēgis, *m.*, king.
Rhēa, –ae, *f.*, Rhēa.
Rhēnus, –ī, *m.*, the Rhine river.
rīdeō, –ēre, rīsī, rīsus, laugh (at).
rogō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, ask.
Rōma, –ae, *f.*, Rome.
Rōmānus, –a, –um, Roman; **Rōmānus, –ī,** *m.*, a Roman.
Rōmulus, –ī, *m.*, Rŏm′ulus.
Rūfus, –ī, *m.*, Rufus.
ruīna, –ae, *f.*, ruin.
rumpō, –ere, rūpī, ruptus, break, destroy.
rūrsus, *adv.*, again.

S

saccus, –ī, *m.*, sack.
sacer, –cra, –crum, sacred.
saepe, *adv.*, often.
salūs, salūtis, *f.*, health, safety, greeting.
Samnītēs, –ium, *m.*, the Sam′nītes.
sapientia, –ae, *f.*, wisdom.
satis, *adv. and indecl. adj.*, enough.
Sāturnālia, –ium, *n.*, the Saturnā′lia, *a festival in honor of the god Saturn.*
Sāturnus, –ī, *m.*, Saturn.
saxum, –ī, *n.*, stone, rock.
scēptrum, –ī, *n.*, scepter.
scientia, –ae, *f.*, knowledge.
sciō, –īre, scīvī, scītus, know.
Scīpiō, –ōnis, *m.*, Scipio (Sip′io).
scrībō, –ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, write.
Scylla, –ae, *f.*, Scylla (Sil′a), *a great rock opposite Charybdis.*
sēcrētō, *adv.*, secretly.
sēcum = cum sē.
secundus, –a, –um, second.
sed, *conj.*, but.
sedeō, –ēre, sēdī, sessus, sit.
sēdēs, –is, *f.*, dwelling place.
semper, *adv.*, always.
senātor, –ōris, *m.*, senator.
senātus, –ūs, *m.*, senate.
sententia, –ae, *f.*, feeling, opinion, motto.

sentiō, –īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, feel, realize.
sēparō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, separate.
septem, seven.
septimus, –a, –um, seventh.
sepulchrum, –ī, *n.*, tomb.
sermō, –ōnis, *m.*, talk, conversation.
servō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, save, guard, preserve.
servus, –ī, *m.*, slave.
sex, six.
sextus, –a, –um, sixth; **sextus decimus,** sixteenth.
sī, *conj.*, if.
Sicilia, –ae, *f.*, Sicily.
signum, –ī, *n.*, sign, standard, signal.
silentium, –tī, *n.*, silence.
Sīlēnus, –ī, *m.*, Sīlē'nus.
silva, –ae, *f.*, forest, woods.
Silvia, –ae, *f.*, Silvia.
Silvius, –vī, *m.*, Silvius.
similis, –e, like.
sine, *prep. w. abl.*, without.
singulī, –ae, –a, *pl. only*, one at a time.
sinister, –tra, –trum, left (*hand*).
sinō, sinere, sīvī, situs, let, permit.
Sīrēnēs, –um, *f.*, the Sī'rens.
socius, –cī, *m.*, comrade, ally.
sōl, sōlis, *m.*, sun.
sōlus, –a, –um, alone, sole, only.
solvō, –ere, solvī, solūtus, loose, pay.
somnus, –ī, *m.*, sleep.
sordidus, –a, –um, dirty.
soror, –ōris, *f.*, sister.
Spartacus, –ī, *m.*, Spartacus.
spatium, –tī, *n.*, space, time, distance, "lap" (*in a race*).
speciēs, speciēi, *f.*, appearance, pretense, kind.
spectō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, look (at), face.
spēlunca, –ae, *f.*, cave.
spērō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, hope (for).
spēs, speī, *f.*, hope.
spīna, –ae, *f.*, spina, *a low wall in the Circus, around which the track ran.*
spīrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, breathe.
statim, *adv.*, at once.
Stātius, –tī, *m.*, Statius (Stā'-shius).
statua, –ae, *f.*, statue.
statuō, –ere, statuī, statūtus, place, establish, determine.
stō, stāre, stetī, status, stand.
stomachus, –ī, *m.*, stomach.
studium, –dī, *n.*, eagerness, interest, zeal; *pl.*, studies.
stupidus, –a, –um, stupid.
sub, *prep.*, under, close to, at the foot of (*w. acc. after verbs of motion; w. abl. after verbs of rest or position*).
subigō, –ere, –ēgī, –āctus, subdue.
subitō, *adv.*, suddenly.
sublevō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, lift up from beneath, hold up.
submittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, (send from under), dispatch.

suī, *reflexive pron.*, of himself, herself, itself, themselves.
Sulla, –ae, *m.*, Sulla.
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, be, exist.
summus, –a, –um, highest, top of.
sūmō, –ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, take, assume.
super, *prep. w. acc.*, over, above.
superbia, –ae, *f.*, pride.
superbus, –a, –um, haughty.
superō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, overcome, excel.
supersum, –esse, –fuī, –futūrus, be left over.
superus, –a, –um, on high, above.
supplicium, –cī, *n.*, punishment, torture.
suscipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus, take up, undertake.
sustineō, –ēre, –tinuī, –tentus, hold up *or* back, maintain, endure.
suus, –a, –um, *reflexive adj.*, his, her, its, their; his own, her own, *etc.*

T

tamen, *adv.*, still, nevertheless.
tandem, *adv.*, at last.
tangō, –ere, tetigī, tāctus, touch.
tardē, slowly.
tardus, –a, –um, slow, late.
Tarentīnī, –ōrum, *m.*, the Tar'entīnes, inhabitants of Tarentum.
Tarentum, –ī, *n.*, Taren'tum, *a city in Italy.*
Tarquiniī, –ōrum, *m.*, the Tarquins, *kings at Rome.*
tegō, –ere, tēxī, tēctus, cover, conceal.
Tēlemachus, –ī, *m.*, Telĕm'achus.
tēlum, –ī, *n.*, missile, weapon.
tempestās, –tātis, *f.*, season, storm.
templum, –ī, *n.*, temple.
temptō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, test, try, attempt.
tempus, temporis, *n.*, time.
tendō, –ere, tetendī, tentus, stretch.
teneō, –ēre, tenuī, tentus, hold, keep; **memoriā tenēre,** remember.
terminus, –ī, *m.*, end, boundary.
terra, –ae, *f.*, land, country, earth.
terreō, –ēre, terruī, territus, terrify, frighten.
tertius, –a, –um, third.
Teutonēs, –um, *m.*, the Teutons, *a people of Germany.*
texō, –ere, texuī, textus, weave.
theātrum, –ī, *n.*, theater.
Ti., *abbreviation for* **Tiberius.**
Tiberis, –is, *m.*, the Tiber, *a river of Italy.*
Tiberius, –rī, *m.*, Tibē'rius.
timeō, –ēre, timuī, —, fear, be afraid.
timidus, –a, –um, fearful, afraid.
Tīrō, –ōnis, *m.*, Tī'rō, *Cicero's freedman and secretary.*
Titus, –ī, *m.*, Titus.
toga, –ae, *f.*, toga, cloak.

tōtus, –a, –um, whole.
trādō, –ere, –didī, –ditus, give *or* hand over, deliver, relate.
trādūcō, –ere, –dūxī, –ductus, lead across.
trahō, –ere, trāxī, trāctus, draw, drag.
trānō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, swim across.
trāns, *prep. w. acc.*, across.
trānsportō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, carry over, transport.
trēs, tria, three.
tribūnus, –ī, *m.*, tribune, *a Roman official.*
tribuō, –ere, tribuī, tribūtus, bestow, grant.
trīgintā, thirty.
triumphō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, triumph.
triumphus, –ī, *m.*, triumph.
Trōia, –ae, *f.*, Troy.
Trōiānus, –a, –um, Trojan; **Trōiānī, –ōrum,** *m.*, Trojans.
tū, tuī, you.
tulī, *see* **ferō.**
tum, *adv.*, then.
Turnus, –ī, *m.*, Turnus, *king of the Rutuli.*
tuus, –a, –um, your, yours (*referring to one person*).

U

ubi, *adv.*, where (*place*); when (*time*).
Ulixēs, –is, *m.*, Ūlys′sēs.
ūllus, –a, –um, any.
ulterior, ulterius, farther.
ultimus, –a, –um, last, farthest.
unda, –ae, *f.*, wave.
ūnus, –a, –um, one.
Ūranus, –ī, *m.*, Ū′rănŭs, *father of Saturn.*
urbs, urbis, *f.*, city.
ūrō, –ere, ussī, ustus, burn.
ut, *conj.*, as (*w. indic.*).
ūtilis, –e, useful.
uxor, –ōris, *f.*, wife.

V

vacca, –ae, *f.*, cow.
valeō, –ēre, valuī, valitūrus, be strong, be well, be powerful; *imper.*, **valē,** farewell.
vāllum, –ī, *n.*, wall.
varius, –a, –um, changing, varying, various.
vāstō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, lay waste, ravage.
vel, or; **vel . . . vel,** either . . . or.
veniō, –īre, vēnī, ventus, come.
ventus, –ī, *m.*, wind.
Venus, –eris, *f.*, Vē′nus, *goddess of love and beauty.*
vēr, vēris, *n.*, spring.
Vēra, –ae, *f.*, Vera.
verberō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, beat, strike.
verbum, –ī, *n.*, word; **verba facere,** speak, make a speech.
Vercingetorīx, –rīgis, *m.*, Vercingetorix (Versinjet′orix), *a Gallic chieftain.*
vertō, –ere, vertī, versus, turn.
vērus, –a, –um, true.

Vesta, –ae, *f.*, Vesta, *a goddess.*
Vestālis, –e, Vestal, of Vesta.
vester, –tra, –trum, your, yours (*referring to two or more persons*).
vēstīgium, –gī, *n.*, trace.
vestis, –is, *f.*, clothing, garment.
via, –ae, *f.*, way, road, street; **viam mūnīre,** build a road.
victōria, –ae, *f.*, victory.
videō, –ēre, vīdī, vīsus, see; *passive,* seem, be seen.
vigilantia, –ae, *f.*, vigilance.
vigilia, –ae, *f.*, guard, watchfulness.
vīgintī, twenty.
vīlla, –ae, *f.*, farmhouse, country home.
vincō, –ere, vīcī, victus, conquer.
vīnum, –ī, *n.*, wine.
vir, virī, *m.*, man, hero.
Virginia, –ae, *f.*, Virginia.
virgō, –inis, *f.*, virgin, maiden.
virīlis, –e, of a man, manly.
virtūs, –tūtis, *f.*, manliness, courage.
vīs, —, *f.*, force, violence; *pl.* **vīrēs, –ium,** strength.
vīta, –ae, *f.*, life.
vīvō, –ere, vīxī, vīctus, live.
vīvus, –a, –um, alive, living.
vix, *adv.*, scarcely, with difficulty.
vocō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, call, summon.
volvō, –ere, volvī, volūtus, roll; *passive,* tumble.
vōs, vestrum, *pl.* of **tū.**
vōx, vōcis, *f.*, voice, remark.
Vulcānus, –ī, *m.*, Vulcan, *god of fire.*
vulnerō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, wound.
vulnus, vulneris, *n.*, wound.

ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY

A

abandon, relinquō, –ere, –līquī, –līctus.

able (be), possum, posse, potuī, —.

about, dē, *w. abl.;* circum, *w. acc.*

absent (be), absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus.

abundance, cōpia, –ae, *f.*

accept, accipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus.

account: on account of, ob, *w. acc.*

accuse, accūsō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.

across, trāns, *w. acc.*

advance, prōcēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus.

advice, cōnsilium, –lī, *n.*

afflict, afficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus.

afraid (be), timeō, –ēre, timuī, —.

after, *use abl. abs.;* post (*prep. w. acc.*); postquam (*conj.*).

afterwards, posteā (*adv.*).

against, contrā, *w. acc.*

aid, auxilium, –lī, *n.*

all, omnis, –e.

ally, socius, –cī, *m.*

alone, sōlus, –a, –um.

already, iam.

although, *use particip. or abl. abs.*

always, semper.

America, America, –ae, *f.;* **Americans,** Americānī, –ōrum, *m.*

among, inter, *w. acc.;* apud, *w. acc.*

and, et, –que.

Anna, Anna, –ae, *f.*

announce, nūntiō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.

answer, respondeō, –ēre, –spondī, –spōnsus.

appearance, speciēs, speciēī, *f.*

approach, accēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus (*w.* ad).

approve, probō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.

arms, arma, –ōrum, *n.*

arouse, incitō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.

arrive, perveniō, –īre, –vēnī, –ventus.

as, *use abl. abs.;* **as possible,** quam *w. superl.*

assault: take by assault, expugnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.

at (near), ad, *w. acc.; abl. of time or place.*

attack, impetus, –ūs, *m.*

author, auctor, auctōris, *m.*

authority, auctōritās, –tātis, *f.*

await, exspectō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.

away (be), absum, –esse, āfuī, āfutūrus.

B

bad, malus, –a, –um.
battle, pugna, –ae, *f.;* proelium, –lī, *n.*
be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
beautiful, pulcher, –chra, –chrum.
because, *use particip. or abl. abs.;* quod.
before, prae, *w. abl.;* ante, *w. acc.*
begin, incipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus.
believe, crēdō, –ere, crēdidī, crēditus (*w. dat.*).
best, optimus, –a, –um.
better, melior, melius.
body, corpus, corporis, *n.*
book, liber, librī, *m.*
booty, praeda, –ae, *f.*
boundary, terminus, –ī, *m.;* fīnis, fīnis, *m.*
boy, puer, puerī, *m.*
brave, fortis, –e; **bravely,** fortiter.
break camp, castra moveō, –ēre, mōvī, mōtus.
breathe, spīrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
bring about, efficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus.
brother, frāter, frātris, *m.*
Brutus, Brūtus, –ī, *m.*
but, sed.
buy, emō, –ere, ēmī, ēmptus.
by, ā, ab, *w. abl.*

C

Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris, *m.*
call, vocō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus; appellō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus; **call together,** convocō.
camp, castra, –ōrum, *n.;* **break camp,** castra moveō, –ēre, mōvī, mōtus; **pitch camp,** castra pōnō, –ere, posuī, positus.
can, possum, posse, potuī, —.
cannot, nōn possum.
capture, capiō, –ere, cēpī, captus.
care, cūra, –ae, *f.*
carefully, cum cūrā.
carry, portō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus; **carry on war,** bellum gerō, –ere, gessī, gestus.
cart, carrus, –ī, *m.*
catch sight of, cōnspiciō, –ere, –spexī, –spectus.
cause, causa, –ae, *f.*
certainly, certē.
chance, cāsus, –ūs, *m.*
(put in) charge of, praeficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus.
children, līberī, –ōrum, *m.*
citizen, cīvis, cīvis, *m.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
clearly, clārē.
climb, ascendō, –ere, ascendī, ascēnsus.
close, claudō, –ere, clausī, clausus.
colonist, colōnus, –ī, *m.*
come, veniō, –īre, vēnī, ventus.
commit, committō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus.
comrade, socius, –cī, *m.*
concerning, dē, *w. abl.*
constant, perpetuus, –a, –um.
convenient, commodus, –a, –um.
country, patria, –ae, *f.*
courage, animus, –ī, *m.;* virtūs, –tūtis, *f.*

D

danger, perīculum, –ī, *n.*
daughter, fīlia, –ae, *f.*
day, diēs, diēī, *m.*
death, mors, mortis, *f.*
deceive, fallō, –ere, fefellī, falsus.
deed, factum, –ī, *n.*
deep, altus, –a, –um.
(deeply) move, permoveō, –ēre, –mōvī, –mōtus.
defeat, pellō, –ere, pepulī, pulsus; vincō, –ere, vīcī, victus.
defend, dēfendō, –ere, –fendī, –fēnsus.
depart, excēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus; discēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus.
desert, dēserō, –ere, –seruī, –sertus; relinquō, –ere, –līquī, –lictus.
deserve, mereō, –ēre, meruī, meritus.
desire, cupiō, –ere, cupīvī, cupītus.
determine, statuō, –ere, statuī, statūtus.
difficult, difficilis, –e.
diligence, dīligentia, –ae, *f.*
dismiss, dīmittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus.
dispatch, submittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus.
distinguished, ēgregius, –a, –um.
do, faciō, –ere, fēcī, factus; agō, –ere, ēgī, āctus; **do harm to,** noceō, –ēre, nocuī, nocitus (*w. dat.*).
drag, trahō, –ere, trāxī, trāctus.
drive, agō, –ere, ēgī, āctus; **drive back,** repellō, –ere, reppulī, repulsus.
duty, officium, –cī, *n.*

E

eagerness, studium, –dī, *n.*
earn, mereō, –ēre, meruī, meritus.
easy, facilis, –e.
eighth, octāvus, –a, –um.
either . . . or, aut . . . aut.
employ, adhibeō, –ēre, –hibuī, –hibitus.
end, fīnis, fīnis, *m.*
endure, sustineō, –ēre, –tinuī, –tentus.
enemy, inimīcus, –ī, *m.* (*personal*); hostis, –is, *m.* (*national*).
enlist, cōnscrībō, –ere, –scrīpsī, –scrīptus.
enough, satis.
establish, cōnfirmō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
Europe, Eurōpa, –ae, *f.*
even, etiam.
every, omnis, –e.
example, exemplum, –ī, *n.*
excel, superō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
exhaust, cōnficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus.
expect, exspectō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
explore, explōrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
extend, pertineō, –ēre, –tinuī, –tentus (*w.* ad).

F

fair, aequus, –a, –um.
fall, cadō, –ere, cecidī, cāsus.
fame, fāma, –ae, *f.*

familiar, nōtus, –a, –um.
family, familia, –ae, *f.*
famous, clārus, –a, –um.
farmer, agricola, –ae, *m.*
farthest, ultimus, –a, –um.
father, pater, patris, *m.*
fear, timeō, –ēre, timuī, —.
few, paucī, –ae, –a.
field, ager, agrī, *m.*
fifth, quīntus, –a, –um.
fight, pugnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
find, inveniō, –īre, –vēnī, –ventus.
finish, perficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus.
firm, firmus, –a, –um.
first, prīmus, –a, –um.
fit, aptus, –a, –um.
five, quīnque.
flee, fugiō, –ere, fūgī, fugitūrus.
flight, fuga, –ae, *f.;* **put to flight,** in fugam dō, dare, dedī, datus.
fold, plicō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
foot, pēs, pedis, *m.;* **on foot,** pedibus.
for (*conj.*), nam; (*prep.*), prō, *w. abl.*, ob, *w. acc.*
force, manus, –ūs, *f.;* vīs, —, *f.*
forces (**troops**), cōpiae, –ārum, *f.*
foreign, barbarus, –a, –um.
foreigner, barbarus, –ī, *m.*
forest, silva, –ae, *f.*
fortify, mūniō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus.
fortune, fortūna, –ae, *f.*
four, quattuor.
free (*adj.*), līber, –era, –erum; (*v.*), līberō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
freedom, lībertās, lībertātis, *f.*
fresh, integer, –gra, –grum.
friend, amīcus, –ī, *m.*
friendly, amīcus, –a, –um.
friendship, amīcitia, –ae, *f.*
frighten, terreō, –ēre, –uī, –itus.
from, out from, ē, ex, *w. abl.;* **away from,** ā, ab, *w. abl.*
front: in front of, prō, *w. abl.*

G

Galba, Galba, –ae, *m.*
gate, porta, –ae, *f.*
Gaul, Gallia, –ae, *f.;* **a Gaul,** Gallus, –ī, *m.*
general, dux, ducis, *m.*
Germans, Germānī, –ōrum, *m.*
get, get ready, parō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus; **get together,** comparō.
girl, puella, –ae, *f.*
give, dōnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus; dō, dare, dedī, datus; **give thanks to,** grātiās agō, –ere, ēgī, āctus (*w. dat.*).
glory, glōria, –ae, *f.*
go away, discēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus.
god, deus, –ī, *m.*
good, bonus, –a, –um.
grain, frūmentum, –ī, *n.*
grateful, grātus, –a, –um; **be** *or* **feel grateful,** grātiam habeō, –ēre, –uī, –itus.
gratitude, grātia, –ae, *f.*
great, magnus, –a, –um.
guard, vigilia, –ae, *f.;* praesidium, –dī, *n.*

H

hand, manus, –ūs, *f.*
harm, do harm to, noceō, –ēre, –uī, nocitus (*w. dat.*).

harmony, concordia, –ae, *f.*
harsh, dūrus, –a, –um.
hasten, mātūrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus; properō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
have, habeō, –ēre, –uī, –itus.
he, is; hic; ille; *often not expressed.*
head, caput, capitis, *n.*
hear, audiō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus.
heavy, gravis, –e.
help, auxilium, –lī, *n.*
her (*poss.*), eius; (*reflex.*), suus, –a, –um.
hesitate, dubitō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
high, altus, –a, –um.
himself (*reflex.*), suī; (*intens.*), ipse.
hinder, impediō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus.
his (*poss.*), eius; **his own** (*reflex.*), suus, –a, –um.
hope (*v.*), spērō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus; (*noun*), spēs, speī, *f.*
horse, equus, –ī, *m.*
horseman, eques, –itis, *m.*
hour, hōra, –ae, *f.*
house, domus, –ūs, *f.*
how (in what manner), quō modō.
hundred, centum.

I

I, ego, meī; *often not expressed.*
if, sī; *abl. abs.*
in, in, *w. abl.*
inasmuch as, *expressed by particip.*
increase, augeō, –ēre, auxī, auctus.
influence, addūcō, –ere, –dūxī, –ductus; (*noun*), auctōritās, –tātis, *f.*
inform, (eum) certiōrem faciō, –ere, fēcī, factus.
injury, iniūria, –ae, *f.*
instruction, disciplīna, –ae, *f.*
interest, studium, –dī, *n.*
into, in, *w. acc.*
intrust, mandō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus; committō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus; crēdō, –ere, crēdidī, crēditus.
island, īnsula, –ae, *f.*
it, id; hoc; illud; *often not expressed.*
Italy, Italia, –ae, *f.*

J

join, iungō, –ere, iūnxī, iūnctus.
journey, iter, itineris, *n.*
just, aequus, –a, –um; iūstus, –a, –um.
justly, aequē.

K

keen, ācer, ācris, ācre.
keep, teneō, –ēre, –uī, tentus; retineō, –ēre, –uī, –tentus.
kill, interficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus; caedō, –ere, cecīdī, caesus.
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
kingdom, rēgnum, –ī, *n.*
know, *perfect tenses of* nōscō, –ere, nōvī, nōtus, *or of* cognōscō, –ere, –nōvī, –nitus; sciō, –īre, scīvī, scītus.

L

labor, labōrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
land, terra, –ae, *f.;* **native land,** patria, –ae, *f.*
language, lingua, –ae, *f.*
large, magnus, –a, –um.
late, tardus, –a, –um.
lay waste, vāstō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
lead, dūcō, –ere, dūxī, ductus; **lead across** *or* **over,** trādūcō; **lead back,** redūcō; **lead forth** *or* **out,** prōdūcō.
leader, dux, ducis, *m.;* prīnceps, prīncipis, *m.*
learn, nōscō, –ere, nōvī, nōtus; cognōscō, –ere, –nōvī, –nitus.
leave (behind), relinquō, –ere, –līquī, –lictus; **be left,** supersum, –esse, –fuī, –futūrus.
letter (*of alphabet*), littera, –ae, *f.;* (*epistle*), litterae, –ārum, *f.*
level, plānus, –a, –um.
liberty, lībertās, –tātis, *f.*
life, vīta, –ae, *f.*
little, parvus, –a, –um.
live (a life), agō, –ere, ēgī, āctus; **dwell,** habitō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
long, longus, –a, –um; **no longer,** nōn iam.
look at, spectō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
lose, āmittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus.
love, amō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
lower, īnferior, īnferius.
Lucius, Lūcius, –cī, *m.*

M

maintain, sustineō, –ēre, –uī, –tentus.
make, faciō, –ere, fēcī, factus.
man, vir, virī, *m.;* homō, hominis, *m.*
manage, gerō, –ere, gessī, gestus.
manner, modus, –ī, *m.*
many, multī, –ae, –a.
march, iter, itineris, *n.*
Marcus, Mārcus, –ī, *m.*
Marius, Marius, –rī, *m.*
matter, māteria, –ae, *f.*
memory, memoria, –ae, *f.*
messenger, nūntius, –tī, *m.*
middle of, medius, –a, –um.
misfortune, cāsus, –ūs, *m.*
money, pecūnia, –ae, *f.*
month, mēnsis, –is, *m.*
most, plūrimī, –ae, –a.
mother, māter, mātris, *f.*
motto, sententia, –ae, *f.*
mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
move, moveō, –ēre, mōvī, mōtus; **move deeply,** permoveō.
much, multus, –a, –um.
my, meus, –a, –um.

N

name, nōmen, nōminis, *n.*
nation, gēns, gentis, *f.*
native land, patria, –ae, *f.*
nature, nātūra, –ae, *f.*
near, ad, *w. acc.*
neighboring, fīnitimus, –a, –um.
neither (*adj.*), neuter, –tra, –trum.
neither . . . nor (*conj.*), neque . . . neque.
never, numquam.
new, novus, –a, –um.
next, proximus, –a, –um.

no (*adj.*), nūllus, –a, –um; **no longer** (*adv.*), nōn iam; **no one** (*pron.*), nēmō, *dat.* nēminī, *m.*
noble, nōbilis, –e.
nor, neque.
not, nōn.
nothing, nihil, *indecl., n.*
now, nunc.
number, numerus, –ī, *m.*

O

obtain, obtineō, -ēre, –uī, –tentus.
on, in, *w. abl.;* **on account of,** ob, *w. acc.;* **on the other hand,** autem.
one at a time, one by one, singulī, –ae, –a; **one . . . the other,** alter . . . alter.
opinion, sententia, –ae, *f.*
or, aut.
order (*v.*), iubeō, –ēre, iussī, iussus; (*noun*), ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*
other, alius, –a, –ud; **the other (of two),** alter, –era, –erum.
ought, dēbeō, –ēre, –uī, –itus.
our, noster, –tra, –trum.
ourselves (*intens.*), ipsī; nōs (*reflex.*).
out of, ē, ex, *w. abl.*
(his) own, *see* **his** (*reflex.*).

P

part, pars, partis, *f.*
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
people, populus, –ī, *m.*
pitch camp, castra pōnō, –ere, posuī, positus.
place (*noun*), locus, –ī, *m., pl.* loca, –ōrum, *n.;* (*v.*), pōnō, –ere, posuī, positus.
plan, cōnsilium, –lī, *n.*
pleasing, grātus, –a, –um.
point out, mōnstrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
powerful (be), valeō, –ēre, valuī, valitūrus.
praise, laudō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
prepare, parō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
present (be), adsum, –esse, –fuī, –futūrus.
present, dōnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
press, press hard, premō, –ere, pressī, pressus.
pretense, speciēs, speciēī, *f.*
price, pretium, –tī, *n.*
prisoner, captīvus, –ī, *m.*
propose, prōpōnō, –ere, –posuī, –positus.
prove, probō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
province, prōvincia, –ae, *f.*
public, pūblicus, –a, –um.
punishment, poena, –ae, *f.;* supplicium, –cī, *n.*
put, pōnō, –ere, posuī, positus; **put to flight,** in fugam dō, dare, dedī, datus; **put in charge of,** praeficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus.

Q

quick, celer, celeris, celere.
quickly, celeriter.

R

rank, ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*
rather, *expressed by comparative.*
read, legō, –ere, lēgī, lēctus.
ready, parātus, –a, –um; **get ready,** parō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
reason, causa, –ae, *f.*
receive, accipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus.
region, regiō, –ōnis, *f.*
reinforcements, auxilia, –ōrum, *n.*
remain, maneō, –ēre, mānsī, mānsus.
remember, memoriā teneō, –ēre, –uī, tentus.
remove, removeō, –ēre, –mōvī, –mōtus.
report, nūntiō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
rest (of), reliquus, –a, –um.
reward, praemium, –mī, *n.*
river, flūmen, flūminis, *n.*
road, via, –ae, *f.*; iter, itineris, *n.*
Roman, Rōmānus, –a, –um; **a Roman,** Rōmānus, –ī, *m.*
run, currō, –ere, cucurrī, cursus.

S

sacred, sacer, –cra, –crum.
safety, salūs, –ūtis, *f.*
sail, nāvigō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
sailor, nauta, –ae, *m.*
same, īdem, eadem, idem.
save, servō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus; cōnservō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
say, dīcō, –ere, dīxī, dictus.
sea, mare, maris, *n.*
second, secundus, –a, –um.
see, videō, –ēre, vīdī, vīsus.
seek, petō, –ere, petīvī, petītus.
seize, capiō, –ere, cēpī, captus; occupō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
send, mittō, –ere, mīsī, missus; **send away,** dīmittō; **send back,** remittō.
separate, dīvidō, –ere, –vīsī, –vīsus.
set, pōnō, –ere, posuī, positus; prōpōnō; **set free,** līberō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
settler, colōnus, –ī, *m.*
seventh, septimus, –a, –um.
severe, gravis, –e.
shape, fōrma, –ae, *f.*
sharply, ācriter.
she, ea; haec; illa; *often not expressed.*
ship, nāvis, nāvis, *f.*
shout, clāmō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
show, mōnstrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus; dēmōnstrō.
sight: catch sight of, cōnspiciō, –ere, –spexī, –spectus.
sign, signal, signum, –ī, *n.*
since, *use abl. abs.;* quod (*conj.*).
sister, soror, sorōris, *f.*
sit, sedeō, –ēre, sēdī, sessus.
slave, servus, –ī, *m.*
small, parvus, –a, –um.
soldier, mīles, mīlitis, *m.*
some . . . others, aliī . . . aliī.
son, fīlius, –lī, *m.*
speech, ōrātiō, –ōnis, *f.*
speed, celeritās, –tātis, *f.*
spend (years), agō, –ere, ēgī, āctus.
stand, stō, –āre, stetī, status.

standard, signum, –ī, *n.*
state, cīvitās, –tātis, *f.*
steep, praeceps, *gen.* praecipitis.
strange, novus, –a, –um.
street, via, –ae, *f.*
stretch, tendō, –ere, tetendī, tentus.
strong, firmus, –a, –um; fortis, –e; **be strong,** valeō, –ēre, valuī, valitūrus.
strongly, firmē.
studies, studia, –ōrum, *n.*
suitable, commodus, –a, –um.
summer, aestās, –tātis, *f.*
summon, vocō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
supply, cōpia, –ae, *f.*
surely, certē.
swear, iūrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
swift, celer, celeris, celere.
swiftly, celeriter.
swiftness, celeritās, –tātis, *f.*
sword, gladius, –dī, *m.*

T

take, capiō, –ere, cēpī, captus; sūmō, –ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus; **take by assault,** expugnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
tall, altus, –a, –um.
teach, doceō, –ēre, –uī, doctus.
teacher, magister, –trī, *m.*
ten, decem.
tenth, decimus, –a, –um.
terms (of peace), condiciō, –ōnis, *f.*
terrify, terreō, –ēre, –uī, –itus.
territory, fīnēs, –ium, *m. pl.*
than, quam.
thank, grātiās agō, –ere, ēgī, āctus (*w. dat.*).
that (*demonst.*), ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id.
that (*relat.*), quī, quae, quod.
their (*poss.*), eōrum, eārum, eōrum; (*reflex.*), suus, –a, –um.
themselves (*reflex.*), suī; (*intens.*) ipsī, –ae, –a.
there (*in that place*), ibi.
they, eī, eae, ea; illī, illae, illa; *often not expressed.*
thing, rēs, reī, *f.; often not expressed.*
think, putō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus; exīstimō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
third, tertius, –a, –um.
this (*demonst.*), hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id.
thousand, mīlle.
three, trēs, tria.
through, per, *w. acc.*
till, colō, –ere, –uī, cultus.
timber, māteria, –ae, *f.*
time, tempus, –oris, *n.;* **one at a time,** singulī, –ae, –a.
to, ad, *w. acc.*
too, *expressed by comparative.*
torture, cruciātus, –ūs, *m.*
touch, tangō, –ere, tetigī, tāctus.
town, oppidum, –ī, *n.*
train, exerceō, –ēre, –uī, –itus.
transport, trānsportō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
troops, cōpiae, –ārum, *f. pl.*
true, vērus, –a, –um.
two, duo, duae, duo.

U

under, sub, *w. acc. or abl.*
understand, intellegō, –ere, –lēxī, –lēctus.
undertake, suscipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus.
unfold, explicō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
unjustly, cum iniūriā.
upon, in, *w. abl.*
urge on, incitō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
useful, ūtilis, –e.

V

varying, varius, –a, –um.
very, *expressed by superlative;* **very carefully,** magnā cūrā.
victory, victōria, –ae, *f.*
voice, vōx, vōcis, *f.*

W

wage war, bellum gerō, –ere, gessī, gestus.
wagon, carrus, –ī, *m.*
war, bellum, –ī, *n.*
warn, moneō, –ēre, –uī, –itus.
waste (**lay**), vāstō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
water, aqua, –ae, *f.*
wave, unda, –ae, *f.*
we, nōs; *often not expressed.*
weapons, arma, –ōrum, *n.*
well, bene.
what, (*pron.*) quis, quid; (*adj.*), quī, quae, quod.
when, ubi; *often expressed by participle or abl. abs.*
where, ubi.
which, quī, quae, quod.
who (*rel. pron.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrog. pron.*), quis, quid.
whole, tōtus, –a, –um.
why, cūr.
wide, lātus, –a, –um.
winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.*
with, cum, *w. abl.; sometimes abl. alone.*
without, sine, *w. abl.*
woods, silva, –ae, *f.*
word, verbum, –ī, *n.*
work, labōrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
worst, pessimus, –a, –um.
wound, vulnus, vulneris, *n.*
wretched, miser, –era, –erum.
write, scrībō, –ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus.
wrong, iniūria, –ae, *f.*

Y

year, annus, –ī, *m.*
you, tū (*sing.*); vōs (*pl.*); *often not expressed.*
your, tuus, –a, –um; vester, –tra, –trum; **yourselves** (*reflex.*), vōs.

INDEX

(The numbers refer to sections unless otherwise stated.)

ā, ab, 109, 228; as prefix, 111
abbreviations (*see* **word studies**)
ablative case, 64
  absolute, 365–366
  of accompaniment, 190
  of agent, 227–228
  of cause, 125, footnote 1
  of description, 574
  of manner, 315
  of means, 65–66
  of place from which, 109
  of place where, 95,*a*
  of respect, 400–401
  of separation, 109, 593, footnote 1
  of time, 421
ablative, summary of uses, 377
accent, 607
accompaniment, 190
accusative case, 29, 623,*b*
  as subject of infinitive, 263, 467
  of direct object, 29–30, 622,*b*
  of extent, 542–543
  of place to which, 123, 562
  with prepositions, 123, etc.
adjectives, 612
  agreement, 16–17, 143, 145
  comparison, 488, 646; of *-er* adjectives, 503; of *-lis* adjectives, 505; of irregular adjectives, 511, 646,*b*
  dative with, 506
  declension of comparatives, 489, 647
  of first and second declensions, 101, 115, 129, 143, 642; of third declension, 393, 643; irregular, 440, 645
  interrogative, 320,II
  position of, 18(*b*)
  possessive, 255, 612,*b*, 3
  predicate, 15(*b*), 18(*c*)
adverbs, 614
  comparison, 498, 648; of irregular adverbs, 512, 648
  formation, 188, 497
Aeneas, 203, 224, 232, 239, 252, 275; Figs. 59, 60, 70
agent, ablative of, 227–228
agō, different meanings of, 291
agreement
  of adjectives, 16–17
  of appositive, 164
  of relative pronoun, 308
  of verb, 32–33, 229
alius and alter, 443,I
alphabet, 4
amphitheaters, 317, pp. 221–222; Figs. 23, 41, 46, 47, 61, 96, 104, 107, 110
amusements, 356; Figs. 20, 57, 71, 132 (*see also* **amphitheater, circus, theater**)
animals, representations of, Figs. 24, 35, 36, 57, 58, 105, 121, 157
antecedent, 305, 611
antepenult, 605
apartment houses, Roman, p. 312
apposition, 163–164
aqueducts, p. 382; Figs. 22, 166
arches and gates, Figs. 23, 30, 101
architecture (*see* **Forum, Pompeii, Roman Empire, Rome, temples,** etc.)
arithmetic, Roman, p. 178

assimilation (*see* **word studies**)
atrium, 486
augurs, p. 262

base, 72
baths, Roman, Figs. 32, 154
blackboard exercise, 85
books and writing, Roman, p. 178; Figs. 4, 5, 6, 39, 49, 79, 88, 92
books for collateral reading, 599
bridge, Roman, Fig. 50

Caedicius, 423; Fig. 123
Caesar, 99, 328, 346, 540; Figs. 2, 33, 60, 155, 162, 169
cardinal numerals, 339, 649
case, 9, 621 (*see also* **nominative**, etc.)
causal clause with *quod*, Lesson XXIV
Ceres, 185
Cicero, 446, 454, p. 382; Fig. 165
Cincinnatus, 460
circus, the games of the, 355, 356; Figs. 104, 105, 126, 130
clauses, 634
clothing (*see* **dress**)
collateral reading, books for, 599
Colosseum (*see* **amphitheater**)
color scheme for learning verb forms, 289
comparatives, force of, 488, **Hints**
comparison
of adjectives, 488, 503, 505, 511, 646
of adverbs, 498, 512, 648
complementary infinitive, 137
conjugations, 624
first (*parō*), 23, 655
second (*habeō*), 88, 656
third (*pōnō*), 155, 657; *-iō* verbs (*capiō*), 170, 659
fourth (*mūniō*), 171, 658
summary of, 655–661
conjunctions, 616
connected Latin, how to study, 292
connecting relative, 531, footnote 2
consonants, 602
conundrum, 210
conversation, 78, 152, 215, 259, 294, 353; helps for, 680
copula (*see* **linking verb**)
Cornelia, 559; Fig. 161
cum (prep.) with accompaniment, 190; with manner, 315; enclitic use with *mē*, etc., 254, footnote 2; as prefix, 187

Daedalus and Icarus, 509; Fig. 148
dative case, 57, 623,*c*
of indirect object, 57–58, 563
with adjectives, 506
with *noceō*, 563
with transitive verbs, 563
declensions
first (a summary), 71, 636
second, nouns and adjectives in *-us*, 101, 636; in *-er* and *-r*, 115, 637; in *-um*, 129, 637
third, masculine and feminine nouns, 358, 638; neuters, 370, 638; *i*-stem nouns, 381, 638; gender of, 388; adjectives, 393
fourth, 554, 639
fifth, 568, 640
summary of, 636–654
demonstratives, 414, 425–426, 432, 611,*d*, 652; position of, 415
Dentatus, 323; Fig. 99
derivative match, 584
derivatives (*see* **word studies**)
descriptive genitive and ablative, 574
diphthongs, 601
direct object, 29–30, 622,*b*
domus, declension of, 553, 641
dress, etc., 586, 587(*a*); Figs. 13, 29, 45, 49, 74, 80, 92, 136, 153, 159, 162, 164, 167, 169, 171
duo, declension of, 527, 645

ē, ex, 109
education (*see* **schools**)
ego, declension of, 254, 650
elementary grammar, 608–635
emphatic verb forms, 627,*b*
enclitics, 151; *cum* with *mē, tē,* etc., 254, footnote 2
Etna, Mt., Fig. 11
extent of time or space, 542
extrēmus, use of, 513

Fabricius, 524
fifth declension, 568, 640
fire protection in Rome, p. 130
first conjugation, 23, 655
first declension, 71, 636
food and meals, 587(*b*); Figs. 62, 84, 93, 100, 151, 168
form tests, 86
Forum, the, 214, p. 128; Figs. 1, 2, 63, 64, 121
fourth conjugation, 171, 194, 658
fourth declension, 554, 639
French, Latin words in, 77
French through Latin, 666–672
furniture, etc., 486; Figs. 15, 27, 31, 39, 44, 49, 51, 72, 89, 129, 137, 139
future active infinitive, 463
future active participle, 451
future perfect indicative, 626, *f*; active, 248; passive, 278
future tense, 626,*c*; formation of, 51, 182

games, children's, 3, 42, 259; Figs. 3, 8, 10, 12, 14, 21, 78; (*see also* **amusements**)
gender, 8, 620
  in the first declension, 11
  in the second declension, 101, 115, 129
  in the third declension, 388
  in the fourth declension, 555
  in the fifth declension, 568
genitive case, 45, 623,*d*
  of description, 574
  of nouns and adjectives in *-ius,* 101(*d*), in *-ium,* 129(*c*)
  of possession, 45, 623,*d*
gladiatorial shows (*see* **amphitheater**)
glimpses of Roman life (*see* **Roman life**)
gods, 410, 411 (*see* **religion**)
Gracchi, 559; Fig. 161
grammar, elementary, 608–635

hic, declension of, 414, 652
holidays, Roman, p. 262
Horatius, 439
hotels, Roman, p. 25; Fig. 20
house, Roman, 486; Figs. 36, 38, 49, 60, 65, 105, 120, 129, 138, 139, 140, 150, 152, 170 (*see also* **furniture**)

i-stem nouns, 381, 638
īdem, declension of, 432, 652
idioms, 201, 561
ille, declension of, 414, 652
imperative
  present active, 74; plural in *-īte,* 156
indirect object, 57–58, 563
indirect statement, 465–467, 534; tenses used, 473–474
infinitive, 630
  as object (complementary), 137, 262
  as subject, 136 (*a*)
  formation, 136, 280, 457, 463
  in indirect statements, 465–467
  tenses of, how they differ, 473–474
inflection, 618
inflections, summary of, 636–661
inscriptions, Figs. 4, 5, 6, 67, 133
intensive pronoun in English and Latin, 437, 652
interjections, 617

interrogative pronoun and adjective, 320, 654
intransitive verbs, 613,*a*, 2
-iō verbs of the third conjugation, 170, 659
ipse, declension of, 437, 652
irregular adjectives, 440–441
irregular comparison
of adjectives, 511
of adverbs, 512
irregular nouns, 641
is, declension and use of, 425–426, 652
Italian, Latin words in, 77
Italy, Figs. 26, 50, 53, 95, 117, 158 (*see also* **Pompeii, Rome**)

Latin phrases and quotations (*see* **word studies**)
Latin plays
Sāturnālia, 588
Victōria Mātris, 418
Latin songs
Adeste Fidēlēs, p. 438
America, pp. 438–439
Gaudeāmus Igitur, p. 436
Integer Vītae, p. 437
The Star-Spangled Banner, p. 439
linking verb, 30, **Caution**, 613,*b*
loan words (*see* **word studies**)
Lucius, the story of, 214, 293, 355, 410, 485, 540, 586

manner, ablative of, 315
Marius, 547, 552; Fig. 159
marriage, Figs. 74, 142
means, ablative of, 65–66
Midas, 434
military affairs, 69, 153, 179, 192; Figs. 27, 33, 42, 45, 54, 72, 99, 123, 147, 156
mīlle, declension of, 528, 645
modifiers, 608
money, Figs. 24, 60
mood, 629 (*see* **indicative**, etc.)
multiple-choice vocabulary test, 81

names of months and states (*see* **word studies**)
-ne (enclitic), 151
nēmō, declension of, 495, 641
nominative case, as subject and predicate, 15, 623,*a*
notebook, vocabulary, p. xxvi
nouns, 610 (*see* **first declension**, etc.)
nūllus, nihil, nēmō, 443, III
number, 7, 619
numerals
cardinals, 339, 649
ordinals, 526, 649

object, direct, 29–30; 622,*b*; indirect, 57–58, 563
order of words (*see* **word order**)
ordinal numerals, 526, 649

participial stem, 299, 3
participles (*see* **present participle**, etc.), 631; used as clauses, 344; in ablative absolute, 365
passive voice, 221, 270–272, 278, 628
past perfect indicative, 626,*e*; active, 247; passive, 272
penult, 605
perception cards, 82
perception device for learning verb, 352
perfect infinitive, active, 457; passive, 463(*a*)
perfect participle, 269; used as adjective and noun, 330
perfect stem, 235; 299, 2
perfect system defined, 248, note
perfect tense
distinguished from imperfect, 242
formation of active, 236; of passive, 271

peristyle, p. 311
person and number, 625
personal endings, 23, 236; passive, 221
personal pronouns, 254, 611,*a*, 650
phrases (prepositional), 633
phrases and quotations (*see* word studies)
place from which, 109
place, prepositions of, 95, 109, 123
place to which, 123, 562
place where, 95,*a*
plays, Latin
Sāturnālia, 588
Victōria Mātris, 418
Pluto, 185; Fig. 52
Pompeii, Figs. 38, 46, 58, 90, 91, 93, 102, 120, 124, 125, 127, 129, 138, 139, 140, 146, 150, 151
portraits and statues, Figs. 28, 39, 48, 49, 75, 77, 80, 83, 85, 86, 114, 116, 145, 149, 155, 156, 157, 159, 160, 163, 164, 165 (*see also* religion, animals)
position (*see* word order)
possession (*see* genitive)
possessive adjectives, 255, 612,*b*, 3
possum, conjugation of, 332, 661
post, posteā, postquam, 550
predicate, 608
predicate nominative, 15(*b*)
predicate nouns and adjectives, 15(*b*)
prefixes (*see* word studies)
prepositions, 615; of place, 95, 109, 123
present indicative, formation of, 23
present infinitive, 136
present participle, 449–450, 644
present stem, 23; 299, 1
present system, 88
principal parts, 298
of first conjugation, 300
of second conjugation, 314
of third conjugation, 326
of fourth conjugation, 338
progressive verb forms, 23,*b*, 627,*a*
pronouns
demonstrative, 414, 611,*d*, 652
drill and review, 582
indefinite, 611,*e*
intensive, 437, 652
interrogative, 320,I, 611,*b*, 654
personal, 254, 611,*a*, 650
reflexive, 518–519, 651
relative, 305, 611,*c*, 653
pronunciation, 5, 600–607; exercises in, 6; English pronunciation of Latin, 603
puns, Roman, pp. 281, 319
Pyrrhus, 403, 418, 516, 524; Fig. 116

quam with superlative, 561,2
quantity of vowels, 604; of syllables, 606
questions, 151
quī, declension of, 305, 653
quis, declension of, 320, 654
quod causal clause with indicative, Lesson XXIV
quotations (*see* word studies)

reading and translating, hints for, 213
reference, books for, 599
reflexive adjectives, 521
reflexive pronouns, 518–519, 651
Regulus, 531; Fig. 153
relative pronouns, 611,*c*; in English, 307; in Latin, 305, 307, 653; connecting relative, 531, footnote 2
religion, Roman, 185, 283, 311, 410, 411, 417, 485, 501; Figs. 1, 52, 60, 68, 69, 73, 81, 83, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 135, 136, 137, 144 (*see also* temples)

remains (Roman) outside Italy (*see* **Roman Empire,** extent of)
reviews
first, 79–86
second, 141–150
third, 204–211
fourth, 284–290
fifth, 347–354
sixth, 404–409
seventh, 478–484
eighth, 532–539
ninth, 578–584
roads and streets, 35, 36; p. 382; Figs. 17, 18, 82, 102, 117, 127
Roman Empire, extent of, 69, 99, 174, 179, 328, 341, 346, p. 90 (map); Figs. 30, 32, 42, 56, 66, 82, 101, 103, 110, 128, 166
Roman Empire, history of, Figs. 22, 23, 53, 80, 117, 156, 157
Roman life, glimpses of
children's games, 3
Roman roads and travel, 36
slaves, 113
the city of Rome, 216
Roman schools, 295
amusements, 356
Roman religion, 411
the house and its furniture, 486
dress, 587(*a*)
food and meals, 587(*b*)
Roman Republic, history of, 266, 323, 385, 403, 418, 423, 429, 439, 460, 477, 516, 524, 531, 540, 547, 552, 559, 566, 572; Figs. 113, 116, 123, 153, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, 169
Romance languages, 662
Latin words in French, Spanish, and Italian, 77
Rome, the city of, 48, 174, 216; Figs. 7, 9, 17, 18, 22, 23, 41, 47, 61, 94, 96, 97, 98, 112, 131, 134, 154 (*see also* **Forum**)
schools, Roman, 293, 295, 302, 335; Figs. 39, 87, 89, 92
Scipio, 477, 566, 572, 577
second conjugation, 88, 656
second declension, 101, 115, 129, 636–637
sentence analysis, 67
sentences
simple, 635,*a*; compound, 635,*b*; complex, 635,*c*
separation, ablative of, 109, 593, footnote 1
ships, 36; Figs. 19, 25, 54, 97
slaves, 112, 113, 140, 588; Figs. 37, 45, 92
songs (*see* **Latin songs**)
Spanish, Latin words in, 77
Spanish through Latin, 673–679
Spartacus, 140; Fig. 45
spelling helps (*see* **word studies**)
sports, p. 4
statement, direct and indirect, 466–467
states, names of, from Latin, 546
stem of verbs
present, 23
perfect, 235
tense stems, 299
subject, 608, 622,*a*; **of verb, 15;** of infinitive, 263, 467
substantives, 212
suffixes (*see* **word studies**)
suī, declension of, 518, 651
Sulla, 552; Fig. 160
sum, conjugation of, 121, 660
summary of inflections, 636–661
summus, use of, 513
superlatives, force of, 488, **Hints;** *quam* with, 561,2
supplementary books for the teacher, 599,III
suus and eius, use of, 426, 521
syllables, 605; quantity of, 606
synonyms, 585
synopsis, 632

syntax outlines for final review, 589–598

temples, Figs. 2, 7, 56, 94, 95, 112
tense, 626 (*see* **present tense,** etc.)
tense signs (*see* **present tense,** etc.)
tense stems, 299
tests
  on forms, 86; personal pronouns, 256; vocabulary, 81
theater, Roman, p. 221; Figs. 106, 112, 124, 125, 128, 134
third conjugation, 155, 657; *-iō* verbs, 170, 659
third declension, 358, 370, 638
  adjectives, 393
  gender, 388
  i-stems, 381, 638
time, ablative of, 421
to, with verbs of motion, 123, 562
toga, 587(*a*)
tombs, Roman, p. 381; Figs. 50, 127
tools and utensils, Figs. 15, 16, 34, 126, 139, 141
tōtus and omnis distinguished, 443, II
trades and occupations, Figs. 25, 62, 76, 84, 93, 143, 151
transitive verbs, 613,*a*, 1
translating, hints for, 213
travel, 36, p. 381; Figs. 17, 18, 19, 25, 117, 127 (*see also* **roads**)
trēs, declension of, 527, 645
triumphs, Roman, 540; Figs. 156, 157
Troy, 133, 203, 362; Figs. 43, 60
tū, declension of, 254, 650
tunic, 587(*a*)

Ulysses, 133, 362, 368, 374, 379, 391, 397; Figs. 109, 115
ūnus, declension of, 441, 645

verbs, 613
  agreement with subject, 33, 229
  conjugation of (*see* **conjugations**)
  intransitive, 613,*a*, 2
  irregular, 660–661
  perfect system, 248, Note; passive, 270
  personal endings, 23, 236; passive, 221
  position of, 32(*c*)
  principal parts, 298, 300, 314, 326, 338
  progressive and emphatic forms, 23,*b*, 627
  stems: present, 299, 1; perfect, 299, 2; participial, 299, 3
  summary of, 655–661
  transitive, 613,*a*, 1
villas, Roman, p. 25
vīs, declension of, 455, 641
vocabulary matches, 484
vocabulary notebook, p. xxvi
vocabulary reviews (*see* **reviews**)
vocabulary test, multiple-choice, 81
vocative case, 107
voice, 628; active, 219–220; passive, 221
vowel changes (*see* **word studies**)
vowels, 600; quantity of, 604; shortening of, 23,*a*, 221, footnote 1

water supply of Rome, p. 129; Figs. 22, 91, 131, 152 (*see also* **baths**)
wax tablets, p. 178; Fig. 88
weddings (*see* **marriage**)
word formation (*see* **word studies**)
word lists (New York and College Board), pp. 440–448
words often confused, 443, 544
word order, 18(*b*), 32(*c*), 177, 415, 513
word sense, how to develop, 291
word studies, English and Latin
  abbreviations, 431, 570

[word studies]
assimilation, 118, 445
derivative studies, 13, 56, 200, 313, 493
importance of verb, 325; of third declension, 413
intensive prefixes, 304
Latin base in English words, 159, 162, 558
Latin forms in English (*see* loan words, Latin verb forms)
Latin forms of English names, 98; of names of states, 546
Latin influence upon English, 337, 343
Latin phrases and quotations used in English, 28, 63, 139, 176, 181, 226, 234, 258, 277, 319, 334, 361, 376, 390, 399, 420, 431, 448, 508, 570
Latin verb forms in English, 91, 265
legal phrases in English, 508
loan words of first declension, 12, 22, 38, 44, 50; of second declension, 104, 118, 132, 139; of third declension, 373, 384, 396; of fourth and fifth declensions, 570; of irregular comparative and superlative forms, 515
months, names of, 428
names, Latin forms of English, 98; of months, 428; of states, 546
Norman-French influence, 436
prefixes, intensive, 304
prefixes, Latin (and English), *ab-*, *dē-*, *ex-*, 111; *ad-*, 118; *in-*, 126; *con-* (*com-*), 187; *re-*, 197; *prō-*, 234; *in-* (neg.), *dis-*, 244; *sub-*, *per-*, 268; *inter-*, *ob-*, 297; *ante-*, *trāns-*, 325; *prae-*, *contrā-*, *ne-*, *circum-*, *super-*, 549
Renaissance, effect of the, 523
spelling helps, English, 445, 462, 472, 530
suffixes, Latin (and English), *-ia*, 251; *-tia*, 265; *-tās*, 390; *-or*, 456; *-antia* (*-entia*), 472; *-iō*, 496; *-ilis*, *-bilis*, *-āris*, *-ārius*, *-ānus*, *-icus*, *-tūdō*, 576
third declension, importance of, 413
verb, importance of, 325
vowel changes, 169, 558, 565
word families, 218, 364
word formation (*see* prefixes, suffixes, vowel changes)
words, choice of, 387; how to learn, 408, 544